Oxford Word Skills

Learn and practise English vocabulary
Oxford Word Skills
# Contents

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Introduction</th>
<th>5</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>

## Starter unit

| Abbreviations and symbols | 9 |

## Learning

| 1 I can talk about vocabulary learning | 10 |
| 2 I can describe my progress and aims | 12 |
| 3 I can understand a learner's dictionary | 14 |
| 4 I can talk about English punctuation | 16 |

### Review

| 18 |

## People

| 5 I can talk about appearance | 20 |
| 6 I can talk about character | 22 |
| 7 I can describe my feelings | 24 |
| 8 I can talk about relationships | 26 |
| 9 I can talk about families | 28 |
| 10 I can talk about weddings and funerals | 30 |

### Review

| 33 |

## The world around us

| 11 I can describe the universe | 36 |
| 12 I can talk about rivers and the sea | 38 |
| 13 I can describe the climate | 41 |
| 14 I can describe natural disasters | 44 |
| 15 I can describe animals and insects | 46 |

### Review

| 49 |

## Daily life

| 16 I can describe a range of food | 52 |
| 17 I can talk about diets and cooking | 54 |
| 18 I can talk about money | 56 |
| 19 I can talk about sleep | 58 |
| 20 I can talk about injuries | 60 |
| 21 I can talk about cars and driving | 62 |
| 22 I can describe travel problems and accidents | 64 |
| 23 I can talk about clothes and fashion | 67 |

### Review

| 70 |

## Getting things done

| 24 I can describe a visit to the dentist | 73 |
| 25 I can describe hospital procedures | 74 |
| 26 I can explain household tasks | 76 |
| 27 I can describe housework | 78 |
| 28 I can talk to a hairdresser | 79 |

### Review

| 80 |

## Describing things

| 29 I can describe urban life | 82 |
| 30 I can describe parts of a building | 84 |
| 31 I can describe objects | 86 |
| 32 I can describe the senses | 88 |
| 33 I can describe a painting | 90 |
| 34 I can describe actions | 92 |

### Review

<p>| 94 |</p>
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Social and political issues</th>
<th>Social English</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>35 I can talk about crime</td>
<td>59 I can express probability</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>36 I can describe the justice system</td>
<td>60 I can explain similarities and differences</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>37 I can discuss health issues</td>
<td>61 I can make arrangements to meet</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>38 I can talk about politics</td>
<td>62 I can discuss my likes and dislikes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>39 I can talk about war and peace</td>
<td>63 I can give my opinion</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>40 I can talk about events in history</td>
<td>64 I can talk about rules</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Review</strong></td>
<td>65 I can discuss hopes and plans</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>66 I can express dissatisfaction</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>67 I can understand warnings</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Media and entertainment</th>
<th>Language</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>41 I can understand newspapers</td>
<td>68 I can use link words</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>42 I can talk about films</td>
<td>69 I can use a range of adjectives</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>43 I can talk about art and photography</td>
<td>70 I can express time and place</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>44 I can talk about music</td>
<td>71 I can use prepositions in phrases</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>45 I can talk about people and places in sport</td>
<td>72 I can use prefixes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>46 I can describe sporting events</td>
<td>73 I can use suffixes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>47 I can talk about books</td>
<td>74 I can use verb patterns</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>48 I can describe festivals</td>
<td>75 I can use phrasal verbs</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Review</strong></td>
<td>76 I can use a range of adverbs</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><strong>Review</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><strong>Review</strong></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Work and study</th>
<th>Styles of English</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>49 I can get through exams</td>
<td>77 I can recognize informal English</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>50 I can describe university life</td>
<td>78 I can write a formal letter</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>51 I can apply for a job</td>
<td>79 I can understand abbreviations and short forms</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>52 I can describe jobs</td>
<td>80 I can understand American English</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>53 I can describe a career</td>
<td><strong>Review</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>54 I can describe working conditions</td>
<td>Vocabulary building tables</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Review</strong></td>
<td><strong>Review</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Answer key</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Answer key to review units</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>List of spotlight boxes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Word list / Index</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Acknowledgements 254
What is Oxford Word Skills?

*Oxford Word Skills* is a series of three books for students to learn, practise, and revise new vocabulary.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Level</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Basic</td>
<td>elementary and pre-intermediate (CEF levels A1 and A2)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Intermediate</td>
<td>intermediate and upper-intermediate (CEF levels B1 and B2)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Advanced</td>
<td>advanced (CEF levels C1 and C2)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

There are over 2,000 new words or phrases in each level, and all of the material can be used in the classroom or for self-study.

How are the books organized?

Each book contains 80 units of vocabulary presentation and practice. Units are between one and three pages long, depending on the topic. New vocabulary is presented in manageable quantities for learners, with practice exercises following immediately. The units are grouped together thematically in modules of four to nine units. At the end of each module there are further practice exercises in the review units, so that learners can revise and test themselves on the vocabulary learned.

At the back of each book you will find:

- vocabulary building tables
- an answer key for all the exercises
- a list of all the vocabulary taught with a phonemic pronunciation guide and a unit reference to where the item appears.

There is a CD-ROM at each level with oral pronunciation models for all the vocabulary taught, and further practice exercises, including listening activities.

What vocabulary is included?

At Intermediate level, the vocabulary includes:

- a wide range of common topics, e.g. money, health issues, relationships
- words and phrases needed in social interaction, e.g. giving opinions, making arrangements to meet
- areas of lexical grammar, e.g. prefixes and suffixes, link words.

There is an emphasis on high-frequency vocabulary in everyday spoken English, but also vocabulary from different types of written text, e.g. job advertisements, magazine articles, web pages, and warning signs. At Advanced level, learners encounter more figurative meanings of vocabulary items, more idiomatic language, and a wide range of collocations.

The series includes almost all of the words in the Oxford 3000™, which lists the 3,000 words teachers and students should prioritize in their teaching and learning. The list is based on frequency and usefulness to learners, and was developed by Oxford University Press using corpus evidence and information supplied by a panel of over 70 experts in the fields of teaching and language study. In addition, we have included a wide range of high frequency phrases, e.g. *don’t bother, I haven’t a clue*, as well as items which are extremely useful in a particular context, e.g. *a filling* at the dentist’s.
We have taken great care to ensure that learners will be able to understand the meaning of all the new words and phrases as used in the particular contexts by supplying a clear illustration, a glossary definition, or an example of each word or phrase. Learners should be aware that many English words have more than one meaning. They should also be aware that nouns may be countable in some senses and uncountable in others. They should refer to an appropriate learner's dictionary for information on other meanings and structures and on countability. (See 'How to learn new words' in the Starter unit for advice.)

How can teachers use the material in the classroom?

New vocabulary is presented through different types of text, including dialogues, tables, and visuals. The meaning of new vocabulary is explained in an accompanying glossary unless it is illustrated in visuals or diagrams. Particularly important items are highlighted by means of 'spotlight' boxes.

Here is a procedure you could follow:

- Students study the presentation for 5–10 minutes (longer if necessary).
- You answer any queries the students may have about the items, and provide a pronunciation model of the items for your students to repeat.
- Students do the first exercise, which they can check for themselves using the answer key, or you can go over the answers with the whole class.
- When you are satisfied, you can ask students to go on to further exercises, while you monitor them as they work, and assist where necessary.
- When they have completed the written exercises, students can often test themselves on the new vocabulary using the cover card enclosed with the book. The material has been designed so that students can cover the new items while they look at the visuals, glossaries, or tables and test themselves. This is a simple, quick, and easy way for learners to test themselves over and over again, so there is no pressure on you to keep searching for different exercises.
- After a period of time has elapsed, perhaps a couple of days or a week, you can use the review exercises for further consolidation and testing.
- You will often notice the headings 'About you' or 'About your country'. These indicate personalized exercises which give learners an opportunity to use the new vocabulary within the context of their own lives. Students can write answers to these, but they make ideal pair work activities for learners to practise their spoken English while using the new vocabulary. If you use these as speaking activities, students could then write their answers (or their partner's answers) as follow-up. In the answer key, possible answers for these activities are provided by proficient non-native speakers from different parts of the world.

How can students use the material on their own?

The material has been designed so that it can be used effectively both in the classroom or by learners working alone. If working alone, learners should look at the Starter unit first. For self-study, we recommend that learners use the book alongside the CD-ROM, as it gives them a pronunciation model for every item of vocabulary, as well as further practice exercises. They can check their own answers and use the cover card to test themselves. One advantage of self-study learning is that students can select the topics that interest them, or the topics where they most need to expand their knowledge.
A How to use a unit

Study the new words. They are in bold type.

You can listen to the words on the CD-ROM and practise the pronunciation. Or you can look at the word list (page 233) to find out how to say the words.

A glossary explains the new words.

A ‘spotlight’ tells you about important words.

Do the exercises. Check your answers in the answer key (page 203).

Use the vocabulary to write or speak about yourself in ‘ABOUT YOU’ or ‘ABOUT YOUR COUNTRY’.

There’s more practice in the review units and on the CD-ROM.
How to learn new words

- Repeat the words and phrases two or three times to help you remember them.

- Use a pencil for the exercises. Check your answers, then rub them out and do them again a week later.

- You can do the exercises in the review units or the CD-ROM exercises, after each unit. Or do them a month later to test yourself, perhaps after you've studied all the units in that module (e.g. 'The world around us').

- Look at the vocabulary building tables at the back of the book (page 202).

- Go to the website (www.oup.com/elt/wordskills) for more useful materials and more practice.

- Use a highlighter pen to help you remember difficult words.

Perfect Weekend Channel Five

Wednesday 9 p.m. - 11 p.m.

TV drama about a group of young people who got to know each other at university, and now, five years later, get together for a weekend. But things soon go wrong. John doesn't get on with Pam, and now realizes they have nothing in common, while Pam regrets the fact that she split up with Amy, the girl he used to go out with. Now Amy is in a serious relationship with Keith (who didn't go to university), and Keith doesn't like Amy's old friends. This creates tension in the group, and soon there's a big row. Amy falls out with Pete, and Dan and John stop speaking to each other. And that's just the beginning.

Glossary

get to know sb meet
become friends.

one another each other
get together come together
of two persons, usually for a social reason.

go wrong used when something goes wrong in a situation or relation.

realize sth begin to have something.

nothing in common interests that are different.

regret sth doing / doing sth / doing sth or doing sth

Buy a good dictionary for your level. The Oxford Wordpower Dictionary (Oxford University Press) is very good for intermediate learners.
### Abbreviations and symbols

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>N</th>
<th>noun</th>
<th>USU</th>
<th>usually</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>V</td>
<td>verb</td>
<td>c</td>
<td>countable noun (A countable noun can be used with a/an and can have a plural form.)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ADJ</td>
<td>adjective</td>
<td>u</td>
<td>uncountable noun (An uncountable noun cannot usually be used with a/an and usually has no plural form.)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ADV</td>
<td>adverb</td>
<td>pr</td>
<td>past tense (the past simple form of an irregular verb)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>OPP</td>
<td>opposite (for example, modest is the opposite of arrogant)</td>
<td>pp</td>
<td>past participle</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SYN</td>
<td>synonym (a word that means the same as another word; for example, drawback is a synonym of disadvantage)</td>
<td>sth</td>
<td>something (used in glossaries and tables, e.g. regret sth)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>INF</td>
<td>informal (If a word or phrase is informal, you use it when you are speaking to friends or people you know well.)</td>
<td>sb</td>
<td>somebody (used in glossaries and tables, e.g. dismiss sb)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>EML</td>
<td>formal (If a word or phrase is formal, you use it at important and serious times with people you don't know well, or in written English.)</td>
<td>etc.</td>
<td>used at the end of a list to show there are other things, but you aren't going to say them all</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PL</td>
<td>plural</td>
<td>e.g.</td>
<td>for example (as in: jewellery, e.g. earrings, necklace)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SING</td>
<td>singular</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Vowels

<p>| | | |</p>
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>i</td>
<td>see</td>
<td>/si:/</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>i</td>
<td>happy</td>
<td>/hæpi:/</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>i</td>
<td>sit</td>
<td>/sɪt/</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>e</td>
<td>ten</td>
<td>/tɛn/</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>æ</td>
<td>hat</td>
<td>/hæt/</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ə</td>
<td>father</td>
<td>/fɑðə(r)/</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ə</td>
<td>got</td>
<td>/gɒt/</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>a</td>
<td>saw</td>
<td>/sɔ:/</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>o</td>
<td>put</td>
<td>/pʊt/</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>u</td>
<td>casual</td>
<td>/kəˈʃʊəl/</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>uː</td>
<td>too</td>
<td>/tuː/</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ʌ</td>
<td>cup</td>
<td>/kʌp/</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ə</td>
<td>bird</td>
<td>/bɜːd/</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ə</td>
<td>about</td>
<td>/əˈbaʊt/</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ei</td>
<td>say</td>
<td>/siː/</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>əʊ</td>
<td>go</td>
<td>/ɡoʊ/</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ai</td>
<td>five</td>
<td>/fɪv/</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>aʊ</td>
<td>now</td>
<td>/nəʊ/</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ə</td>
<td>boy</td>
<td>/bɔɪ/</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ə</td>
<td>near</td>
<td>/niə(r)/</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ə</td>
<td>hair</td>
<td>/hɛə(r)/</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>əʊ</td>
<td>sure</td>
<td>/ʃʊə(r)/</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Consonants

<p>| | | |</p>
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>p</td>
<td>pen</td>
<td>/pen/</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>b</td>
<td>bad</td>
<td>/bæd/</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>t</td>
<td>tea</td>
<td>/ti:/</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>d</td>
<td>did</td>
<td>/did/</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>k</td>
<td>cat</td>
<td>/kæt/</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>g</td>
<td>got</td>
<td>/gɒt/</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ʧ</td>
<td>cheap</td>
<td>/ʧeəp/</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dʒ</td>
<td>jam</td>
<td>/dʒæm/</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>f</td>
<td>fall</td>
<td>/fɔːl/</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>v</td>
<td>verb</td>
<td>/vɜːb/</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>θ</td>
<td>thin</td>
<td>/θɪn/</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ð</td>
<td>this</td>
<td>/ðɪs/</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>s</td>
<td>so</td>
<td>/soʊ/</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>z</td>
<td>zero</td>
<td>/ˈzɛrəʊ/</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ʃ</td>
<td>shoe</td>
<td>/ʃuː/</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ʒ</td>
<td>television</td>
<td>/ˈtelɪˈviʒn, ˈtelɪˈviʒn/</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>h</td>
<td>hat</td>
<td>/hæt/</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>m</td>
<td>map</td>
<td>/mæp/</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>n</td>
<td>no</td>
<td>/nəʊ/</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ɲ</td>
<td>sing</td>
<td>/sɪŋ/</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>l</td>
<td>leg</td>
<td>/leɡ/</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>r</td>
<td>red</td>
<td>/red/</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>j</td>
<td>yes</td>
<td>/jes/</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>w</td>
<td>wet</td>
<td>/wet/</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
1 I can talk about vocabulary learning

A Reading 🎧

Tips for reading

When you’re reading in a foreign language, you should try to get the gist of the text. You will meet vocabulary you don’t recognize, but you can often go through the text again. If so, try this:

- **Identify** the new words and phrases which seem to be important. Try to guess the meaning from the context, and/or use a dictionary.
- **Keep a record of** the words in a notebook, and, if possible, make a note of any special information. For example, is the word formal or informal? Is it used in a particular kind of construction, e.g. a verb that is often followed by a preposition?
- Write a translation if you think it helps; sometimes it isn’t necessary.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Spotlight</th>
<th>formal</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>We use formal language to appear serious or official, or sometimes when we don’t know people well, or informal. formality n. or informality.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Glossary

- **foreign** from a country that is not your own (a person is a foreigner).
- **gist** the gist of sth is the general meaning but not all the details.
- **text** the written part of a book, newspaper, etc.
- **recognize sb/sth** know who sb is or what sth is because you’ve seen or heard them before. recognition n.
- **go through sth** read sth carefully from beginning to end.
- **identify sth** recognize sth and decide what it is.
- **guess sth** give an answer to sth without being sure of the facts. guess n.
- **context** the words before and after the new word or phrase that help you to understand the meaning.
- **keep a record of sth** write sth down to help you remember it. record sth v.
- **make a note of sth** write sth down quickly to help you remember it.
- **construction** the way words are used together in a sentence. construct sth v.
- **translation** a text that has been changed from one language into another. translate sth v.

1 Replace the words in italics with a single word that has the same meaning.

I looked at the pictures but didn’t understand the written part. text
1 I understood the general meaning of the text.
2 We couldn’t recognize and decide what language they were speaking.
3 The way you use words together to make a sentence in German is different.
4 He is from another country.
5 You can guess the meaning from the words before and after the new word.
6 There was a text which I had to change from one language into another.

2 Complete the dialogues.

Is ‘How do you do’ formal? ~ Yes, we usually just say hello.
1 Did you know the answer? ~ No, I had to
2 Did you understand everything? ~ No, but I got the of it.
3 Did you everyone? ~ There were one or two people I didn’t know.
4 Were there many? ~ No, all the people were from this country.
5 Did you understand the text? ~ Yes, but can we through it again?
6 Do you make a of new words? ~ Yes, I keep a in my notebook.
B Speaking and listening

- In a conversation, you can often ask someone to repeat words or phrases you don’t understand, and explain the meaning to you.
- Repeat new words to yourself, so you know how to pronounce them.
- Look for opportunities to practise them when you’re speaking. Don’t be afraid to experiment with new language, and don’t worry about making mistakes.
- It’s important to revise new vocabulary. If not, you may forget it quite quickly.
- Remember: there isn’t a correct method of learning vocabulary. Do what works for you.

**Glossary**

- repeat sth
  - say sth again. repetition N.
- explain sth
  - make sth clear or easy to understand. explanation N.
- pronounce sth
  - make the sound of a word or letter. pronunciation N.
- opportunity
  - a time when it is possible to do sth that you want to do. SYN chance.
- experiment with sth
  - try sth to see what result it has.
- make mistakes
  - not do mistakes.
- revise sth
  - study sth again (you do revision).
- method
  - a way of doing sth.
- work
  - get or have the result you want.

3 What nouns are formed from these verbs?

1. repeat
2. explain
3. pronounce
4. revise
5. chat

4 Circle the correct answer.

- If you explain something, you make it easy to say/understand.
1. If you revise something, you say it again/study it again.
2. If something works, it is successful/difficult.
3. If you experiment with something, you try something/find something.
4. You can make/do mistakes.
5. A method is an opportunity to do something/a way of doing something.
6. A chat is a formal/an informal conversation.

5 Complete the sentences.

1. We had a ________ on the phone last night.
2. We had a serious ________ in class today about politics.
4. I saw Joelle in town and we had a quick ________. She told me about the wedding.
5. I used a new method for cooking the rice and it really ________. You must try it.
6. Do you think we’ll have a ________ to go shopping when we’re in Milan?

6 Test yourself. Cover the glossary meanings and look at the words. What are the meanings?
I can describe my progress and aims

Making progress

When I started learning English, I was very enthusiastic and motivated. But I found the pronunciation difficult and people couldn’t always understand me. After a while my pronunciation improved and I was able to express basic ideas quite effectively. It was obvious that I was getting better. and that was very encouraging. But at intermediate level, I made slower progress. There were so many new words and phrases, but also words that I could understand but couldn’t use accurately. I think I was more aware of my mistakes, which was good—but also frustrating.

Glossary

enthusiastic - very interested in sth or excited by it. enthusiasm n.

motivated - If you are motivated, you really want to do sth. motivation n.

after a while - after a period of time.

improve - become better. syms get better, make progress, improvement n.

express sth - say or show what you think or feel.

effectively - in a way that gives you the result you want. effective adj.

obvious - easily seen and understood. syn clear.

encouraging - If sth is encouraging, it gives you hope and makes you want to continue. encourage v. encouragement n.

accurately - with no mistakes. accurate adj.

be aware of sth - If you are aware of sth. you know about it.

frustrating - making you annoyed because you cannot do sth you want to do. frustration n.

1 Complete the sentences using the words on the right in the correct form.

► She did the work very effectively.

1 He gave me a lot of

2 I think my English is

3 My mother speaks English very

4 It’s when you can’t understand.

5 He doesn’t have much

6 I was very when I started.

EFFECTIVE

ENCOURAGE

IMPROVEMENT

ACCURATE

FRUSTRATION

MOTIVATED

ENTHUSIASM

2 Replace the underlined word or phrase with a word or phrase that has the same meaning.

► She shows lots of interest and excitement. enthusiasm

1 Do you think your English is improving?

2 I didn’t worry about my mistakes after a period of time.

3 Where are you making the most improvement?

4 It’s clear that he doesn’t know the difference between lend and borrow.

5 She can speak French without mistakes.

6 I think she knows about the problem.

7 I can say most of the things I need to.

8 I make a lot of mistakes, which is annoying.

3 Test yourself. Look at the glossary words and cover the meanings. What are the meanings?
B Future goals

Glossary

goal a thing you want to be able to do in the future. SYN aim.
everyday normal or usual.
expand become bigger or make sth bigger.
a wide range a large number of different things.
complex not simple; often difficult to understand. SYN complicated.
fluent able to speak a foreign language easily and well. fluently ADV.
in detail fully and including a lot of information.
appropriate right or suitable in a particular situation; opp. inappropriate.
relevant to sth useful for and connected to sth. opp. irrelevant.
specialized having or needing a lot of special knowledge.

spotlight contain and include
We can often use contain or include with the same meaning.
The film contains/includes scenes of violence.
Sometimes we can only use one of the verbs.
The box contains magazines. (There are magazines inside the box.)
The price includes service. (Service is one part of the price.)

4 Replace the underlined words with a synonym.
   ▶ The story is complex ...complicated.
   1 I speak Russian very well.
   2 It's part of normal life.
   3 It isn't connected to my work.
   4 The business got bigger.
   5 It's not suitable here.
   6 My goal is to get to university.

5 Complete the dialogues with a suitable word.
   ▶ Was the information important for your report? ~ No, it was irrelevant.
   1 Did you explain it fully? ~ Yes, I described it in...
   2 It wasn't a suitable word to use. ~ I agree, it was...
   3 Is it a simple problem? ~ No, it's quite...
   4 Is this yoghurt bad for you? ~ No it doesn't...
   5 Is her vocabulary getting bigger? ~ Yes, it's definitely...
   6 Do you need any special knowledge? ~ Yes, it's very...
   7 Is the hotel room expensive? ~ Yes, but the price...
   8 Were there many subjects? ~ Yes, quite a wide...

6 ABOUT YOU Write down your learning goals, or tell another student.
3 I can understand a learner’s dictionary

How can a learner’s dictionary help you? These examples are from Oxford Wordpower Dictionary.

Different meanings of
the word are given in
the definitions, which
are in simple English.

The dictionary helps you
avoid making mistakes,
and helps with grammar.

Idioms and phrasal verbs are at the end of the entry.

Examples of usage are provided.

Words that are often used together (collocations) are given in bold.

It helps you with style: for instance, whether words are formal, informal, slang, offensive, etc.

 Phonetic symbols help with pronunciation. You can find out which syllable is stressed.

It can teach you related words: this helps you build your vocabulary and select the correct word for your needs.

Glossary

definition an exact statement of what a word or phrase means. define sth v.

avoid doing sth If you avoid doing sth, you try not to do or experience it.

idiom a group of words whose meaning is different from the meanings of the individual words (also expression).

entry one of a list of items included in a dictionary, list, etc. (There are three dictionary entries on this page.)

provide sth give sth to sb or make sth available for sb.

style the way sth is written or spoken (e.g. an informal style, a formal style).

for instance syn for example.

slang very informal words or phrases used in spoken language.

offensive rude and likely to upset sb. offend sb v.

symbol a letter, number, or sign that has a particular meaning (e.g. the symbol /ʃ/ is pronounced ‘sh’).

syllable a part of a word which contains a vowel sound. (Go has one syllable and prefer has two syllables.)

relate sth to sth connect sth to sth. related adj.

build sth make sth bigger; increase sth.

select sth syn choose sth (but select is more formal).

selection n.
spotlight | stress and emphasize
Both verbs mean to say a syllable, word, or phrase with extra loudness. The related nouns are stress (on sth) and emphasis (on sth).
The stress is on the first syllable. Don’t emphasize every word.
They are also used to say that sth is important.
The newspapers stressed the need for urgent action.
The emphasis is mainly on education.

1 Is the meaning the same or different? Write S or D.

<p>| | |</p>
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>➤</td>
<td>The city is fantastic; for example, the buildings are very impressive.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>That’s a useful idiom to know.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
<td>Is that collocation correct?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3</td>
<td>What she said was very rude.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4</td>
<td>Does he use a lot of slang?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5</td>
<td>Can you avoid mistakes?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6</td>
<td>Make sure you select the right number.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7</td>
<td>The stress is on the first three letters.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8</td>
<td>It doesn’t give all the answers.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

2 Complete the sentences with a word from the box.

- symbols
- offending
- related
- entry
- ✓ selection
- syllable
- instance
- stress
- idiom
- provide
- build
- collocations
- entry

<p>| | |</p>
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>➤</td>
<td>In a dictionary, foreigner comes after the entry for foreign.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>Dictionaries have many uses: for , to find out meaning, or check pronunciation.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
<td>Does your local bookshop have a good of dictionaries for sale?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3</td>
<td>Some dictionaries can help you your vocabulary if they synonyms and opposites, or other words.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4</td>
<td>A dictionary can tell you which words are rude so that you can avoid people.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5</td>
<td>You can check the pronunciation of any word in the dictionary by looking at the phonetic and noting which is stressed.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6</td>
<td>Good luck! is given as an in the dictionary, at the end of the for luck.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7</td>
<td>Dictionaries often tell you which words go together. Examples of are make a mistake and take a photo.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8</td>
<td>In the word emphasis, the is on the first syllable.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

3 Now look at the dictionary entries on the left-hand page. Answer the questions.

<p>| | |</p>
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>➤</td>
<td>Which syllable is stressed in mistake? The second syllable</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>Which related words are given for mistake and make a mistake?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
<td>How many definitions are there in the entry for guy?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3</td>
<td>What style is the idiom You can’t win?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4</td>
<td>Is guy an offensive word?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5</td>
<td>Which phonetic symbols are given for guy?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6</td>
<td>Are these sentences correct?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>a)</td>
<td>I haven’t got the keys, but it’s not my fault; Jo lost them.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>b)</td>
<td>My dad wins a lot of money in his job.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
4 I can talk about English punctuation

A Punctuation marks

1. full stop
2. comma
3. colon
4. semicolon
5. question mark
6. exclamation mark
7. apostrophe
8. hyphen
9. dash
10. brackets
11. slash
12. quotation marks

1. Complete the words for the punctuation marks.

- comma
- full stop
- colon
- hyphen
- dash
- question mark
- exclamation mark
- apostrophe
- hyphen
- bracket
- slash
- quotation marks

2. What punctuation is used in 1–8 below? You don't need to repeat full stop each time.

- We went home early. full stop
- She had long, blonde hair.
- What are you doing?
- Congratulations!
- It's too late.
- I looked in the fridge; it was empty.
- Someone (not me) left the door open.
- A five-minute walk - and he still took a taxi.
- 'It's only me,' he said.

3. Test yourself. Cover the words and look at the punctuation marks. What are they?

B Punctuation rules

A colon is often used to introduce further details such as an explanation or a list, e.g.
- A colon is often used instead of a full stop when two sentences are very closely connected, or to separate two main clauses, especially ones that aren’t joined by a conjunction such as and or but, e.g.
- A slash separates words or phrases that are alternatives, e.g. single/married.

A full stop is used at the end of a sentence that is not a question or an exclamation, and is sometimes used in abbreviations. Each new sentence must begin with a capital letter.

A comma in writing is like a pause in speech. It is used:
- to separate parts of a sentence, e.g. After we left, someone tried to phone us.
- between adjectives, e.g. A big, expensive car
- to separate words in a list, though it is often omitted before and, e.g. I went to France, Germany, Italy and Spain.
- when words or phrases interrupt the normal progression of a sentence, e.g. I decided, however, that I needed something to eat first.
Glossary

abbreviation a short form of a word (e.g. a.m. is an abbreviation meaning ‘in the morning’).
capital letter A B C are capital letters (a b c are small letters).
pause a short period of time when sb stops talking.
separate sb/sth keep people or things away from each other. SYN divide sb/sth.
list a series of names, items, or numbers (e.g. a shopping list, a list of countries).
omit sth EMI. If you omit sth, you don’t include it. SYN leave sth out.
interrupt sth occur in the middle of sth and stop it continuing.
details small pieces of information about sth.
instead of sb/sth in the place of sb/sth.
connect sth put two or more things together. SYN join sth.
such as You use such as to introduce an example. SYN like.
alternative one of two or more things that you can choose between.

4 Complete the sentences.

► Sentences have to begin with a __________ letter.
1 I wrote a __________ of irregular verbs in my notebook.
2 I would use this dictionary __________ of the other one; it’s much better.
3 We often use and or but to __________ two parts of a sentence.
4 In this application form, you have to give __________ of your work experience.
5 I asked her to marry me. There was a long __________, and finally she said yes.
6 Prep. is an __________ of preposition.
7 You need to use more adjectives __________ as beautiful, delightful, and attractive.
8 The teacher said we can __________ out Exercise 5 and go on to Exercise 6.
9 You can use brackets to __________ extra information from the rest of the sentence.
10 The director had to __________ the lesson to tell us to leave the building quickly.
11 You could __________ the two sentences into one by using so.
12 You can use a full stop, but the __________ is that you use a semicolon.

5 Find pairs of words in the box that go together for a reason. Write a sentence about them.

comma omit abbreviation join such as p.m. information separate like leave out full stop details divide connect

Such as’ and ‘like’ mean the same thing.

What punctuation is missing, and where?

► We live in this house. A full stop is missing at the end of the sentence.
1 she works in Bristol.
2 He’s a tall thin boy.
3 The book is in on the table. Which is correct?
4 We have two choices stay here and wait, or go and look for them.
5 When we arrived we went straight to a restaurant.
6 This is my boyfriends watch.
7 After that fortunately we had no more problems.
8 We couldn’t get in the door was locked.
Unit 1

1 Rewrite the sentences. Change the part of speech of the underlined words.

- Did you discuss it? Did you have a discussion about it?
- Could you translate this, please? Could you do translation?
- I've got to revise for an exam. I've got to do revision.
- Repetition helps me remember. It helps me remember if repetition.
- How did he explain it? What was explained?
- Go on—guess! Go on—have a guess!
- I record new words in a book. I keep a record.
- Did you chat about it? Did you have a chat?
- How do you pronounce that word? What's the pronunciation?

2 Complete the text with words and phrases from the box.

I've just started university and I'm studying Italian. We spend a lot of time reading texts—they're usually articles from Italian newspapers. They contain a lot of words you don't(1) know, and to start with, you have to try to get the(2) meaning of the articles to show that you understand the general idea. In class we(3) go through the texts and(4) experiment any useful new words. The teacher tells us to(5) make a note of the meaning of new words by looking at the(6) context. We then write a(7) translation of them if we want to, and learn how to(8) pronounce them correctly. I often(9) make mistakes with(10) foreign words, but I don't think it matters; it's important to(11) recognize with language, that's the best way to make progress. Next year, I'm starting another(12) experiment language: Russian. I'm really excited about that.

Unit 2

1 Complete the sentences with a suitable word.

- I want to learn Italian—nothing very specialized, just everyday Italian.
- It was a very difficult story—quite hard to understand.
- I don't know enough words, so my vocabulary needs to expand. That is my main area of concern.
- I've lived in Costa Rica for five years now, and I can speak Spanish fluently.
- You need to know the subject very well and talk about it in detail.
- There is now a wide range of evening courses that you can do at the college.
- Does this drink contain alcohol?
- Some of the courses are too simple—I don't have the knowledge to do them.
- You have to complete each sentence with an accurate word.

2 Complete the text with words from the box.

When I went to live in Argentina, I spoke some Spanish but I couldn't understand people when they spoke Spanish to me, so it was very frustrating. But I was very encouraging. I worked hard at my Spanish, and after a while I could see that I was making a lot of progress. It was also very motivating when people told me that I was doing well.
better. My problem was that I still made a lot of mistakes, and I wasn’t (7) of them. Anyway, I kept trying, and after about a year, I was able to (8) most things I needed to, and my Spanish was also quite (9) – I only made a few mistakes.

Unit 3

1 Complete the words in the text.

When you meet a new word in a text, for example, genuine, you might want to look up the meaning in a dictionary. It's important to look at all the (1) in an (2) , and then (3) the correct one, according to the context of the sentence. For (4) , if the sentence is I bought a genuine Velasquez painting, you know the meaning is 'real' or 'authentic'. Genuine is a difficult word to pronounce, so it is worth looking at the phonic (5) , and note too how the word is (6) ; in fact, the (7) is on the first (8) .

If you come across an (9) or (10) such as under the weather, you should check the meaning (it means 'feeling slightly ill'), and then look at the (11) of the phrase: is it formal or informal? This particular phrase isn’t rude, but you certainly wouldn’t want to (12) anyone, so it’s always a good idea to check.

Unit 4

1 Read the text, then answer the questions below.

I really want to leave home, so I went to see a flat last night. It had everything: a kitchen, a living room, a bathroom, a bedroom, and a study – and it was in a great location. I realized, however, that it would be too expensive for me on my own. I rang Mr Pavlides at the agency this morning; he offered to make it a bit cheaper, so I decided to take it. My mother was really pleased. 'You’re moving out at last! But Michael, who’s going to wash your shirts for you now?' she said.

What punctuation is there:

1 after home in line 1 a comma 4 before You’re in line 4?
2 after everything in line 1? 5 after last in line 5?
3 after on my own in line 3? 6 in who’s in line 5?
4 after this morning in line 3? 7 after now in line 5?

2 Look at the text again. Complete the sentences.

1 There is a comma after home, which the two parts of the sentence.
2 There is a colon after everything. It is often used before more or a .
3 In the sentence beginning I realized, the word however the progression of the sentence, so commas are used around it.
4 After the word morning there is a semicolon. This can be used of a full stop when the two sentences are closely .
5 I can talk about appearance

**Male appearance**

- He’s got **broad shoulders** and is **well built**.
- He’s got **thick eyebrows** and **stubble**. He’s **dark-skinned** or **light- or pale-skinned**.
- He’s **clean-shaven** and **bald**. He has a **scar** on his head.
- He’s **going bald** or **losing his hair** or **his hair’s receding**.

**Glossary**

- **Male** Men and boys are **male**, women and girls are **female** (a person’s **sex** is male or female).
- **Well built** with a solid, strong body. **Syn** **stocky**.
- **Skinny** very thin, but not in an attractive way.
- **Clean-shaven** without a beard or moustache.
- **In good/bad shape** in good/bad physical condition.
- **Plump** quite fat, in a nice way.
- **Fattish** quite fat. (See spotlight, next page.)
- **Clean-shaven** without a beard or moustache.

1 One letter is missing from each word. Write the words correctly.

- skinny ____________ 3 sca ____________ 6 clean-shave ____________
- 1 eyebrows ____________ 4 brod shoulders ____________ 7 in good shape ____________
- 2 fattish ____________ 5 stubble ____________

2 Similar or different? Write S or D.

- fattish | plump S
- skinny | dark-skinned D
- in good shape | in good condition D
- go bald | be bald D
- stocky | well built D
- dark-skinned | pale-skinned S
- stubble | a scar D
- pale-skinned | light-skinned D
- He’s losing his hair | His hair’s receding D
- male | female D

3 Complete the questions. You will write your answers to the questions in Exercise 4.

- In your family:
  1 who’s in good s ____________ ?
  2 who’s going b ____________ ?
  3 who’s c ____________ -shaven?
  4 who’s got broad s ____________ ?

- ABOUT YOUR FAMILY
  5 who’s well b ____________ ?
  6 who’s sk ____________ ?
  7 who’s dark-s ____________ ?
  8 who’s got a s ____________ on their body?

4 ABOUT YOUR FAMILY Write your answers to Exercise 3, or ask another student.

5 Look at the pictures and cover the texts. Can you remember the descriptions?
B Female appearance

This is my mother at 27 when she was pregnant: in fact, she was expecting me. She had a pretty, roundish face with beautiful smooth skin and long hair.

Here’s Mum now: she looks tanned. She’s still slim with a good figure. Her appearance hasn’t changed much, but she’s got a few wrinkles! She’s going grey, and her hair’s much shorter and neater. She wears contact lenses, and you can’t tell that she’s nearly 60.

### Spotlight -ish
The suffix -ish is used with some adjectives to mean ‘quite’. A roundish face is a face which is quite round. Also: tallish, youngish, fattish, etc.

### Glossary

- **be pregnant** - SYN be expecting a baby
- **pretty** - attractive and nice to look at (used especially about girls or young women)
- **smooth** - with a completely flat surface. OFF rough.
- **skin** - Your skin covers your body.
- **tanned** - having brown skin after spending time in the sun. tan
- **slim** - thin in an attractive way. SYN slender.
- **figure** - the shape of a woman’s body.
- **appearance** - the way sb looks.
- **go grey** - become grey-haired or white-haired.
- **or white** - tidy and carefully arranged.
- **neat** - small round pieces of plastic you wear in your eyes to help you see better.
- **contact lenses** - know or guess sth.
- **tell sth**

### True or false? Write T or F.

- If your hair is neat, it’s tidy. **T**
- 1 Contact lenses are the same as glasses. **F**
- 2 Skin can be rough or smooth. **T**
- 3 A tallish person is very tall. **F**
- 4 A pregnant woman has just had a baby. **T**
- 5 You get tanned sitting in the sun. **F**
- 6 Everyone has a good figure. **F**
- 7 You usually use ‘pretty’ to describe a man. **T**
- 8 Your hair can go white or grey. **F**

### Complete the sentences.

- Does she wear contact _lenses_?

  1. Her _hair_ has gone grey, and it’s completely changed her _appearance_.
  2. She’s still very slim, so you can’t tell she’s had a baby in July.
  3. I’m feeling so old these days – look at these _wrinkles_ around my eyes!
  4. My baby’s skin is so _sensitive_ to touch, but my hands are really _neat_.
  5. She’s got a beautiful figure: she’s tall and _slim_.
  6. You can tell she’s been on holiday – she’s got a lovely _tan_.

### Cover the glossary words and look at the meanings. What are the words?

PEOPLE 21
I can talk about character

How I see myself

Dan (33) ‘I’m ambitious, self-confident, and generous. I’m also very impatient.’

Kaz (18) ‘I’m always cheerful. I’m easy-going, and I’ve got lots of energy.’

Giles (45) ‘I see myself as honest, hard-working, and generally tolerant.’

How others see me

‘Some people really like me; others think I’m arrogant and maybe aggressive.’

‘My parents don’t think I’m very responsible; my friends just think I’m crazy.’

‘Other people probably think I’m a bit dull, without much sense of humour.’

Spotlight: crazy, mad, stupid

Crazy and mad mean ‘not sensible or practical; a bit stupid’. Both words can describe a person or an action or idea, but the meaning is not always negative. They can describe someone who is a bit out of control but just wants to enjoy life. Stupid is always negative.

Glossary

see sb as sth - imagine or think of sb in a particular way.
ambitious - having a strong desire to do well or be successful. opp unambitious, ambition N.
self-confident - feeling sure about your own ability. opp insecure.
generous - happy to give more money and help than is usual. opp mean, generosity N.
impatient - not able to stay calm and wait for sth/sb. opp patient, patience N.
arrogant - thinking you are better than other people. opp modest, arrogance N.
aggressive - likely to fight or argue. aggression N.
cheerful - feeling happy.
easy-going - relaxed and not worried by what other people do.
energy - the ability to be very active without getting tired. energetic adj.
responsible - able to act sensibly and intelligently. opp irresponsible.
honest - always telling the truth. opp dishonest, honesty N.
hard-working - able to work with effort and for a long time. opp lazy.
tolerant - able to accept ideas you don’t agree with. opp intolerant, tolerance N.
dull - boring.
sense of humour - the ability to laugh at things and see when sth is funny.

1 Positive or negative, or can it be both? Write P or N or B.

- She’s very cheerful. P
- He’s very ambitious. B
- He’s very arrogant. 
- They’re a bit dull. 
- Both boys are very honest. 
- My boss is very tolerant. 
- She’s so modest. 
- He’s very self-confident. 
- Karen is so mean. 
- My brother is absolutely mad. 

22 PEOPLE
2 Correct the spelling mistakes.
- onest honest
- 1 energie
- 2 responsable
- 3 generos
- 4 cheerfull
- 5 energetik
- 6 agressive
- 7 paciente
- 8 tolerant

3 Match 1–8 with a–i.
- feeling sure about your own ability
- 1 boring
- 2 likely to fight or argue
- 3 thinking you are better than others
- 4 always telling the truth
- 5 ability to laugh at things
- 6 feeling happy
- 7 unhappy to give money or help people
- 8 able to accept ideas you don’t agree with
- a aggressive
- b cheerful
- c self-confident ✓
- d tolerant
- e sense of humour
- f dull
- g arrogant
- h honest
- i mean

4 Complete the tables.
**ADJECTIVE** | **OPPOSITE** | **ADJECTIVE** | **NOUN**
--- | --- | --- | ---
patient | impatient | ambitious | ambition
honest | | honest | |
responsible | | tolerant | |
lazy | | aggressive | |
generous | | arrogant | |
ambitious | | generous | |
self-confident | | patient | |

5 Complete the words in each sentence.
- If you disagree with Matthew, he can get a bit ______ aggressive ______.
1 My brother’s a bit irresponsible and does some ____________ things; but he’s OK.
2 Keiko’s a good person to share a flat with: she’s very ____________g__________
3 I like Zoltan; he’s got a great ____________ of h__________
4 Hamdi is a fantastic musician, but very few people realize this because he’s so m______________.
5 Since Katy got a new job and a boyfriend, she’s become more s__________-c__________.
6 My brother’s lazy, but my sisters have always been very h__________-w__________.
7 I don’t think young Andy is r__________ enough to drive a car.
8 Andrea has so much e__________; she’s always doing something.

6 ABOUT YOU Answer the questions, or ask another student.
1 Are you ambitious? If so, in what way?
2 Would you say you’re hard-working or a bit lazy?
3 Are you intolerant of anything? If so, what?
4 When do you get impatient?
5 How do you see yourself? Write three adjectives.
6 Which two qualities do you think are the most important:
   honesty, patience, tolerance, or generosity?

7 Test yourself. Cover your opposites and nouns in Exercise 4 and test yourself. Then
  cover the glossary meanings and look at the words. What do they mean?
# I can describe my feelings

## A Feelings

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Word</th>
<th>Example</th>
<th>Meaning</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>thrilled</td>
<td><em>He was thrilled to win and he kissed the cup.</em></td>
<td>very happy and excited. <strong>syn delighted.</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>furious</td>
<td><em>I lost his keys: he was absolutely furious.</em></td>
<td>very angry.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>astonished</td>
<td><em>I was astonished to hear he was married.</em></td>
<td>very surprised. <strong>syn amazed.</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>heartbroken</td>
<td><em>She was heartbroken when her father died.</em></td>
<td>very sad and emotionally upset.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>terrified</td>
<td><em>I was terrified when the plane took off.</em></td>
<td>very frightened. <strong>syn scared stiff</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>miserable</td>
<td><em>You look very miserable. What's wrong?</em></td>
<td>unhappy and depressed. <strong>syn fed up</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>proud</td>
<td><em>I felt very proud when my book was published.</em></td>
<td>pleased about sth you or other people have done.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
| jealous  | *My boyfriend is jealous when I'm with other boys.*                   | 1 angry or sad because you're afraid of losing sb's love.  
 |          | *I've always been jealous of Tom: everyone likes him.*                | 2 angry or sad because sb has sth you don't have. **syn envious.** |
| anxious  | *He was anxious before he went into hospital.*                        | worried and afraid.                          |
| upset    | *Sally was very upset because no one spoke to her.*                   | sad and angry because of sth that has happened. |

1. Complete the words and phrases.
   - Amazed 4 thr
   1. Anx 5
   2. Fur 6 scared
   3. Ast 7

2. Write synonyms for these words and phrases.
   - Worried anxious 2 fed up 4 astonished
   1. Thrilled 3 scared stiff 5 envious

3. ABOUT YOU How might you feel in these situations? Write your answers using words from the table, or ask another student.
   - Someone hits your car because they were driving badly. I'd be **furious.**
   1. You've just passed an important exam. I'd be
   2. Your best friend has bought a car that you would love to have.
   3. Your lovely old dog has just died.
   4. A man walks up to you in the street and holds a knife to your face.
   5. You're on holiday but you can't go out because you've got a bad cold.
   6. You see someone you don't know kissing your boyfriend/girlfriend.
   7. You have been chosen to make a speech at an important event.
   8. You are going somewhere by plane and you don't like flying.

4. Test yourself. Cover the meanings and look at the words. What are the meanings?
YOU AND YOUR EMOTIONS

a I'm an emotional person and I like to show my feelings.
b I think I'm quite sensitive, so I try not to upset other people.
c I'm sensitive about my appearance.
d When I'm in a bad mood, I sometimes hurt people's feelings.
e In general, I think I'm quite a moody person.
f When people have personal problems, I think I'm usually very sympathetic and supportive.

Glossary

emotional having strong feelings, and often showing them. emotion n.
show your feelings express your feelings openly. or hide your feelings.

upset sb make sb unhappy.

be in a bad mood feel angry or unhappy at a particular time. or be in a good mood.
hurt sb's feelings say sth that makes sb unhappy.
moody If you are moody, you often change and become angry or unhappy for no obvious reason.
sympathetic kind and showing you understand sb's problems (sympathetic doesn't mean 'friendly' or 'nice' in English).
supportive giving help to sb who has a problem.

5 Circle the correct answer.

Try not to hurt his feelings.
1 Sarah's not very emotional, and tends to show/ hide her feelings.
2 You can talk to Gary easily about your problems; he's very sympathetic/moody.
3 Be careful what you say to Susan because she's very sympathetic/sensitive.
4 You never know what Karen will be like because she's so moody/supportive.
5 Brian is the most emotional/insensitive man I know; he upsets everyone.
6 Love, anger, and fear are all emotions/moods.

6 Complete the sentences with a suitable word.

Caroline is very sensitive. She seems to know when someone has a problem.
1 Keep away from Elton – he's in a bad ____________ today.
2 He ____________ his parents because he was so rude to them.
3 My children cooked all my meals when I was ill. They were very ____________.
4 I broke my leg and it was really painful, but my friends weren't very ____________.
5 I'm ____________ a really good mood today. I think it's the fantastic weather.
6 Paul tends to upset people and ____________ their feelings.

7 ABOUT YOU Complete the right-hand column in the questionnaire, or ask another student.
8 I can talk about relationships

A Friendship

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Word</th>
<th>Example</th>
<th>Meaning</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>friendship</td>
<td>Our friendship has always been very important to us.</td>
<td>the relationship between people who are friends.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>make friends</td>
<td>I find it difficult to make friends.</td>
<td>form friendly relationships.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>get on (well)</td>
<td>Do you get on well with your classmates?</td>
<td>have a good relationship with sb. or not get on with sb.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>with sb</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>rely on sb</td>
<td>I can always rely on my sisters.</td>
<td>feel sure that sb will do what they say they will do. SYN depend on sb.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>reliable adj</td>
<td>My brother’s not very reliable.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>trust sb</td>
<td>You have to trust your friends.</td>
<td>believe sb is good and won’t hurt you.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>loyal</td>
<td>He was very loyal to my father.</td>
<td>being a friend to sb, even in difficult times. or disloyal.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sociable</td>
<td>She’s very sociable and gets on well with people.</td>
<td>A sociable person likes the company of other people. or antisocial.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>keep in touch</td>
<td>Simon is an old friend. We’ve always kept in touch.</td>
<td>(of two or more people) stay in contact by speaking or writing to each other.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

1 Combine words in the box to make phrases.

- rely ✓ friend get on well ✓ friends on someone ✓ a close keep make ✓ in touch ✓ on someone ✓ depend ✓ with someone

- rely on someone

2 Answer the questions.

- Another way of saying ‘stay in contact with someone’ is keep in touch

1 Rely (on) is a verb. What’s the adjective? 
2 What’s a synonym for rely on? 
3 A sociable person enjoys the company of others. What’s the opposite? 
4 What’s the opposite of loyal? 
5 What’s the relationship between people who are friends? 
6 What do you call a friend you like very much? A _______ friend.

3 Rewrite the sentences using the words in capitals in the correct form. The meaning must stay the same.

- He’s a bit antisocial. SOCIABLE He isn’t very sociable.
- He likes Ruben. FRIENDLY
- She never phones us. TOUCH
- I don’t have a good relationship with my father. GET ON
- I became her friend at university. MAKE
- My boss is very reliable. RELY
- I’ve known Donna for a long time. OLD

4 Test yourself. Cover the examples and meanings. What are the meanings?
B When things go wrong

Perfect Weekend Channel Five
Wednesday 9 p.m. – 11 p.m.

TV drama about a group of young people who got to know one another at university, and now, five years later, get together for a weekend. But things soon go wrong. John doesn’t get on with Dan, and now realizes they have nothing in common, while Pete regrets the fact that he split up with Amy, the girl he used to go out with. Now Amy is in a serious relationship with Keith (who didn’t go to university), and Keith doesn’t like Amy’s old friends. This creates tension in the group, and soon there’s a big row. Amy falls out with Pete, and Dan and John stop speaking to each other. And that’s just the beginning...

spotlight have a row / an argument
Both phrases mean ‘have an angry discussion’, e.g. I had a row with Li.
The verb related to argument is argue, e.g. They argued with each other.

Glossary

get to know sb meet sb a number of times and become friends.
one another each other.
get together (of two or more people) meet for a social reason.
go wrong used when a problem happens in a situation or relationship.
realize sth begin to understand sth that you didn’t know before.
have nothing in common (of two people) have no interests that are the same. or have a lot in common.
regret sth / doing sth feel sorry about sth you did or didn’t do.
split up with sb stop being in a romantic relationship with sb.
go out with sb have sb as a boyfriend or girlfriend.
in a (serious) relationship having a long-term boyfriend or girlfriend.
fall out with sb argue with sb and stop being friendly with them.

5 Circle the correct word.

They were very happy, then something went wrong.
1 Hana’s by/in a serious relationship.
2 Lia and Chen have fallen out/on.
3 Shall we come/get together next week?
4 They have lots in/on common.
5 She got/went out with Len at university.
6 How did you get/go to know Anya?

6 Complete the missing words.

I went out with Osman for two months, then we fell out over something stupid.
1 I don’t get on with Dirk. We a lot, and last week we had a terrible right.
2 I’d like to get to know Anders better because we have a lot in common.
3 Karla split up with him last week and I think she’s depressed.
4 We have nothing in common. That’s why I could never get on with him.

7 Complete the text.

Milo and I got to know one when we worked together during the summer. We had a lot in and got on really well, but, unfortunately, he was in a serious at the time. Then it all went He and his girlfriend Inez had a big and he up with her. We started to out with each other almost immediately, but Milo soon his decision to end his relationship with Inez. He he was still in love with her, and that our relationship was a big mistake.
9 I can talk about families

A Family relationships

Marilyn Monroe was an only child from a single-parent family, but she lived with foster parents until she was seven, and then she was adopted by her mother’s best friend. She got married at sixteen, and she got divorced three times.

Bill Clinton’s father died before he was born. His mother, Virginia, had to find a way to support Bill, so she studied nursing, and Bill was brought up by his grandparents. When Bill was four, his mother married Roger Clinton, who became Bill’s stepfather. Roger and Virginia had a son called Roger, who is Bill Clinton’s half-brother.

Glossary

only child a child with no brothers or sisters.
single parent a mother or father who looks after their children alone.
foster parent sb who looks after another person’s child in their home for a time.
adopt a child take sb’s child into your family and legally make them your child.
get divorced legally end your marriage. syn get a divorce.
support sb help someone live by giving them money, food, or a home.
bring sb up look after a child and teach them how to live.
stepfather a man who has married your mother but is not your father (related words: stepmother, stepson, stepdaughter, stepbrother, stepsister).
half-brother, half-sister a brother or sister who has either the same mother or the same father as you.

1 Complete the words or phrases.

1 an o_______ child
2 h_______-sister
3 f_______ parents
4 s_______ father
5 get _______orced
6 ad_______ a child
7 s_______ parent
8 br_______ somebody up

2 Same or different? Write S or D.

1 She’s a single parent. | She’s a foster parent. D
2 He’s an only child. | He hasn’t got any brothers or sisters. _________
3 He’s my half-brother. | He’s my stepbrother. _________
4 He’s my stepson. | He’s my wife’s son by her first marriage. _________
5 She was adopted as a baby. | She lived with foster parents as a baby. _________
6 She’s my half-sister. | She’s my mother’s sister. _________
7 Our uncle supported us. | Our uncle brought us up. _________

3 Complete the questions.

1 Where were you brought up?
2 Have you got any brothers or sisters, or are you an o_______ child?
3 Do you have any h_______-brothers or -sisters?
4 Do you know anyone who is a s_______ parent? If so, who?
5 Do you know anyone who has recently got d_______?

4 ABOUT YOU Write your answers to Exercise 3, or ask another student.
Family history 😊

I'm related to a member of the royal family.

We have ancestors who were Russian immigrants. They emigrated from Russia to Britain in the nineteenth century.

I'm from London, but previous generations of my family lived in Malta.

Some of my relatives were originally from China.

I look like my grandmother, but I take after my father. We're both very lazy!

Glossary

be related to sb = be in the same family as sb. relative n. syn relation.
member = a person who is in a group such as a family or a club.
royal = relating to a king or queen (see picture).
ancestor = a person in your family who lived a long time ago.
immigrant = a person who comes to a foreign country to live there.
emigrate from... to... = leave your country in order to live in another.
previous = happening before the one you are talking about.
generation = all the people in a family born at about the same time.
originally = in the beginning, before other things happened.
look like sb = have the same appearance as sb.
take after sb = be like an older member of your family.

5 Circle the correct answer.

- Our ancestors were Italian immigrants/members.
- 1 She's one of my ancestors/relatives; she was born in 1880.
- 2 Janet looks like/takes after her daughter.
- 3 My ancestors emigrated/related to Australia a century ago.
- 4 Are your relations/immigrants from Italy?
- 5 I'm originally/previously from Rome; that's where I was born.
- 6 He's married to a member/generation of the royal family.

6 Complete the questions.

- What do you know about your ancestors?
  1 Are you related to anyone famous?
  2 Do you have a royal family in your country?
    If so, do you have a king or a queen?
  3 Where do/did the previous generations of your family live?
  4 Which member of your family do you look like?
  5 Do you take after your mother or your father? How?

7 ABOUT YOU Write your answers to Exercise 6, or ask another student.

8 Test yourself. Look at the glossary words and cover the meanings. What are the meanings?

PEOPLE 29
When two people are planning to get married, they can choose to have a religious ceremony or a civil ceremony. On the wedding day, the groom is helped by a best man who brings the rings to the wedding ceremony. The bride may have one or more bridesmaids. Afterwards, there is a reception for the couple and the wedding guests. It’s traditional for the best man and the groom to make speeches, and then everyone drinks a toast to the couple, and wishes them a long and happy marriage. After the reception, they usually go on their honeymoon. On the same day every year after that, the couple celebrate their wedding anniversary.

**Glossary**

- **choose** vt choose pp chosen decide which thing you want. choice n.
- **ceremony** a formal public event.
- **religious** A religious ceremony takes place in a church, mosque, temple, etc. religion n.
- **civil** A civil ceremony is a non-religious one.
- **wedding** a time when a man and woman get married.
- **rings**

**wedding reception** a meal and/or party after a wedding.

**traditional** A traditional thing is sth that people have done for a long time.

**make a speech** give a formal talk to a lot of people at a special event.

**drink a toast to sb** raise a glass of wine, etc. to wish sb success or happiness.

**wish sb sth** say that you hope good things will happen to sb.

**honeymoon** a holiday for a couple who have just got married.

**celebrate sth** have a special meal, party, etc. to show you are happy about sth.

**anniversary** the date on which sth happened the previous year or in the past.

**spotlight** wedding and marriage; bride and groom

A wedding is the ceremony for a couple (two people who are getting married). Marriage is the relationship between a husband and wife. We went to my sister’s wedding on Saturday. Jack and Dora’s marriage lasted 40 years. On the wedding day, the couple are called the bride and groom. After they are married, they become husband and wife.
1 Correct the spelling mistakes. Be careful: some words are correct.
   1 marriage  7 weding
   2 anniversary  8 honeymoon
   3 I've chosen it  9 speech
   4 tradicional  10 gest
   5 bridgemaids  11 ceremonie
   6 celebrate  13 religian

2 Circle the correct word.
   Jane and Mark's wedding/marriage is next Saturday.
   1 Mark is the groom/best man.
   2 The bridesmaid/bride is Mark's sister.
   3 They have chosen/wished a religious ceremony.
   4 They've invited about sixty brides/guests to the wedding.
   5 The reception will be before/after the wedding ceremony.
   6 The rings will be brought to the ceremony by the couple/best man.
   7 Speeches are traditional at the reception/best man.
   8 When they're on their honeymoon, Jane and Mark will be bride and groom/husband and wife.

3 Complete the phrases using words from the box.
   wedding ceremony a speech man a toast ceremony ✓
   reception your honeymoon anniversary a happy marriage
   1 go on ceremony
   2 drink
   3 wish someone
   4 make
   5 bride and
   6 celebrate your
   7 a religious
   8 the best
   9 a wedding

4 Complete the questions with a suitable word.
   ABOUT YOUR COUNTRY
   1 Can people ____________ to have a religious ceremony or ____________ ceremony?
   2 Does the groom have a ____________ man at the ceremony?
   3 Does the bride have any ____________ with her?
   4 In the ceremony, do the bride and groom put on wedding ____________?
   5 Is there usually a ____________ after the ceremony?
   6 How many ____________ are usually invited?
   7 Is it ____________ for people to ____________ speeches?
   8 Do people usually drink a ____________ to the bride and groom?
   9 Do the ____________ traditionally go on their ____________ after the wedding?
   10 Do people usually ____________ their wedding anniversary every year?

5 ABOUT YOUR COUNTRY Answer the questions in Exercise 4, or ask another student.

6 Test yourself. Look at the picture and cover the text. Can you remember the words for the people?
B The end of a life

1 graves  2 gravestone  3 mourners; the family are in mourning  4 coffin

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Word</th>
<th>Example</th>
<th>Meaning</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>die (die of an illness)</td>
<td>He died of old age.</td>
<td>stop living.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>death N, dead ADJ</td>
<td>His death was very sad.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>widow</td>
<td>Mark’s widow never remarried.</td>
<td>a woman whose husband has died.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>widower</td>
<td>He’s been a widower for years.</td>
<td>a man whose wife has died.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>funeral</td>
<td>The funeral was at the church.</td>
<td>a ceremony after sb dies.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>bury sb, burial N</td>
<td>He was buried this morning.</td>
<td>put a dead body in the ground.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cremate sb, cremation N</td>
<td>My grandmother wasn’t buried; she was cremated.</td>
<td>burn the body of a dead person as part of a funeral.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cemetery</td>
<td>He’s buried in that cemetery.</td>
<td>a place where dead people are buried.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>will N</td>
<td>He left his sister €10,000 in his will.</td>
<td>a document that says who will have your money or things when you die.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>inherit sb, inheritance N</td>
<td>I inherited €1,000 from my uncle.</td>
<td>receive money or things from sb when they die.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

7 One letter is missing. Write the words correctly.

- ded ... dead 3 funeral 6 deth
- 1 widower 4 bry 7 cemetry
- 2 gravestone 5 inher it 8 cofin

8 Circle the correct words or phrases.

- We went to the coffin, cemetery, funeral yesterday.
- 1 The old lady died/is dead/is death last Tuesday.
- 2 My grandfather’s name is on the death/will/gravestone.
- 3 I met Jack at the funeral/burial/widow.
- 4 My grandfather was inherited/buried/cremated when he died.
- 5 Mrs Erikson was a widow/widower/mourner.
- 6 My wife was standing near the grave/coffin/cremation.

9 Complete the text.

I never knew my grandfather, because he died in 1960, before I was born. He died (1) heart problems. My grandmother was (2) mourning for a long time. She didn’t marry again; she was a (3) for thirty years. I was very sad at the news of her (4) in 1990. I can remember her (5) at our local church. She was (6) in the cemetery near the park. She left my mother some money in her (7) , and my uncle (8) her house.

10 Test yourself. Cover the words and examples and look at the meanings. Can you remember the words?
Review: People

Unit 5

1 Circle the correct answer.
   ▶ My uncle is going black\(\text{grey}\). 
   1 Is she waiting for/expecting a baby? 
   2 Do you wear contact\(\text{content}\) lenses? 
   3 Ahmed always looks very neat/\(\text{plump}\) and tidy. 
   4 You can't know\(\text{tell}\) that she's in her fifties. 
   5 She goes to the gym every day; that's why she still has a great appearance\(\text{figure}\). 
   6 Olga was very bald/tanned after her holiday in Portugal. 
   7 You get a few scars/wrinkles round your eyes as you get older. 
   8 My boss is in his forties but still in good shape\(\text{figure}\).

2 Complete the sentences.
   1 Emilio's well built, with broad .......... 
   2 My dad's completely ............... ; now my older brother is ............... his hair as well. 
   3 He got the ............... on his leg when he fell off his bike as a child. 
   4 I don't think his ............... has changed much in the last 20 years: he's still in good ............... . 
   5 My father has always been clean- ............... – never had a beard. 
   6 I wouldn't say she's fat, but she is quite ............... .

Unit 6

1 Complete the table.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Adjective</th>
<th>Meaning</th>
<th>Noun</th>
<th>OPP of adjective</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>ambitious</td>
<td>having a strong desire to be successful.</td>
<td>ambition</td>
<td>unambitious</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>g.</td>
<td>happy to give more money and help than is usual.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>h.</td>
<td>always telling the truth.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>t.</td>
<td>able to accept ideas you don't agree with.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>p.</td>
<td>able to stay calm and wait for sth.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>a.</td>
<td>thinking you are better than other people.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>h.</td>
<td>able to work with effort and for a long time.</td>
<td>XXXXXX</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

2 Complete the dialogues.
   ▶ Is he energetic? ~ No, he's got no ............... .
   1 That was a mad thing to do. ~ Yes, absolutely ............... .
   2 Do you find him interesting? ~ No, I think he's a ............... man.
   3 Do you think you're hard-working? ~ To be honest, no – I'm quite ............... .
   4 He's always looking for a fight. ~ Yes, I find him very ............... .
   5 She never laughs at anything. ~ I know, she's got no ............... of .......... .
   6 He's such a happy person. ~ Yes, he's always very ............... .
Unit 7

1 Replace the underlined word with either a synonym or an opposite.
   ➤ Is he always in such a bad mood?       SYN terrible     OPP good
   1 Michael is usually very sensitive.    OPP
   2 Why are they so miserable?             SYN
   3 We were amazed to see her.             SYN
   4 He never shows his feelings.           OPP
   5 I was terrified when it happened.      SYN
   6 I was delighted with my results.       SYN

2 Are these sentences logical? If not, cross out the word that is not logical and replace it with a better word.
   ➤ I was astonished that I passed the exam, but really miserable.  delighted
   ➤ She's very emotional, so she tends to show her feelings a lot. This is logical.
   1 He was furious with me, and I was thrilled.
   2 She was so proud when her son did well, and really jealous.
   3 I was anxious before the flight, and scared stiff by the time we took off.
   4 I don't know what upset her, but she was thrilled.
   5 She can be very insensitive and often hurts people's feelings.
   6 I can't talk to her because she's insensitive and very supportive.

Unit 8

1 One word is missing in each sentence. Where from? Write it at the end.
   ➤ Paulo split up with Simone last week.       up
   1 Petros and I have nothing common.
   2 How did you get know her?
   3 I like Imran; we get very well.
   4 Don't forget to keep touch.
   5 You can't rely her brother.
   6 I don't think they're a relationship at the moment.

2 Complete the sentences. Keep the meaning the same as in the sentences on the left.
   ➤ Being friends with Tomi is important to me. My friendship with Tomi is important to me.
   1 He just likes being with people. He's very
   2 I understand what happened now. I
   3 He's been my friend in difficult times. He's been very
   4 I went out for a meal with the others last week. We got
   5 We share a lot of interests. We have a lot in
   6 They argue a lot. They have a lot of
   7 She's sorry that it happened. She
   8 I can always depend on my sister. My sister is very

Unit 9

1 Which words are being defined?
   ➤ a member of your family. relative
   1 a person who comes from a foreign country to live in your country.
   2 a woman who married your father but who is not your mother.
3. someone in your family who lived a long time ago.
4. take a child into your family and make them your child legally.
5. have the same appearance as someone.
6. be like an older member of your family.
7. end a marriage legally.
8. all the people in a family born at about the same time.

2. Complete the text.

John Lennon’s ancestors were Irish (1) __________ who came to live in Liverpool. John was an (2) __________ child in a single (3) __________ family. When he was five, his mother gave John to her sister, Meni, to look after, so he was (4) __________ up by his aunt. Lennon got married in 1962 to Cynthia, and had a son, Julian. Sadly, the marriage went wrong. The Lenons got (5) __________ in 1968, and Julian was brought (6) __________ by his mother. Lennon remarried in 1969, this time marrying Yoko Ono, who already had a daughter, Kyoko, from a (7) __________ marriage which had ended in divorce. John and Yoko had a son called Sean. Julian and Sean are (8) __________ brothers, and Julian and Kyoko are (9) __________ brother and (10) __________ sister.

Unit 10

1. Find 11 more words or phrases related to weddings in the word square.

```
D R I N K A T O A S T P
C E R M W P D O C S A M
E D D U E S J R O R C A
R I N G D S H R U E X K
E P I G D X O Z P C U E
M A R R I A G E E L G A
O W U O N V I N E P O S
N U D O G G U E S T L P
Y E S M I F U R O I G E
H O N E Y M O O N O D E
K L I S H M E X O N I C
D B R I D E S M A I D H
```

2. Complete the text.

When my neighbour Mr Patrick (1) __________ recently, I went to his (2) __________. His wife died ten years ago, so he had been a (3) __________ for a long time. He always wanted to be (4) __________ in the cemetery next to his wife. There were a lot of (5) __________ at the funeral: mostly family and old friends. His son, Malcolm, (6) __________ his house, and I believe he’s going to move back to live in it.

My cousin, Elizabeth, got married last year. She and her (7) __________, Martin, had to (8) __________ whether to have a religious (9) __________ or a (10) __________ one. In the end, they (11) __________ a religious wedding. She was a beautiful (12) __________, and Martin looked fantastic. Martin’s brother, Steve, was the (13) __________ man. It was a very traditional ceremony, and afterwards there was a (14) __________ at a hotel near the church. Next week it will be their first wedding (15) __________, so the family is going to get together to (16) __________ with a big party.
I can describe the universe

A The universe

- The moon is a satellite of the earth; in other words, it circles around the earth. This takes approximately 28 days.
- The earth revolves around the sun every 365 days.
- The sun is a star, but seems much larger than other stars because it is so close to the earth. Light from the sun takes approximately eight minutes to reach the earth.
- Nine planets revolve around the sun. We call the sun and all its planets the solar system.
- Seventy-five years ago, sending rockets into space seemed far-fetched, but now it is a fact of life and we have gained considerable knowledge of the earth’s satellite and our solar system.

Glossary

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Term</th>
<th>Definition/Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>universe</td>
<td>the whole of space and everything in it, including the planets and stars.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>satellite</td>
<td>an object that moves round a bigger object in space.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>in other words</td>
<td>used for saying sth in a different way.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>circle sth</td>
<td>go round sth in a circle.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>syn</td>
<td>roughly.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>reach sth</td>
<td>arrive at a place.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>space</td>
<td>the area beyond the earth round the planets and stars.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>far-fetched</td>
<td>not easy to believe because it is very improbable.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>gain sth</td>
<td>get more and more of sth useful, such as knowledge or experience.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>knowledge</td>
<td>what you know and understand about sth.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

1 One word is wrong in each sentence. Cross it out and write the correct word.
   - The sun circles the earth. __moon__ __earth__
   - 1 The planets are in the solar space.
   - 2 The earth revolves around the moon.
   - 3 The sun is a planet.
   - 4 Man first walked on the sun in 1969.
   - 5 Venus is a star.
   - 6 We can send planes into space.
   - 7 The stars are part of the earth.

2 Complete the sentences.
   - There are billions of stars in the __universe__
   - 1 Is it important to send rockets into __space__?
   - 2 The earth revolves around the sun; in other __words__, earth is a planet in our solar system.
   - 3 The Venus Express rocket took __months__ to __journey__ the planet Venus.
   - 4 The idea of human life on Mars is __far-fetched__.
   - 5 We have __knowledge__ a lot of knowledge about the solar system in recent years.
   - 6 The earth __around__ around the sun every 365 days.
   - 7 My __of space__ is very limited. I'd like to learn more about it.
   - 8 The moon is a __of the earth.

3 Test yourself. Cover the text and name everything in the picture.
**Why go to Mars?**

Scientists have already sent satellites to explore the surface of Mars, and carried out experiments to see if they can discover any signs of life. So far, they haven't found any, but an analysis of rocks from Mars has confirmed that they were created by the presence of water and wind. In other words, life could have existed in the past.

**Glossary**

- **scientist** - a person who studies the physical world.
- **science** n. scientific adj.
- **satellite** - a piece of electronic equipment that is sent into space and moves around.
- **explore sth** - travel round a place in order to learn about it.
- **exploration** n.
- **carry out sth** - do and complete a task.
- **experiment** - a scientific test done in order to learn sth.
- **analysis** - a careful study of sth in order to explain it. analyse v.
- **confirm sth** - say or show that sth is true or definite. confirmation n.
- **exist** - if sth exists, it is present in the real world. existence n.

**Spotlight: discover or invent?**

If you **discover** something, you learn about or find something for the first time. **discovery** n. If you **invent** something, you create something that didn't exist before. **invention** n.

They've **discovered** a new planet. Who **invented** the telescope?

---

4 Circle the correct word.

There was an **experiment**/**exploration** to test the levels of sugar in the blood.

1. These animals only **explore**/**exist** in South America — nowhere else.
2. They're going to **explore**/**analyse** the area to see what they can find.
3. The **discovery**/**invention** of the electric light bulb changed people's lives.
4. Scientists have carried out/**confirmed** experiments on animals.
5. Who **invented**/**discovered** the life-saving drug penicillin?
6. We've got the data, so now we need to **analyse**/**explore** it.

5 Complete the sentences using the correct form of the word on the right.

Television was an incredible **invention**. INVENT

1. There's a report from a group of _____________. SCIENCE
2. The ____________ of penicillin was of major importance. DISCOVER
3. We're waiting for ____________ of the results. CONFIRM
4. There will be an ____________ of the findings in the laboratory. ANALYSE
5. The 60s and 70s were an exciting period for space _____________. EXPLOR
6. Humans are always looking for the ____________ of new life forms. EXIST

6 Complete the sentences.

The police **discovered** drugs inside his shoes.

1. At the moment there is no evidence that life ____________ on Mars.
2. They left camp and went to ____________ the countryside to see what they could find.
3. With the use of ____________, TV can show news from anywhere in the world.
4. Scientists believe they will have to ____________ further experiments.
5. I don't know who first ____________ the camera. Do you?
6. We knew he was ill, but the doctors have now ____________ that it's serious.

7 Test yourself. Cover the glossary meanings and look at the words. Can you remember the meanings?
12 I can talk about rivers and the sea

A Water

RIVERS
wide river

narrow river

Rivers flow to the sea. A river can be wide (width n) and deep (depth n) or narrow and shallow. If it rains heavily, a river can burst its banks, which causes floods. If there is no rain for a long time, the river dries up.

THE SEA and OCEANS
The tide comes in (high tide) and goes out (low tide) twice a day.

Boats float on the surface of the water.

In bad weather, a boat can capsize and sink. People on the boat may be trapped underwater and may drown.

Glossary
flow move smoothly (like water).
burst break open suddenly and violently.
ocean a very big sea, e.g. the Atlantic Ocean.
tide the regular change in the sea level caused by the moon and sun.
capsize (used of boats) turn over in the water.
underwater happening or existing below the surface of the water.
drown die in water because you can’t breathe.

spotlight cause v, n
To cause something is to make something (often unpleasant) happen.
The wind caused problems for cyclists.
The cause of something is the person or thing that makes it happen.
The police don’t know the cause of the accident.

38 THE WORLD AROUND US
1. One letter is missing. Write the words correctly.
   1. lak   lake
   2. floed
   3. shalow
   4. flot
   5. sulace
   6. narro
   7. pudle
   8. dron
   9. waterfal
   10. ocen

2. Match 1–8 with a–i.
   - the tide
   - burst
   - the river
   - low
   - the width
   - it flows
   - drown
   - a shallow
   - the boat
   - capsized
   - to the sea
   - its banks
   - dried up
   - in the lake
   - river
   - of the river
   - tide
   - went out

3. Yes or No? Write Y or N.
   - Do streams have a tide? N
   - Is the depth of a river the same as its width? N
   - Can you have a high tide and a low tide? N
   - Do puddles form when it rains a lot? Y
   - Can people float in water? Y
   - Can people capsise? Y
   - Can a pond dry up? Y
   - Can people swim up a waterfal? Y
   - Can people sit on the bank of a river? Y
   - Are canals deeper than seas? Y
   - Does water flow in a pond? N

4. Circle the correct word.
   - The River Seine floats/flows through Paris.
   - The leaves floated on the surface/underwater.
   - I went sailing on the pond/lake.
   - The ship capsized/drowned in the storm.
   - I swam across the whole depth/width of the river.
   - There's a little stream/tide at the end of our garden.
   - Sadly the dog drowned/sank when the ship capsized.
   - You can stand up in the river here; it's very narrow/shallow.
   - Our furniture got very wet during the floods/tides.

5. Complete the texts with a suitable word in the correct form.
   We had some storms with very heavy rain last summer. The river which runs through the city
   (1) its banks, and (2) serious floods. The water was quite
   (3) : it was two metres in some parts, and you could see people's possessions
   (4) in the water.

   We had a terrible day sailing on a (5) in the mountains last weekend. The
   wind was very strong, and suddenly our little boat (6) and we ended up in
   the water. We swam to safety, but watched the boat slowly (7) to the bottom.
   Later we discovered it was very dangerous there, and last year someone (8).
Our local beach is mainly sandy, with a few rocks and pebbles down by the shore. There's a steep cliff rising above the beach, and children often play in the caves there. At the end of the bay there's a small harbour. When the weather's bad, the sailing boats are protected from the waves and the rough sea. We often see large ships on the horizon.

**Glossary**

coast the area of land that is close to or next to the sea or an ocean.
shore the land along the edge of the sea, a lake, etc.
steep a steep hill or cliff goes up quickly from a low place to a high one.
protect sb/sth from sth keep sb/sth safe from sth, protection n.
rough a rough sea has big waves, or calm.

6 Which words are being defined?

- a small stone you find on a beach...pebble
- the line between the land or the sea and the sky
- a large piece of stone...rocks
- an area of sand or small stones beside the sea...sand
- a high steep area of rock next to the sea...cliff
- a large boat often used to carry passengers...sailing boat
- the land at the edge of the sea where there is sand or rocks...coast
- a place where ships or boats are tied up and protected from the sea...harbour
- a large hole in a cliff or under the ground...cave
- the area of land next to the sea...beach
- an area of the coast where the land goes in to form a curve...bay

7 Complete the sentences.

- It was a nice day, so we went to the beach.
- When it's stormy, the sea gets very rough.
- A huge wave hit the boat and we capsized.
- The harbour was quiet; the little boats in bad weather.
- At one end of the beach there are rocks and pebbles, but the other end is smooth.
- You can't climb the cliff, but it's quite high.
- I could see a boat on the horizon.

8 Test yourself. Cover the text and look at the picture. What are the words?
## The weather

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Word/Phrase</th>
<th>Example</th>
<th>Meaning</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>pour (with rain)</strong></td>
<td>It’s <strong>pouring</strong> outside!</td>
<td>rain heavily.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>soaking wet</strong></td>
<td>It was pouring with rain and I got <strong>soaking wet</strong>.</td>
<td>extremely wet.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>drizzle</strong> <strong>v., n</strong></td>
<td>It was <strong>drizzling</strong> when I left the office.</td>
<td>rain lightly, with very small <strong>drops.</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>rainbow</strong></td>
<td>Did you see the <strong>rainbow</strong>?</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>bitterly cold</strong></td>
<td>It’s <strong>bitterly cold</strong> today.</td>
<td>extremely cold.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>chilly</strong></td>
<td>It gets <strong>chilly</strong> in the evening.</td>
<td>a little too cold to be comfortable.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>mild</strong></td>
<td>It’s been a very <strong>mild</strong> winter.</td>
<td>warmer than usual for the time of year.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>heatwave</strong></td>
<td>I hate this <strong>heatwave</strong>!</td>
<td>a period of unusually hot weather.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>muggy</strong> <strong>syn</strong> <strong>humid</strong></td>
<td>It’s really <strong>muggy</strong> today.</td>
<td>warm and damp in an unpleasant way.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>mist</strong> <strong>n</strong> <strong>misty</strong> <strong>adj</strong></td>
<td>You get a lot of <strong>mist</strong> in the mornings in autumn.</td>
<td>thin cloud near the ground which is difficult to see through (not as thick as fog).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>frost</strong> <strong>n</strong> <strong>frosty</strong> <strong>adj</strong></td>
<td>There was a <strong>frost</strong> last night; there’s ice on the car.</td>
<td>the weather condition when the temperature is below 0°C and ice forms on windows, the ground, etc.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>breeze</strong> <strong>n</strong> <strong>breezy</strong> <strong>adj</strong></td>
<td>It’s hot today, but there’s a lovely <strong>breeze</strong>.</td>
<td>a light wind.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>gale</strong></td>
<td>There were <strong>gales</strong> last night.</td>
<td>a strong wind.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

1. Tick (✓) the correct answer.
   - Which is colder?  
     ✓ a chilly day  
     □ a mild day  
     □ a breeze  
     □ a frosty morning  
     □ a chill day  
     □ a mist
   - Which is stronger?  
     □ a gale  
     □ a breeze  
     □ a gale  
     □ a frost day  
     □ a mist
   - Which is warmer?  
     □ a muggy evening  
     □ a chilly evening  
     □ a breezy morning  
     □ a muggy evening  
     □ a mist
   - Which means more water?  
     □ It poured for an hour.  
     □ It drizzled for an hour.  
     □ fog  
     □ mist  
     □ I got wet.

2. Complete the words in the texts.

   While we were out, it suddenly started to 🌧 with rain. We didn’t have an umbrella, so we got (1) ______ wet. When the rain stopped, the sun came out and we could see a (2) ______ . It wasn’t cold; in fact, it was quite a (3) ______ day for November.

   She woke up. It was (4) ______ cold, and she noticed the (5) ______ on the windows. By midday, though, the temperature had gone up. As she left the house, she felt a few (6) ______ of rain on her head, then it (7) ______ for the rest of the day.

   Last summer was unusually hot; we had a (8) ______ which lasted for several weeks, and it was incredibly (9) ______ and unpleasant at night.

3. Test yourself. Cover the words/phrases and examples in the table and look at the meanings. What are the words?
GLOBAL WARMING is the gradual increase in the average temperature of the earth's atmosphere, and is caused by harmful gases. Many environmentalists believe that most of this pollution is the result of human activities. Here are some of the effects:

- As the ice at the poles melts, sea levels could rise by almost a metre in the next century.
- There will be more extreme and unpredictable weather, e.g. heatwaves or floods.
- The earth will become even warmer because the rainforests are disappearing.
- Famine and disease will spread, and this will especially affect people in poor countries.

Glossary

climate - the normal weather conditions of a particular region.
the environment - the natural world: the air, land, and water in which people, plants, and animals live (an environmentalist is sb who studies the environment).
gradual - happening slowly over a long period of time. gradually ADV.
the atmosphere - the gases around the earth, planets, etc.
harmful - causing damage, injury, or illness. harm sth/sb v.
gas - a substance like air, e.g. oxygen and hydrogen.
pollution - dirty and dangerous gases, chemicals, etc. that harm the environment. pollute v.

human - connected with people.

melt - If you heat ice, it melts: it changes from a solid to a liquid.
rise - increase; go higher. rise N. opp. fall v. n.

extreme - much hotter, colder, or more violent than usual.
unpredictable - If sth is unpredictable, you can't say how it will change in the future. opp predictable.

predict v.
disappear - stop existing. synonym: vanish.

famine - A famine is when there is not enough food in a country.
disease - illness in people, animals, or plants.

spread - affect more and more people or things.
4 Complete the words.

- h________m________n
- 1 p________d________ct________ble
- 2 d________s________e________r
- 3 f________m________n
- 4 h________r________m________f________l
- 5 a________t________mo________s________e________r
- 6 e________n________v________r________o________m________n________t
- 7 p________l________t________n
- 8 l________q________u________d________
- 9 d________s________s________e
- 10 c________l________m________t________

5 Good or bad? Write G or B.

- This gas won't harm anyone. G
- 1 Some kinds of animals are vanishing. ___
- 2 The flood water is falling. ___
- 3 Famine is spreading. ___
- 4 This liquid is harmful. ___
- 5 The weather is less extreme. ___
- 6 The earth's temperature is rising. ___
- 7 The ice at the poles is gradually melting. ___
- 8 The river is polluted. ___

6 Circle the correct word.

- Ice is a solid/liquid.
- 1 How does the situation affect/affect you?
- 2 It's all very predictable/unpredictable: you never know what's going to happen.
- 3 My brother studies the environment/an environmentalist.
- 4 Global warming is caused by people/human activity.
- 5 Eat your ice cream quickly - it's spreading/melting.
- 6 Water is a liquid/gas.
- 7 The rainforest is gradually disappearing/melting.
- 8 There are harmful gases in the atmosphere/effect.

7 Complete the sentences.

- The earth is gradually getting warmer.
- 1 We had a lot of e_____________ weather last year: a long heatwave and gales in the autumn. I think it's all part of c_____________ change.
- 2 If you freeze water, it changes from a l_____________ to a s_____________.
- 3 The beach was p_____________ with oil, which seriously a_____________ the sea birds and animals.
- 4 Environmentalists p_____________ that there will be a r_____________ in sea levels in the future.
- 5 With g_____________ warming, some kinds of plants and animals are d_____________ very fast.
- 6 Certain diseases s_____________ from person to person very quickly.
- 7 P_____________ has a very h_____________ effect on the environment.
- 8 After many months without rain, there is a real danger of f_____________ in this part of Africa.

8 ABOUT YOU AND YOUR COUNTRY Write your answers, or ask another student.

1 How worried are you about global warming?

2 Do you have rainforests in your country? If so, what is happening to them?

3 Has the climate changed in recent years in your country? If so, how?

4 Which human activities do you think are harming the environment most?

5 What kind of pollution is common in your country?

9 Test yourself. Cover the glossary meanings and look at the words. What are the meanings?
A Types of disaster

- **Hurricane**: this word is used especially of storms in the western Atlantic. It is a violent storm with very strong winds. In other parts of the world, especially Asia, it is called a **typhoon**.
- **Earthquake**: a sudden violent movement of the ground causing damage.
- **Tidal wave**: a very large ocean wave that is caused by a storm or earthquake, and which destroys things when it reaches land.
- **Volcanic eruption**: a volcano is a mountain with a hole in the top, and when it erupts, hot gases and lava are forced out into the air and onto the surrounding land.
- **Drought**: a long period with no rain. Crops die, and people may **starve to death**.

**Glossary**
- **disaster**: a very bad event, causing harm or death.
- **violent**: very strong and usually causing damage. **violence** n.
- **sudden**: happening very quickly. **suddenly** adv.
- **ground**: the top part of the earth's surface that people walk on.
- **damage**: harm or injury caused when sth is broken. **damage** v.
- **destroy**: break sth completely so it can't be used again. **destruction** n.
- **erupt**: explode and throw out fire, burning rocks, etc.
- **lava**: hot liquid rock (see picture).
- **surrounding**: that is near or around sth. **surroundings** n.
- **crop**: plants that are grown for food, e.g. rice and potatoes.
- **starve (to death)**: suffer (or die) because you don't have enough food.

1. Combine five more pairs of words from the box to form compound words or phrases.
   
   earth ✓  volcanic tidal surrounding starve land
   eruption violent wave quake ✓ to death storm

   ▶ earthquake

2. What nouns are formed from these adjectives and verbs?
   
   1. destroy
   2. erupt
   3. **volcanic**
   4. surrounding
   5. **violent**

3. Complete the words in the sentences.
   
   1. During the tidal wave reached land, it was over ten metres high.
   2. They expect a period of drought: the crop will die and people could starve.
   3. The volcano erupted without warning and the ground was covered in red, hot lava.
   4. There was a storm. It was the beginning of the tidal wave.

4. **Test yourself.** Cover the texts and look at the pictures. Can you name each disaster and what happens?
EARTHQUAKE HITS KASHMIR

Late last night a sudden earthquake struck the region of Kashmir on the borders of India and Pakistan, and hundreds of people are thought to have lost their lives as buildings collapsed while they slept. Thousands have now been evacuated, but there are fears that many are still trapped inside their homes, so the death toll could rise. The damage has already been considerable and the next 48 hours will be crucial, not only to rescue more people but also to try to maintain supplies of water and electricity.

Glossary

hit sth/sb  • make sudden violent contact with sth/sb. syn strike sth/sb.
collapse  • If a building collapses, it falls to the ground. collapse n.
evacuate sb  • move sb away from a dangerous place. evacuation n.
fear  • a feeling that sth bad might happen. fear v.
trap sb  • If sb is trapped, they are inside sth and cannot get out.
death toll  • the number of people killed in a disaster, accident, etc.
considerable  • very large in size or amount.
crucial  • very important.
rescue sb  • take sb from a dangerous place to safety. syn save sb.
maintain sth  • make sth continue at a certain level.
supply (pt. supplies)  • an amount of sth that you need.

5 Complete the text with words from the box in the correct form.

supply  trap  earthquake  maintain  strike/hit  fear  collapse  evacuate  rescue

When an earthquake (1) a city, there is always a danger that buildings will (2) and people will be (3) inside. As soon as the immediate danger has passed, the first job is to (4) people from the area, and (5) those in danger. At the same time, the government will send in (6) of food, water, and blankets to the disaster area. One of the hardest things of all is to (7) a supply of clean drinking water, and there is always the (8) that more people could die.

6 Replace the underlined words with a different word that has the same meaning.

► Many people are afraid that there will be more earthquakes. fear

1 Many buildings fell to the ground.
2 It could be a very important decision.
3 The villagers have all been moved from the village.
4 There are people who are inside their homes and cannot get out.
5 Scientists believe the hurricane will reach and attack Florida within 24 hours.
6 The number of people killed could be as high as 2,000.
7 The storm has done a great deal of damage.
8 He was injured while trying to take his son to safety from the fire.

7 Test yourself. Look at the glossary words and cover the meanings. Can you remember the meanings?
15 I can describe animals and insects

A Creatures great and small: wild animals and insects

tail elephant trunk
gorilla shark

stripes camel fur
tiger bear whale

spots monkey eagle wing

spider fly mosquito

Glossary

creature a living thing such as an animal, bird, fish, or insect.
wild living in natural conditions: not looked after by people.
insect a small animal with six legs, one or two pairs of wings, and a body in three parts.

1 One letter is missing. Write the words correctly.

1 leop___r___d
2 elep___n___t
3 e___a___l
4 g___r___l___a
5 w___a___l___e
6 s___i___d___e
7 n___a___k___e
8 s___a___r___k
9 m___o___n___e___y

2 Which creature:

1 has a tail? l___, e___, l___
2 is an insect? f___, b___, m___
3 has thick fur? g___, b___
4 has a trunk? e___
5 has stripes? t___
6 has spots? l___
7 has a beak and feathers? e___

Test yourself. Cover the words and look at the pictures. Name the creatures.
Snakes
There are about 2,600 different kinds of snake. About 400 are poisonous, but more are harmless. In size, they vary enormously: the smallest are 12 centimetres long, the biggest are up to 10 metres and weigh 250 kilos. Snakes don't need energy from food (the sun heats their bodies), so they can survive for months without eating.

Sharks
The average lifespan of a shark is about 25 years but some can live to be 100. They are unusual in that they have no bones in their body, and large sharks may have up to 4,000 teeth. They are very dangerous when they hunt, but only a few attack humans: more people die from bee stings than from shark attacks.

Glossary
poisonous producing a dangerous substance (poison) that can kill or harm you.
harmless not causing damage, injury, or illness. omm harmful, harm n, v.
big of a group) be different from each other.
up to used when saying the most an amount can be.
weigh have a certain weight n, which is how heavy sth is.
survive continue to live in a difficult situation. survival n.
average normal or typical.
lifespan the time that sth is likely to live (for people, we say life expectancy).

4 True or false? Write T or F.

1. Most snakes are poisonous. _______ F II 4. Snakes can be as heavy as 250 kilos. _______
2. Most sharks are harmless to humans. _______ 5. Sharks have bones in their body. _______
3. Some snakes are longer than ten metres. _______ 6. Sharks sting when they attack. _______

5 Answer the questions.

1. Is attack a noun or a verb, or can it be both? _______ both
2. What is the noun from the verb survive? _______
3. If animals have a lifespan, what do people have? Life _______
4. What is the noun from the verb weigh? _______
5. What is the adjective from poison? _______
6. What are the two adjectives from the noun harm? _______ and _______

6 Complete the words in these animal facts.

1. Some snakes can s___________ for almost a year without food.
2. Nobody knows the a___________ lifespan of a snake, but in zoos they can reach 30.
3. People h___________ sharks for their meat and skin, but also for sport.
4. Over 100 people a year die from a bee or wasp s___________
5. Snakes can grow up to ten metres long.
6. The size of sharks can v___________ from the size of your hand to the size of a bus.
7 Complete the sentences.

1. A goat often has two horns on its head.
2. A young cow is a _____________.
3. The plural of mouse is ___________.
4. Cows, sheep, and ____________ produce milk that people drink.
5. A ____________ is like a small horse with long ears.
6. A ____________ is like a mouse, but is larger.
7. A ____________ lives in or near water, and can jump.
8. A ____________ is the adult ____________ of the cow family.
9. A ____________ is a group of cows.
10. A ____________ is a large bird, similar to a chicken, that can be eaten.
11. The general word for bulls and cows on a farm is ____________.

8 Complete these animals’ names.

1. h________ e
2. g________ t
3. b________ l
4. c________ f
5. f________ g
6. m________ e
7. d________ y
8. t________ y

9 ABOUT YOU AND YOUR COUNTRY Answer the questions or ask another student.

1. Which of the animals on this page do people eat?
2. Do people keep these animals in your country? If so, why?
   - horses?
   - goats?
   - bulls?
   - donkeys?
   - mice?

10 Test yourself. Look at the picture and cover the words. Say the words.
Review: The world around us

Unit 11

1 Complete the questions and answers.

**Space Quiz**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Q</th>
<th>A</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>How long would a rocket take to travel to Mars?</td>
<td>It would take approximately 280 days.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Is the Earth the only planet in the solar system where life exists?</td>
<td>Yes, most scientists believe that to be true.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Who discovered the planet Venus?</td>
<td>Robert Goddard, in the early twentieth century.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>What are 'Phobos' and 'Deimos'?</td>
<td>They are two small moons of Mars.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>How many stars are there in the sky?</td>
<td>Nobody knows for sure, but some say ten thousand billion billion!</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

2 Complete the definitions.

- **sun** = the star that shines during the day
- **explore** = round a place in order to learn about it
- **far-fetched** = easy to believe
- **revolve around something** = go round something in a manner
- **experiment** = a scientific activity in order to learn or find out about something
- **scientist** = a person who teaches science
- **confirm** = say or show that something is true or definite
- **in other words** = used for saying something in a different way
- **invent** = create something that didn’t exist before

Unit 12

1 Circle the odd one out.

- **boat** (harbour) **ship**
  1. rock wave pebble  3. float sink drown  5. pond flood lake
  2. stream river puddle  4. bank ocean shore  6. steep shallow deep

2 Complete the sentences.

- **This river flows out to the sea.**
  1. The river is wide in some places but very narrow in others.
  2. Look! There’s something floating on the surface of the water.
  3. They’re building a harbour to provide shelter for the boats in bad weather.
  4. The boat capsized in bad weather and one person nearly drowned.
  5. Looking out to sea, there were a couple of large ships on the horizon.
  6. It wasn’t very nice on the boat because the sea was so rough.
  7. The canal is ten metres wide and the water is about two metres deep.
  8. We had to climb a twenty-foot cliff, which was very difficult.
3 One letter is wrong in each line. Cross out the word that is wrong and write the correct word at the end.

- When does the time come in this morning? tide
  1 There are large socks on the beach.
  2 They travelled by chip.
  3 There’s a sleep cliff by the shore.
  4 We have a number of fish in our pony.
  5 We saw some fishing boots.
  6 Look out! There’s a big cave coming.
  7 It rained heavily and we had a floor.
  8 Why did the boat pink?
  9 The river blows down to the sea here.
  10 It’s a very sandy peach.

Unit 13

1 Complete the sentences.

- Cars and factories are causing a lot of pollution.
  1 It’s ________________ with rain outside. The children will get very wet.
  2 What are the main ________________ of global warming?
  3 It’s usually cold in January, but this winter it has been very _________________.
  4 Unfortunately, it’s very hard to ________________ the future: anything could happen.
  5 It was very hot, but fortunately there was a lovely ________________ coming off the sea.
  6 Global warming is causing more ________________ weather conditions, which will ________________ people in different parts of the world in different ways.

2 Replace the underlined words with a single word that has the same meaning.

- Pollution is damaging the air, land, and water in which we live. environment
  1 Global warming will cause damage to the environment.
  2 If you heat ice, it changes from a solid to a liquid.
  3 With global warming, sea levels will get higher.
  4 Famine could affect more people in a larger area.
  5 These changes may happen slowly over a period of time.
  6 Some rainforests will no longer exist.

Unit 14

1 Match two sentences below with each of the natural disasters in the box.

- hurricane  earthquake ✓  tidal wave  volcanic eruption  drought

- Many buildings collapsed. earthquake
  1 Hot gases came out of the top of the mountain.
  2 Winds reached 150 kph.
  3 There was a huge volume of water.
  4 We’ve had months without rain.
  5 There was a sudden violent movement of the ground.
  6 When it reached land, it destroyed everything along the beach.
  7 Lava covered the surrounding villages.
  8 People are starving to death.
  9 Many trees were destroyed in the storm.
2 Match 1–7 with a–h.

1. The death ______
2. The school and several houses ______
3. They rescued ______
4. They need to maintain ______
5. People are trapped ______
6. The earthquake struck ______
7. People fear that ______

a. in the early morning.
b. more people.
c. inside buildings.
d. toll could rise.
e. more will die.
f. damage.
g. collapsed.
h. supplies.

Unit 15

1. Complete the table with words from the box.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Wild animals</th>
<th>Farm animals</th>
<th>Insects</th>
<th>Sea creatures</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>tiger</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

2. What is the connection between each creature on the left and a word on the right?

- Tigers have stripes.
- Eagles have beaks.
- Snakes have stripes.
- Leopards have spots.
- Bears have fur.
- Bees have stings.
- Goats have horns.
- Whales have trunks.
- Honeycombs have honey.
- Leopard have spots.

3. Complete the crossword.

**ACROSS**
2. birds have these
5. ______
6. differ from each other
8. large animal, lives in the desert
9. bees can do this
10. a very intelligent animal
11. a young cow
12. how heavy something is
13. small creature with eight legs

**DOWN**
1. plural of *mouse*
3. long thin creature, moves along the ground
4. you can die if you eat or drink this
7. not causing injury or danger
9. large sea creature, can be dangerous
16 I can describe a range of food

**A Fruit, vegetables, and herbs**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>plums</th>
<th>apricots</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>raspberries</th>
<th>grapefruits</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>3</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>avocado</th>
<th>figs</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>5</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>coconut</th>
<th>passion fruits</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>7</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>papaya</th>
<th>pomegranates</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>9</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>basil</th>
<th>thyme</th>
<th>rosemary</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
<td>parsley</td>
<td>mint</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**1 Circle the odd one out in each group.**

- fig, coconut (pomegranate) raspberry
- leek, papaya, artichoke, asparagus
- spinach, basil, mint, rosemary

**3 Find five more fruits from the letters.**

- BARSERPY (raspberry)
- 2 NOCUTOC
- 4 FRATUGERIP (asparagus)
- 1 MULP
- 3 PRTOCIA
- 5 DAJOAOAC

**4 ABOUT YOUR COUNTRY** Write your answers or ask another student.

- Do people eat these things in your country? Yes. / Yes, but not much. / No.
  - papaya
  - coconut
  - raspberries
  - passion fruit
  - plums
  - basil
  - parsley
  - chickpeas
  - asparagus
  - artichoke
  - sweetcorn
  - fennel

**5 Test yourself. Cover the words and name the things in the pictures.**
What's the missing letter? Write the correct word.

1. duck
2. lobster
3. rabbit
4. squid
5. kiney
6. trot
7. oster
8. live
9. val
10. sea bass
11. oyster
12. salmon

ABOUT YOU AND YOUR COUNTRY Write your answers, or ask another student.

1. Which meat do people eat most: veal, rabbit, or duck?
2. Which fish do people eat most: cod, carp, or salmon?
3. Which seafood do people eat most: crab, clams, or mussels?
4. Are there any kinds of seafood above that you never eat? Why?
5. Are there any kinds of meat above that you never eat? Why?
6. Are there any kinds of fish above that you never eat? Why?

Test yourself. Look at the pictures and cover the words. Can you name the different types of meat, fish, and seafood?
A Diets 🎧

Who needs to diet?
I never go on a diet: it’s a waste of time. Diets list all the food that is good for you, but few people can keep them up. I haven’t put on weight in twenty years. Here’s why:

- I eat almost anything I like, but I don’t eat a lot. And I don’t eat junk food.
- I drink plenty of water. It’s better for you than fizzy drinks, and cheaper too.
- I avoid snacks between meals because most of them are fattening.
- I’ve cut down on the amount of food I eat in the evening.
- I get plenty of exercise.

Glossary
- a waste of time a bad use of your time (also a waste of money).
- good for you SYN healthy. off bad for you / unhealthy.
- keep sth up continue doing sth.
- put on weight become heavier and fatter. off lose weight.
- junk food food which is not good for you (e.g. crisps).
- plenty of sth as much of sth as you need.
- fizzy drink a drink containing small bubbles of gas.
- snack a small amount of food usually eaten between meals.
- fattening making you fatter.
- cut down on sth have less of sth.
- exercise physical activity that keeps you healthy.

Spotlight: diet
A person’s diet is the food they eat. It can be a balanced diet (all the right food the body needs), or a bad diet (too much of the wrong food). Some people diet / go on a diet, which means eating less to lose weight.

1. Good for you or bad for you? Write G or B.
   - healthy food ... G ...
   - 1 junk food ...
   - 2 fizzy drinks ...
   - 3 plenty of water ...
   - 4 fattening food ...
   - 5 snacks between meals ...
   - 6 a balanced diet ...
   - 7 plenty of exercise ...

2. Complete the sentences.
   - Eat it – it’s good for ________ you.
   - 1 They’re both going __________ a diet.
   - 2 She’s cut down __________ chocolate.
   - 3 I tried to diet but couldn’t keep it __________.
   - 4 That diet was a waste __________ time.
   - 5 He’s put __________ a lot of weight.
   - 6 We’ve got plenty __________ orange juice.

3. Complete the sentences with a suitable word.
   - You shouldn’t eat much cream and cheese: they’re __________.
   - 1 You should drink __________ of water: about 6 to 8 glasses a day.
   - 2 You should get plenty of __________. One good way is going to the gym.
   - 3 It’s difficult to __________ down on the amount of salt you eat.
   - 4 Doing lots of exercise is better than going on a __________.
   - 5 I think diets are __________ of time and money.
   - 6 The problem with diets is that most people can’t __________ them up.

4. ABOUT YOU Do you agree with the sentences in Exercise 3? Write Yes or No.
Recipe for Cottage Pie

Ingredients
- 300 g minced beef
- 300 g potatoes
- 1 large onion
- 1 carrot
- 2-3 chopped tomatoes
- 300 mL beef stock
- 1 tablespoon of flour
- butter, salt, and pepper

Peel the potatoes and boil until just cooked. Then mash them with butter.
Chop the onion and carrot. Fry the meat and vegetables quickly, then stir in the flour and cook for one minute. Add the stock, tomatoes, salt and pepper, and let it all cook slowly for 20 minutes. Then put it in a large dish, cover with the mashed potato and some butter, and bake in a hot oven for 30 minutes.

Glossary
- recipe: a set of instructions for cooking sth.
- ingredients: the food items you need to have to make sth to eat.
- stock: water with added flavour of meat, fish, or vegetables.
- boil sth: cook sth in water, usually in a saucepan.
- fry sth: cook sth in oil, usually in a frying pan.
- add sth: put sth together with sth else.
- dish: a container for serving food at the table (it is larger than a plate).
- bake sth: cook sth in the oven without oil or fat (with oil or fat = roast).

5 Which word is being defined?
- Use a special machine to cut meat into very small pieces: **mince**
  1. Remove the skin
  2. Cut into many pieces
  3. Put something with another thing
  4. Press and mix until soft and smooth
  5. Cook in water
  6. Cook in oil
  7. Cook in the oven without oil or fat
  8. Cook in the oven with oil or fat

6 Complete the words in each sentence.
- Boil the carrots in that saucepan.
  1. I've got a good r... for spaghetti Bolognese, so we just need to buy the i... 
  2. A... the meat to the vegetables and fry it for about 10 minutes.
  3. The frying p... is fine, but I need a larger d... to serve the meat on.
  4. You have to b... the cake in the o... for about 40 minutes.
  5. If you add some f..., it will make the sauce thicker.
  6. Add the s... , then s... the rice continuously while it cooks.

7 Test yourself. Cover the text and say what you can see in the pictures. Then look at the food but cover the cooking instructions. How do you make Cottage Pie?
18 I can talk about money

A Buying things

A phone costs €120. You can't afford it, but there's a scratch on it, so you ask the shop assistant for a discount.

They agree to take €20 off, so you buy it and get a receipt.

Next day, there's a problem with it, so you take it back and ask for a refund.

They refuse, so you wait for the sales.

Then, it is reduced to €80 - a bargain.

You buy it and pay cash. You give them €100 and they give you €20 change.

1 Complete the sentences.

► If something costs €10 less than usual, it has €10 off.
1. If you don't have enough money to buy something, then you can't afford it.
2. If you ask to pay less than the normal price, you are asking for a discount.
3. If the normal price is €60 and the shop sells it for €50, then it has been reduced by €10.
4. The time when shops sell goods more cheaply than normal is called the sales.
5. If you buy something which is a good price for the product, you can say it's a bargain.
6. If you pay with €50 for something that costs €30, you should get €20 change.
7. When you have paid, the shop assistant should give you a receipt.
8. If you want your money back on a product, you can ask for a refund.

Glossary

afford sth If you can afford sth you have enough money to pay for it.
scratch a mark on the surface of sth made by a sharp object (see picture).
discount a cut in the usual price of something. SYN reduction.
off If sth has €20 off, it costs €20 less than usual.
receipt a piece of paper that shows that sth has been paid for.
refund an amount of money paid back to you when you return sth to a shop.
the sales a time when shops sell things at a lower price.
reduce sth make sth less in size, quantity, or price. reduction N.
bargain sth that is a good price or is cheaper than usual.
change If sth costs €2 and you give the assistant €5, you get €3 change.

2 Complete the questions in the questionnaire.

► Do you keep the receipt when you've bought something?
1. When you go shopping, do you always look for a bargain?
2. If you saw a product in a shop that had a scratch on it, would you ask the shop assistant to take money off?
3. Do you always check your change when you pay?
4. Do you often wait and buy things in the sales? If so, what things?
5. Do you often take things back and ask for a refund?

ABOUT YOU

I often lose it..

3 ABOUT YOU Answer the questions in Exercise 2, or ask another student.
B I'm not very good with money

LOTTERY WINNER LOSES EVERYTHING!

Maria Costas was an ordinary working mum without much income until she won over €3m on the lottery and became a very wealthy woman. She immediately bought a house worth €1m, a car that cost a fortune, and jewellery valued at €250,000. Unfortunately, the house was a waste of money. She owned it for six months, never lived there, then had to sell it for much less than she paid for it. Maria also wasted huge amounts of money on designer clothes and foreign holidays, and within eighteen months she was completely broke. Now she owes the bank over €5,000, and has credit card debts as well.

Glossary

- income: the money you earn from work, plus any other money you receive.
- wealthy: rich, syn well off.
- worth: if a flat is worth €3m, you could sell it for €3m (that is the value).
- cost a fortune: be very expensive.
- value sth at sth: decide what sth is worth, or what you could sell it for.
- waste of money: a bad use of money.
- own sth: if you own sth, it is yours; it belongs to you.
- huge: very large, syn massive.
- amount: a quantity of sth; a sum of money.
- broke: nrh having no money.
- owe sb sth: have to pay money to sb for sth they have done or given.
- debt: an amount of money that you owe sb.

4 Cover the text. Answer the questions.

- How did Maria become wealthy?
- How much was her new house worth?
- What was her jewellery valued at?
- How long did she own her new house?
- Why was the house a waste of money?
- How much does she owe the bank?
- Does she have any other debts?

5 Rewrite the sentences using the words in capitals.

- My boss has a lot of money. WEALTHY My boss is very wealthy.
- It's a very large house. HUGE
- The house is worth £2,000,000. VALUE
- Rani hasn't got any money. BROKE
- The flat doesn't belong to me. OWN
- Her shoes were very expensive. FORTUNE
- Gisela has debts of €5,000. OWE

6 Complete the sentences.

- The watch went wrong after two months; it was a waste of money.
- My uncle won a huge amount of money, so he's very off now.
- I haven't got any money; I'm completely broke.
- It's a nice flat, but it isn't half a million euros.
- It's an absolutely school: there are about 2,500 students.
- He's got a day job and an evening job, so he has a good

7 Test yourself. Look at the glossary words and cover the meanings. What are the meanings?
I can talk about sleep

A Before, during, and after sleep

BEFORE: You feel sleepy, start yawning, and decide to go to bed. You might put on pyjamas or a nightie, perhaps set the alarm, and then get into bed. Soon, if you're lucky, you fall asleep.

DURING: When you're asleep, you have dreams and possibly nightmares. Some people snore at this point they're fast asleep.

AFTER: 7:30 a.m. The alarm goes off. It might wake you up, or you might be wide awake already. People without an alarm might oversleep, others might decide to have a lie-in.

Glossary

sleepy tired and ready to go to sleep.
fall asleep start sleeping, SYN go to sleep.
asleep sleeping.
nightmare a bad dream.
fast asleep sleeping deeply, SYN in a deep sleep.
off wide awake.
go off ring or make a noise.
wake sb up make sb stop sleeping.
oversleep sleep longer than you should or want.
have a lie-in stay in bed later than usual.

1 Replace the underlined word or phrase with words or phrases with the same meaning.

I felt tired, so I went to bed quite early last night. I went to sleep without a problem and very soon I was in a deep sleep. Unfortunately, in the middle of the night, I had a bad dream which woke me up. After that, I was awake for ages and didn't fall asleep again until about half past four, so when the alarm rang just after seven, I didn't hear it and I carried on sleeping. When I finally woke up, I felt terrible.

2 Complete the sentences.

1 Barry's still in bed and he's fast asleep. Do you want me to wake him up?
2 I felt really tired, so I went to bed.
3 I forgot to turn off my alarm last night, and I'm afraid I overslept this morning.
4 I don't have to get up early tomorrow, so I think I'll have a lie-in.
5 It was after midnight but I still felt wide awake.
6 I felt really tired – I couldn't stop yawning.
7 My husband wears red pajamas in bed and snores so loudly that he keeps me awake.

3 Test yourself. Cover the text above. Say what you can see in the pictures.
B Sleep habits

Antonio: 'I sleep like a log wherever I am.'
Ella: 'If I eat late, I often have a restless night.'
Hiroko: 'I need a good night's sleep, otherwise I can't concentrate the next day.'
Raul: 'Lack of sleep makes me really irritable.'
Suzanna: 'I often have nightmares and wake up feeling exhausted.'
Carla: 'I've always been a heavy sleeper - nothing disturbs me.'
Nick: 'I suffer from insomnia, so I never get much sleep.'
Agneszka: 'During the day, I often have a nap.'
Omar: 'When there are things on my mind - like exams - I sleep really badly.'

Glossary

habit a thing you do often, almost without thinking.
sleep like a log sleep very well. or: sleep badly.
have a restless night be unable to sleep well and often wake up.
concentrate (on sth) give all your attention to sth.
lack of sth a situation in which you don't have enough of sth (e.g. money, food, or sleep).
irritable becoming angry easily.
exhausted extremely tired, physically or mentally.
a heavy sleeper a person who doesn't wake up easily. or: a light sleeper.
disturb sb do sth to stop sb who is trying to sleep, work, etc.
suffer from sth have the experience of sth unpleasant.
insomnia If you suffer from insomnia, you are often unable to sleep.
have a nap have a short sleep. e.g. for half an hour.
on my mind If sth is on your mind, you're thinking or worrying about it.

4 Find six more phrases in the box.

concentrate ✔ have like a log insomnia have a restless sleep a nap
heavy on something ✔ on night suffer from sleeper my mind

concentrate on something

5 Complete the sentences with suitable words or phrases.

I get very _______ if I don't sleep well.
1 These days I often have a __________ after lunch; it's almost become a ___________.
2 After a relaxing bath and a hot drink, I always sleep _____________________________.
3 I never sleep more than three hours a night - I _____________________________ insomnia.
4 I had too much to eat and drink last night, and I had a very ___________ night.
5 I didn’t sleep well last night because I’ve got a lot of things on my ___________.
6 Nothing ___________ me at night - I'm a very _____________ sleeper.
7 I was absolutely ___________ last night and I slept for ten hours.
8 I'm afraid I'm a bit irritable at the moment. I'm suffering from a _____________ of sleep.

6 ABOUT YOU Read the statements at the top of the page again. Are they true for you? Write your answers or ask another student.
Hold the affected area under running water\(^1\) for 15 minutes. Cover it with a dry, clean dressing\(^2\) to prevent infection. If symptoms of infection develop, see your doctor.

Wash and dry your hands thoroughly. Clean the wound under running water. Dry the area, and put a dressing over it temporarily while you clean the skin around the wound. Cover the cut completely with a dressing, or bandage\(^3\) it. It should heal up in a few days.

**Glossary**
- cover sth: put sth over sth, especially to protect it.
- prevent sth: stop sth from happening. prevention N.
- infection: an illness caused by bacteria or a virus.
- symptom: a change in your body which is a sign of illness.
- develop: grow or increase.
- thoroughly: in a very careful and complete way.
- wound: an area of damage to part of your body (especially a cut).
- temporarily: for a short time only.
- heal or heal up: become healthy again.

1. Complete the words.
   - prevent
   - infection
   - bandage
   - thoroughly
   - wound
   - bandage
   - cover
   - heal
   - symptom
   - 1 th___ r___ ghl___
   - 2 b___ n___ ge
   - 3 th___ r___ ghl___
   - 4 w___ nd
   - 5 b l___ d
   - 6 s m p t m
   - 7 t___ por r___ ly
   - 8 d___ v___ l___

2. Complete the texts.
   I was cooking last weekend and picked up a hot pan and burnt myself. It was really painful.
   I held the (1) b_________ under (2) r________ water for fifteen minutes, then I (3) c_________ it with a dressing. I made sure it was clean because you have to (4) p_________ infection. Since then, it's got a lot better and I haven't had any (5) s_________ of infection.

   I cut my hand yesterday. I cleaned the (6) w_________ under running water, then covered it (7) t_________ with a (8) d_________, and washed the skin around it. I couldn't find a (9) b_________, so I went to the chemist's for one. I probably didn't clean the wound (10) t_________ enough, as it hasn't (11) h_________ very well, and I think I've got an (12) i_________.

3. Test yourself. Look at the glossary words and cover the meanings. Can you remember the meanings?
A nasty injury

The other day I slipped and fell backwards and banged my elbow on the ground. I started to feel dizzy and then I fainted. I was unconscious for a minute or so.

When I came round, my arm was very painful. It was quite swollen and bruised, but it wasn't bleeding. I realized it was a serious injury, so I went to hospital.

4 True or false? Write T or F.

▶ If you come round, you are conscious. T

1 If you bang your head, it always bleeds. 
2 If you faint, you become unconscious. 
3 If you lose blood, you always faint. 
4 A bruised knee looks blue. 
5 A nasty burn is a serious burn. 
6 If you slip, you can easily fall. 
7 Your elbow is at the end of your arm. 
8 A swollen finger is bigger than usual. 
9 Feeling dizzy is very painful. 
10 Backwards is the opposite of forwards.

5 A word is missing. Where from? Write it at the end.

▶ The ball hit him next to his eye; his eye was quite/swollen the next day. bruised

1 I on the ice and fell over. 
2 I know he slipped, but did he fall or forwards? 
3 He fainted, and when he came he didn't know where he was. 
4 Nobody was killed, but three people were in the accident. 
5 She her head on the door and fell to the floor. 
6 My finger was so I put a dressing on it.

6 ABOUT YOU Which of the following have you done or experienced? Tick them.

1 had a swollen eye. 
2 fainted in a public place. 
3 had a serious injury. 
4 slipped and fallen into a river. 
5 had a nasty burn on your arm. 
6 lost quite a lot of blood in an accident.

GLOSSARY

nasty very bad or unpleasant.
injury an area of damage done to sb's body, especially in an accident. injure v.
backward(s) in the direction behind you. opp forward(s).
bang sth hit a part of your body against sth when you are moving.
dizzy feeling as if everything is turning around and you might fall.
unconscious in a state like sleep, often caused by an injury. opp conscious.

come round become conscious again. opp faint, pass out.
swollen larger than usual because of an injury.
bleed lose blood from your body.
21 I can talk about cars and driving

A The car

1 bonnet  
2 windscreen wiper  
3 windscreen  
4 boot  
5 wheel  
6 tyre  
7 door handle  
8 wing mirror  
9 number plate  
10 headlights  
11 engine  
12 steering wheel  
13 speedometer  
14 ignition  
15 rear-view mirror  
16 gear stick/lever  
17 accelerator  
18 brake  
19 clutch  
20 horn

1 Combine words from the box to form six more compound words.

rear-view ✓ steering door windscreen lever mirror number plate

> rear-view mirror

2 Outside the car or inside the car? Write O or I.

- clutch  I
  1 tyre  
  2 speedometer  
  3 steering wheel  
  4 headlight  
  5 brake  
  6 rear-view mirror  
  7 wheel  
  8 horn  
  9 windscreen wiper

3 Complete the sentences.

If you want to . . .

- start the car, turn on the ignition  
  1 stop, put your foot on the 
  2 change gear, put your foot on the 
  3 go faster, put your foot on the 
  4 store luggage, open the 
  5 look at the engine, open the 
  6 see at night, turn on the 
  7 turn a corner, look in your 
  8 drive in the rain, turn on the 
  9 warn someone, press your

4 Test yourself. Cover the words and look at the pictures. How many things can you name?
B Driving tips

TIPS FOR SAFER DRIVING

- Always be prepared for bad road conditions and bad drivers.
- On wet roads, brake, steer, and accelerate gently to avoid skidding.
- Watch out for motorcyclists and cyclists; give them plenty of space when overtaking.
- In car parks, reverse into a parking space rather than drive into it.
- Keep to the speed limit and don’t drive too close to the vehicle in front.

Glossary

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Word</th>
<th>Definition</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>tip</td>
<td>a piece of practical advice.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>be prepared for sth</td>
<td>be ready and able to deal with any problems.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>prepare v.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>brake</td>
<td>go more slowly or stop a vehicle by using the brakes.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>steer</td>
<td>control the direction a vehicle is moving in.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>accelerate</td>
<td>go faster. or slow down.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>skid</td>
<td>suddenly move sideways without control.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>watch out</td>
<td>be careful because there is a possible danger.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>overtake sb/sth</td>
<td>go past sb/sth that is going more slowly.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>reverse</td>
<td>go backwards in a car.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>rather than</td>
<td>instead of; in place of.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>speed limit</td>
<td>the highest legal speed at which you can drive on a road.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>close to sth</td>
<td>near sth.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

spotlight keep

Keep often means ‘continue or stay in a particular place or condition’.
Keep to the speed limit. (Stay below the speed limit.)
Keep left. (Stay on the left.)

5 Cover the glossary, then complete the meanings.

- brake = stop a vehicle
- overtake = go another car
- accelerate = go
- reverse = go

4 tip = a piece of

5 steer = control the of the vehicle

6 rather than = of

6 Complete the sentences.

- You shouldn’t overtake on a bridge.

1 The weather was awful and I wasn’t really for it.
2 I never go over the speed, or drive too to the cars in front.
3 He crashed into the tree after he on the wet road.
4 There’s a school on the corner, so out for small children.
5 Do you always to the speed limit?
6 I parked in the street than the car park because it’s free.

7 ABOUT YOU Write your answers, or ask another student.

1 Are these useful tips, or did you know them already?
2 Do you usually brake and accelerate gently?
3 Do you usually reverse into parking spaces in a car park? Why/Why not?
4 Are there times when you don’t keep to the speed limit?
5 Do you know what to do if your car skids?
6 What do you do to prepare for bad winter weather?

8 Test yourself. Look at the glossary words and cover the meanings. What are the meanings?
22 I can describe travel problems and accidents

A Trains and planes 🗽
‘We had trouble getting to the airport because we got held up in traffic.’

‘I wanted to leave at 8.30, but my day return was only valid after 9.30.’

‘The train was due at 9.42 but it didn’t get in until 10.25.’

‘I was late because they cancelled my train without warning.’

‘The flight from Heathrow was delayed, so I missed my connecting flight to Palermo.’

‘My brother was meant to pick me up at the airport, but he didn’t turn up.’

Glossary
- trouble (doing sth/with sth) a situation that causes a problem.
- get/be held up if you get held up or are held up, sth has caused you to be late. syn. be delayed.
- day return a ticket to travel to a place and back again on the same day.
- valid acceptable and able to be used.
- due expected to arrive or happen.
- get in (usually of a train or coach see picture) arrive.
- cancel sth decide that sth that has been planned will not happen.
- warning information that sth bad may happen.
- connecting flight a flight that leaves soon after another one arrives.
- meant to do sth if sb is or was meant to do sth, they have been asked to do it.
- pick sb/sth up go to a place and collect sb/sth (usually in a car).
- turn up arrive or appear (often used in the negative).

1 Good news or bad news? Write G or B.
- I got my connecting flight. ☑
- 1 The train was cancelled. ......
- 2 The train’s due in a minute. ......
- 3 They didn’t turn up. ......
- 4 This ticket is still valid ......
- 5 I couldn’t get a day return ......
- 6 They didn’t get held up ......
- 7 We were delayed ......

2 Complete the sentences.
- My husband was meant to meet me, but he didn’t turn up.
- 1 They’ve just said the train is due in five minutes, so that’s good.
- 2 The plane to Madrid was late, so I missed my connecting flight to Malaga.
- 3 We had a lot of bother at the border: we were delayed for two hours.
- 4 Passengers arrived late because the train company cancelled two trains this morning.
- 5 I was supposed to meet them at the station, but I got held up in the traffic.
- 6 What time does your train get in?
- 7 He’s gone to the airport to pick them up.
- 8 There was no warning that trains might be cancelled.

3 ABOUT YOUR COUNTRY Write your answers or ask another student.
1 Do most trains get in on time, or are they often delayed? If delayed, why?

2 When did you last miss a train or plane? Why, and what happened?
Hi Sammy

We've just got back from a little trip to Spain. We stayed overnight in Malaga, then hired a car and drove up to Seville, stopping off at Osuna on the way. We loved Seville - you really must go there. We also went down to Cadiz, via Jerez, but the journey was a nightmare! We got stuck in a traffic jam for hours, and when we finally ended up on the outskirts of Cadiz, there was more heavy traffic because of the rush hour. Still, it was nice when we got there. We went to . . .

**Glossary**

**trip** a journey to a place and back again, for business or pleasure, often for a short period of time (e.g. a day trip, a business trip).

**overnight** for one night.

**hire a car** pay to use a car for a short time. *syn* rent a car.

**stop off** stop during a journey to do sth.

**via** going through a place (to get to another place).

**nightmare** *n* an experience that is very unpleasant.

**get/be stuck** be unable to move easily.

**traffic jam** a long line of cars moving very slowly.

**end up** find yourself in a place or situation you didn’t plan.

**the outskirts** (pl. *n*) The outer part of a town or city is called the outskirts.

**heavy traffic** a lot of cars on the road at a particular time.

**the rush hour** the time when a lot of people are travelling to and from work.

**Spotlight on Way**

The **way** is the route or direction that you need to take to get somewhere.

Is this the **way** to the bank? I went the wrong way and got lost. We stopped on the way to Scotland. I saw him on my way to school.

4. Match words on the left with words on the right to make eight more words or phrases.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>heavy</th>
<th>rush</th>
<th>hire</th>
<th>traffic</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>the wrong</td>
<td>stop</td>
<td>get</td>
<td>end on</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>off</td>
<td>way</td>
<td>traffic</td>
<td>stuck up</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>a car</td>
<td>hour</td>
<td>the way</td>
<td>jam</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

5. Complete the definitions.

- The outer part of a town or city is the **outskirts**.
- A journey to a place and then back again is a **trip**.
- A long line of cars moving slowly is a **traffic jam**.
- If you stay somewhere for one night, you stay **overnight**.
- To pay to use a car for a short time is to **hire** it.
- A very unpleasant experience is a **nightmare**. It also means 'a bad dream'.
- If you go through Birmingham to get to London, you go **via** Birmingham.

6. Complete the questions.

1. Have you or your family ever **rent** a car? If so, when and why?
2. On long journeys, do you want to get from A to B as quickly as possible, or do you like to **stop off** somewhere on the way?
3. Do you often get **stuck** in **heavy traffic**?
4. Do you ever go on **day trips**? If so, where to?

7. **About You** Write your answers to Exercise 6, or ask another student.
A road accident

Here's the latest travel news...

There's been a serious accident on the M3 outside Winchester. It occurred just after 7:00 a.m., when a van skidded on the wet road and collided with other vehicles. The accident has blocked two lanes of the motorway. Emergency services are at the scene of the accident, and motorists are being advised to avoid the area.

And on the M23 at Junction 9 near Gatwick, an ambulance has broken down while taking an injured driver to hospital. This is causing delays for traffic on the way to the airport...

8. One letter is missing. Write the words correctly.
   - injured
   - serious
   - ambulance
   - vehicle
   - break down
   - injured

9. Replace the underlined word or phrase with a word or phrase that has the same meaning.
   - Was it a bad accident? **serious**
   - Fortunately the driver wasn't **hurt**.
   - There are too many **cars, vans, and lorries** on the road.
   - The van **crashed into** another car.
   - The car **went sideways out of control** on the icy road.
   - The police and an ambulance arrived **within minutes**.
   - The accident **happened** late last night.

10. Complete the sentences.
   - The car was hit by a big **van**.

11. Test yourself. Cover the glossary words and look at the meanings. Say the words.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Glossary</th>
<th>Meaning</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>serious accident</td>
<td>a bad or dangerous accident.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>occur <strong>FML</strong></td>
<td>happen, especially in a way that has not been planned.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>van</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>skid</td>
<td>suddenly move forwards or sideways without any control.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>collide with sth</td>
<td>hit sth very hard while moving.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>vehicle</td>
<td>FML e.g. a car, bike, bus, or lorry.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>block a road, etc. lane</td>
<td>make it difficult for anything to pass.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>emergency services</td>
<td>the police, ambulance, and fire services.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>avoid sb/sth</td>
<td>stay away from sb/sth.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ambulance</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>break down</td>
<td>(of a vehicle) stop working.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>injured</td>
<td>hurt physically.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
23 I can talk about clothes and fashion

A Clothes

1. cap  9. silk dress  15. V-neck sweater
2. cotton blouse/shirt  10. short sleeves  16. button
3. belt  11. collar  17. suede shoes
4. waistcoat  12. tights  18. pocket
5. denim skirt  13. necklace
6. high-heeled leather boots  14. ring
7. earrings
8. bracelet

Spotlight: jewellery and material
Necklace, bracelet, ring, and earrings are all examples of jewellery.
Cotton and silk are types of material.
Leather and suede are materials made from animal skin.

Underwear: 1. bra  2. knickers  3. slip  4. underpants  5. vest
1. Complete the words.
   - kn i c k e r s
     1. n d r w r
     2. m t r l
     3. s y
     4. t t s
     5. s d e
     6. n c k l e
     7. b l s e
     8. e a i n s
     9. v t
     10. b t n

2. Cover the words and look at the pictures. Are these statements true or false? Write T or F.
   - Amy's wearing a necklace. F
   1. Amy's wearing a belt.       6. Amy's blouse has got short sleeves.
   2. Gavin's wearing a ring.     7. Beth's dress has got two pockets.
   4. Beth's dress has got two buttons on it. 9. Amy's wearing earrings.
   5. Gavin's wearing denim jeans. 10. Amy's wearing a denim skirt.

3. Complete the table with words from the box.
   - cotton, skirt, waistcoat, vest, bracelet, leather, cap
   - underwear, ring, necklace, slip, bra, blouse
   - suede, earrings, silk

   | Underwear |   |
   |-----------|
   | Jewellery |
   | Material(s) |
   | Clothes   |

4. Complete the questions with words from the box.
   - belts, leather, cap, denim, ring, neck, sleeves, silk, bracelet, material

   **ABOUT YOU**
   - Do you ever wear a __cap__? If so, when and why?
   1. Do you wear a ____________? If so, on which finger(s)?
   2. Do you wear a ____________? If so, on which wrist?
   3. How many leather ____________ have you got?
   4. How many pairs of ____________ jeans have you got?
   5. What have you got that is made of ____________ or ____________?
   6. Have you got any V-__________ sweaters? If so, what colour?
   7. In summer, do you wear short ____________ a lot?
   8. Do you have a favourite ____________? If so, what?

5. **ABOUT YOU** Write your answers to Exercise 4, or ask another student.

6. **Test yourself. Look at the pictures and cover the words. Can you name the items?**
Three golden rules for fashion

Fashion expert Alyson Walsh says that every stylish woman should have a ‘capsule wardrobe’ – a timeless collection of clothes for every occasion. This includes: a little black dress, the perfect jeans, leather handbag, a fine wool jumper, white shirt, knee-length skirt, etc. Being stylish is about what suits you and your figure. Here are three golden rules:

• Spend as much as possible on the basics (your capsule wardrobe) and don’t worry too much about fashionable clothes – you probably won’t wear them after one season.

• Choose neutral colours: black, cream, white, and dark blue. Neutrals look elegant, and are versatile and easy to match. Just think of Armani fashions, year after year.

• A simple outfit can be transformed with the latest fashion accessory, e.g. a belt.

Glossary

- **stylish** attractive and fashionable. **style** n.
- **suit** If something suits you, it looks good on you.
- **figure** the shape of the body, especially that of a woman.
- **fashionable** popular at the present time. opp. **unfashionable**.
- **neutral** (of a colour) not strong or bright. **neutral** n.
- **elegant** attractive and well designed.
- **versatile** having many different uses.
- **match** look good with something else. **matching** adj.
- **outfit** a set of clothes that you wear together.
- **transform sth** change sth completely, usually in a positive way.
- **latest** new or very recent.
- **accessory** sth you wear or carry that goes with your clothes, e.g. a bag.

7 Circle the correct answer.

- It’s a very versatile/fashionable jacket – I can wear it on different occasions.
  1. You should buy that blouse; it suits/matches your skirt.
  2. She wore a very unfashionable/stylish jacket – it looked awful.
  3. I need to get a new figure/outfit for my brother’s wedding.
  4. This coat is the latest/neutral fashion, but I don’t particularly like the style/figure.
  5. I think that dress really matches/suits you.
  6. My mother’s got a versatile/very good figure.
  7. You can make a simple dress look great with the right outfits/accessories.
  8. I always wear neutral/bright colours, but they can be a bit boring.

8 Complete the sentences.

- She can wear tight jeans because she has such a good figure.
  1. I bought some pink shoes and a _____________ handbag; they look great together.
  2. I’d love to be like Mary; she looks so ______________ whatever she wears.
  3. I want a pair of those trousers; they’re the _______________ fashion.
  4. She never wears red – it doesn’t ______________ her.
  5. Black is very ______________ because you can wear it with almost anything.
  6. She’s got a new hairstyle and it completely ______________ the way she looks.
  7. Expensive ______________ such as bags and belts can have a big effect on how you look.
  8. I really like her new ______________ because it all works well together.

9 Test yourself. Cover the glossary meanings and look at the words. What are the meanings?
Review: Daily life

Unit 16

1 Complete the table with the words from the box.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Herbs</th>
<th>Fruit</th>
<th>Vegetables</th>
<th>Fish</th>
<th>Seafood</th>
<th>Meat</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>basil</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Unit 17

1 Complete the definitions.

1 boil = cook in water
2 junk food = food which is __________ good for you
3 cut down on food = eat __________ food
4 healthy food = food which is __________ for you
5 a waste of money = a __________ use of your money
6 fry = cook in __________
7 bake = cook in the oven __________ oil or fat
8 chop = __________ into small pieces
9 fattening = making you put on __________
10 recipe = a set of instructions for __________ something

Unit 18

1 Complete the crossword, using the clues at the top of the next page. The letters in the grey squares spell out another phrase related to money. What is it?

1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8 9 10 11 12
a piece of paper that shows that something has been paid for
informal phrase meaning 'wealthy' (two words)
a time when shops sell things at a lower price (two words)
a bad use of something, e.g. money or time
If something costs €15, you give the shop assistant €20 and you get €5
haven’t got enough money to do something (two words)
informal word for having no money
a very good price for something you are buying
the amount of money that you owe someone
a lower price than before
the total sum of money
massive

The letters in the grey squares make the phrase ________________________________

Unit 19

1 Complete the text with suitable words.

**Insomnia: how to get a good night’s sleep**

Many people suffer from insomnia. They may not be able to (1) __________ asleep. Others may wake up during the night and not (2) __________ back to sleep again; or they may wake up too early in the morning.

**Is it a serious problem?**

No, not really, but if you suffer from a (3) __________ of sleep, it can make you feel tired, depressed, and (4) __________

It can also make it hard to (5) __________ on your work during the day.

**How much sleep do I need?**

Adults need 7–8 hours a night. If you feel (6) __________ during the day, you aren’t getting enough sleep at night.

However, sleep (7) __________ may change with age. For example, older people may sleep less at night but have a (8) __________ during the day.

**What is a sleep diary?**

A sleep diary can help you understand your sleeping patterns. You have to keep a record of when you go to sleep and wake up, how often you have a restless (9) __________, etc. And if you sleep badly, you can write down whether you have things on your (10) __________, for example, family problems, or worries at work.

Unit 20

1 Read the definitions and complete the words.

- bandage: thin white cloth you tie around a cut or wound
- bl: lose blood from the body
- di: feeling as if everything is turning round and you might fall
- pre: stop something from happening
- sym: a change in your body which is a sign of illness
- inf: an illness caused by bacteria or a virus
- inj: an area of damage in the body, often caused by an accident
- dev: grow, increase, or change into something
- tho: in a very careful and complete way
Unit 21

1 Match 1–7 with a–h to make compound words.
   ► wing ....... a stick
   1 steering...... b wiper
   2 gear ....... c handle
   3 speed...... d mirror
   4 rear-view...... e plate
   5 door....... f wheel
   6 number...... g mirror
   7 windscreen...... h limit

Unit 22

1 Tick (✓) the words that are possible in the sentence.
   ► We were stuck [✓] delayed [✓] stopped off [□] in a traffic jam.
   1 The train was cancelled [□] held up [□] collided [□].
   2 We stopped on the outskirts [□] the rush hour [□] the way [□].
   3 He turned up in a lane [□] a vehicle [□] an ambulance [□].
   4 They crashed into a coach [□] a van [□] an accident [□].
   5 The car broke down [□] hired [□] crashed [□].
   6 The passengers were turned up [□] injured [□] delayed [□].
   7 I've got a valid ticket [□] a day return [□] a traffic jam [□].
   8 The train gets in [□] is due [□] ends up [□] at two o'clock.

2 Complete the phrases with a suitable verb.
   ► crash into another vehicle
   1 h. a car
   2 p. your friend up at the station
   3 t. up late for a flight
   4 g. held up in traffic
   5 s. on the ice
   6 s. off on the way for a coffee
   7 e. up in the wrong place

Unit 23

1 Circle the one which is different.
   ► blouse waistcoat sweater (outfit)
   1 cap style boot sweater
   2 leather bracelet suede cotton
   3 collar pocket dress sleeve
   4 cotton denim silk vest
   5 earrings button necklace ring
   6 suede fashionable elegant versatile
   7 bra knickers underpants underwear

2 Complete the sentence so that it means the same as the sentence on the left.
   ► I don't like strong colours.
   1 You can wear this blouse with anything.
   2 Her bag's the same colour as her shoes.
   3 Her new hairstyle looks really good on her.
   4 I need a new skirt and jacket for work.
   5 I'm going to get a necklace and some earrings.
   6 I don't like cotton or silk.
   I like neutral colours.
   This blouse is very
   Her bag her shoes.
   Her new hairstyle her.
   I need a new for work.
   I'm going to get some
   I don't like these.
I'd had toothache for a couple of weeks. When I tried to bite or chew on one of my back teeth, it was very painful. I needed to have a check-up anyway, so I rang the dental surgery and made an appointment for Friday. The dentist examined my teeth and told me I needed two fillings, and said he would have to take out the tooth which was causing the pain. I've got to go back for treatment on Tuesday, and I'm dreading it.

**Glossary**
- have toothache: have a pain in your tooth.
- bite sth: cut sth with your teeth.
- chew: use your teeth to break up food in your mouth.
- painful: If something is painful, it hurts.
- check-up: a medical or dental examination to see if you are healthy.
- dental surgery: a place where a dentist sees you (also doctor's surgery).
- make an appointment: arrange a time to go to a dentist, doctor, etc.
- examine sb/sth: look at sb/sth very carefully.
- filling: a mixture that a dentist puts in your tooth to fill a hole.
- take out a tooth: remove a tooth from your mouth.
- cause sth: be the reason that sth happens, often sth bad.
- treatment: the things a doctor or dentist does to make you better. treat sb v.

**spotlight**
*dread, look forward to*

If you are *dreading* something, you are afraid of something that is going to happen. If you are *looking forward* to something, you are happy or excited about something that is going to happen.

I dread going to the dentist.
My treatment finishes tomorrow; I'm really *looking forward* to that.

1. Complete the sentences with *I, The tooth, or The dentist*.

   1. 6. needed a check-up.
   2. took the tooth out.
   3. was causing me pain.
   4. made an appointment.
   5. examined my teeth.
   6. gave me a filling.
   7. had to have some treatment.
   8. was treated at the surgery.
   9. was painful.
   10. bit on an apple and hurt my tooth.

2. Complete the questions.

   - How often do you have a...check-up...?
   - Do you...forward to going to the dentist? Why/Why not?
   - What's your dental...like?
   - When did you last...toothache?
   - When did the dentist last give you a...?
   - Is it ever...when you bite or...your food?
   - When did a dentist last...out one of your teeth?

3. ABOUT YOU Write your answers to Exercise 2, or ask another student.

4. Test yourself. Cover the glossary meanings and look at the words. What are the meanings?
GOING INTO HOSPITAL

- Your doctor is concerned about you.
  
- He sends you to see a specialist.
  
- You may have tests, X-rays¹, or scans².
  
- The specialist decides how to treat you.
  
- You may have an operation immediately if it is urgent.
  
- The surgeon explains the benefits and risks to you, the patient.
  
- After the operation you return to the ward, where the nurses care for you.

- The operation is successful. When you are well enough, you can go home to recover.

---

**spotlight enough**

You can use enough after adjectives and adverbs. It means ‘as good, well, old, long, etc. as is necessary’.

She’s not well enough to go out. (She needs to feel better before she can go out.)

He’s strong enough to get up. (He has the strength he needs to get up.)

You can also use enough before plural and uncountable nouns.

There aren’t enough doctors. (We need more doctors.)

I haven’t got enough money. (I need more money.)

---

1. X-rays
2. Scans

---

**I can describe hospital procedures**

- **go into hospital** go for treatment and stay there for a night or more.
- **go to hospital** go there for treatment, but not stay in.
- **concerned about sb** worried about sb.
- **specialist** a person who knows a lot about a particular subject, e.g. a heart specialist. In a hospital, this person is often called a consultant.
- **test** a medical examination of part of your body, e.g. an eye test, a blood test.
- **treat sb** give medical help to sb to make them better. **treatment** n.
- **operation** In an operation, the doctor cuts open the body (operates) to treat the person. **immediately** with no delay. **urgent** needing to be done quickly.
- **surgeon** a doctor who does medical operations.
- **benefit** a thing that has a good or helpful result.
- **risk** a danger that sth bad may happen.
- **patient** a person who is having treatment.
- **care for sb** look after sb. **take care of sb**.
- **ward** (see picture)
- **operating theatre**
- **ward**

---

74 GETTING THINGS DONE
1 Correct the spelling mistakes.
   - specialist  
   1 consultant                       6 urgente  
   2 immediately                    7 well enough  
   3 recover                        8 successful  
   4 patient                        9 benefit  
   5 straightway                     10 surgeon  

2 Circle the correct answer.
   - The patient/surgeon has the operation.
   1 The consultant/patient goes into hospital.
   2 The specialist/patient orders the scans.
   3 The consultant/patient may have to have an X-ray.
   4 The specialist/patient may need treatment urgently.
   5 The surgeon/patient explains the benefits of the treatment.
   6 The patient/nurse cares for the person after the operation.
   7 The specialist/patient gets over the illness.
   8 The nurse/patient works on the ward.

3 Complete the conversation with suitable words.
   A Hi, Mary, how are you?
   B Oh, not too bad, but I'm a bit concerned about my eye.
   A I'm sorry to hear that. What's the matter?
   B Well, I've just been to hospital to see a (1) c__________ and I had some (2) t__________ too, to see what was wrong. I've got a problem at the back of my eye, and I need to have an (3) o__________ .
   A Oh, dear. Is it (4) u__________ ?
   B Yes, I have to have it done (5) s__________ — I've got to go (6) i__________ hospital tomorrow.
   A And are there any (7) r__________ with the treatment?
   B I don't think so; it's a very simple operation, and it's usually very (8) s__________ : 98 per cent of people can see better afterwards.
   A And when will you be well (9) e__________ to start work again?
   B He said I'll need a week to (10) g__________ o__________ the operation. My sister is going to (11) t__________ c__________ of me at home.
   A Well, good luck — I hope it goes well.

4 ABOUT YOU AND YOUR COUNTRY Write your answers, or ask another student.
   1 Have you ever been into hospital for a few days or longer? When?  
   2 Have you ever visited a patient in hospital? If so, when, and who was it?  
   3 When patients are on a ward, do the nurses take care of them, or does the family look after them too?  
   4 Can you see a specialist straightaway in your country, or do you have to wait? If so, how long?  
   5 Do you have to see your doctor first before you go and see a specialist?  
   6 Where do patients usually go to recover after an operation?  

5 Test yourself. Cover the meanings in the table and look at the procedures. Can you remember the meanings of the new words?
A Using tools and household objects

You use a hammer to bang a nail into a piece of wood.
You use a screwdriver to tighten or loosen a screw.
You use a drill to make a hole. A hammer, a screwdriver, and a drill are tools.

You use a needle, pins, scissors, and cotton/thread when you're sewing.
You use string, rope, or wire to tie things together.
You use Sellotape or glue to stick things together.

1. Circle the correct word.
   - Stick it together with glue/cotton.
   - 1. Sew it with a pin/needle.
   - 2. Cut it with scissors/a drill.
   - 3. Tighten it with a hammer/screwdriver.
   - 4. Tie it together with rope/nails.
   - 5. Bang it in with string/a hammer.
   - 6. Make a hole with thread/a drill.
   - 7. Stick it together with Sellotape/wire.
   - 8. Loosen the screw/cotton.

2. Complete the sentences.
   - She didn't have any string, so she stuck the parcel together with Sellotape.
   - I've got a hammer and a screwdriver, but I haven't got any other ............
   - 1. When you make a skirt, you cut the fabric with ............, you hold the pieces together with pins, and then you ............ it with a needle and ............
   - 2. If you break the handle off a cup, you can ............ it on with ............
   - 3. I tied all the keys together with a piece of ............
   - 4. If the screws on your door handle are loose, use a ............ to ............ them.
   - 5. A drill is very useful if you need to make a ............ in a wall.
   - 6. Pass the hammer and I can bang in this ............
   - 7. We ............ a long rope to the tree for the children to play on.

3. Test yourself. Look at the pictures and cover the words. Can you remember the sentences?
common problems

Our flat: things to do
- The lamp isn’t working. Try changing the light bulb.
- The radiator’s leaking. We’ll have to repair it.
- The window’s cracked. It needs replacing.
- The TV isn’t working properly.
- The radio is faulty.
- The bedroom needs decorating.
- There’s something wrong with the door. It keeps sticking.
- The lift’s out of order. I hope they fix it soon.
- There’s a stain on the carpet which we need to remove.

meaning
If sth isn’t working, it isn’t functioning or it’s broken.
leak allow liquid or gas to go through a hole or crack. leak n.

Cracked (see picture)
replace sth exchange sth for sth that is better or newer.

properly correctly or well.
faulty not working well; only working sometimes.
decorate a room put paint or paper on the walls.

wrong causing problems or difficulties.

stick be in one position and difficult to move.
out of order If a machine or piece of equipment in a public place is out of order, it isn’t working.

stain n. v (see picture)

remove sth take sth away.

Spotlight repair, fix, or mend sth

Repair sth, fix sth, and mend sth all mean ‘put sth right that is broken or damaged’.
Can you repair/fix the fridge? It took ages to repair/mend the roof.

We use mend and repair, rather than fix, to talk about repairing clothes.
I mended the hole in my pocket. I must get my shoes repaired.

4 Tick (✓) the words which are possible.

✓ My shoe has a hole in it. Can you repair mend remove it for me?
1 This table’s broken. We need to decorate fix repair it.
2 Is the bedroom lamp OK? No, it’s faulty out of order not working.
3 We’re going to remove replace decorate the fridge.
4 We need a new lamp light bulb.
5 The public phone is out of order is wrong isn’t working properly.
6 The radiator is leaking faulty sticking.

5 Complete the text.
The house was in a terrible condition. The rain had come into all the bedrooms because the roof was leaking, and there were (1) s on the walls and carpets. A builder fixed the roof for us, and after that, we had to dry all the bedrooms. We also had to replace several windows that were cracked. Then we realized that the central heating wasn’t working, and it cost a lot to have it repaired. The bathroom was a problem too: the shower didn’t work – some days the water was hot, others it was freezing, and the taps were too. The previous owners had left two old cars in the garden and we had to pay someone to remove them. It was all so expensive.

6 Test yourself. Look at the text, and cover the meanings. Can you remember the meanings?
Mrs Bristow's Handy Housework Routine

Daily tasks
Make the beds and do the washing up. Clean the bathroom and kitchen. Wipe all surfaces with a soapy cloth to remove grease. Tidy up and throw away any rubbish.

Weekly tasks
Using a broom, sweep the area outside your front door to remove mud and general dirt. Wash the floors with a mop and bucket and warm, soapy water. Vacuum the carpets, and then dust or polish the furniture. Wipe the inside of the fridge.

1 Write the missing parts of speech.
   ▶ dirty ADJ dirt N
   1 dusty ADJ N
   2 mud N
   3 greasy ADJ N
   4 vacuum cleaner N

2 Complete the phrases.
   ▶ Do the daily tasks.
   1[(blank) the floor to remove mud and dirt.]
   2 Use a (blank) to hoover the carpet.
   3 Tidy (blank) the kitchen every day.
   4 Remove grease with a soapy (blank) the washing up.
   5 (blank) and (blank) to wash the floor.
   6 or (blank) the furniture once a week.
   7 (blank) the kitchen surfaces.
   8 Use a cloth to (blank) the floor.
   9 Use a broom to (blank) away any rubbish.

3 ABOUT YOU Write your answers, or ask another student.
   1 Look again at Mrs Bristow's tasks. In your home, which do you do?
   2 Which tasks does someone else do in your home?

Glossary

- task a piece of work you must do.
- do the washing up wash dishes, plates, glasses, etc. after a meal.
- wipe sth clean or dry sth with a cloth.
- grease oil or fat that comes from cooking.
- greasy ADJ.
- tidy (up) make a place look better by putting things in the correct place.
- sweep sth remove dirt from the floor or ground with a broom.
- mud soft, wet earth. (If you walk in a field after rain, your shoes will be muddy.)
- dirty ADJ.
- vacuum sth clean a carpet or floor using a vacuum cleaner. syn hoover v.
- dust sth remove very small pieces of dry dirt (dust N) from sth. dusty ADJ.
- polish sth make sth shine by rubbing it with a cream or liquid (polish N).
28 I can talk to a hairdresser

I'd like to have my hair cut / have a haircut.
What would you like? I want to have it permed / I'd like a perm, please.
I'm letting it grow long, so just trim it / give it a trim, please. I'd like to keep the fringe and the parting on the left.
I want to keep the same hairstyle, please. I'd like a cut and blow-dry (= dry with a hairdryer).
Could you colour it for me, please?

spotlight have/get sth done
If you have sth done or get sth done, you pay sb to do sth for you. Compare:
I have my hair cut every month. (I go to the hairdresser's.)
I colour my hair every month. (I do it myself.)

Glossary
let allow sth to happen without trying to stop it.
trim sth cut sth a little so that it is shorter and tidier. SYN give sth a trim. trim n.
keep sth make sth stay in a particular state or condition and not change.
hairstyle the way your hair is cut and arranged.

1 Complete the words.
1 h________ e
2 s________ s________ r________
3 h________ r________ t________ e
4 h________ r________ d________ r
5 p________ t________ n________
6 t________ m
7 c________ l________ r
8 b________ w________ d________ r

2 Put the words in order, and add one more word.
I'm going to have my hair cut.
1 could / colour / you / me / for / please?
2 Sasha / her / letting / is / hair
3 fringe / like / a / parting / I'd / and / a / right / the
4 please / blow-dry / like / a / and / I'd
5 want / please / hairstyle / same / I / to / the
6 to / she's / her / trimmed / going / hair

3 ABOUT YOU Write your answers, or ask another student.
1 Are you letting your hair grow at the moment?
2 When did you last have your hair cut?
3 Have you got a fringe or a parting?
4 Where do you get your hair cut?
5 In your family, who has their hair permed or coloured?

4 Look at the pictures and cover the words. Can you remember the requests?
Review: Getting things done

Unit 24

1 Read the dentist’s questions and statements. One word is missing in each one. Where from? Write it at the end.

1 How long have you had toothache? _____________________________
2 Is it when you bite? _____________________________
3 I will probably have to the tooth out. _____________________________
4 This is the tooth which is the pain. _____________________________
5 When did you last a check-up? _____________________________
6 Can you come back to the tomorrow? _____________________________
7 Just ask the receptionist to make an for you. _____________________________
8 There’s a hole in this tooth – you need a. _____________________________
9 I’m going to your teeth and then decide what you need. _____________________________

Unit 25

1 Which words are being defined?

1 a person who knows a lot about a subject _____________________________ specialist
2 give someone medical help to make them better _____________________________
3 worried about someone or something _____________________________
4 a doctor who operates on you _____________________________
5 another word for ‘immediately’ _____________________________
6 something that has a good or helpful result _____________________________
7 look after someone, especially if they are ill _____________________________
8 become well after you have been ill _____________________________
9 a person who is ill and having medical treatment _____________________________
10 the place in a hospital where sick people stay _____________________________
11 a danger that something bad could happen _____________________________

Unit 26

1 Complete the sentences with suitable words.

1 I’m going to decorate the bedroom. Sandro doesn’t like the colour of the walls.
2 There’s a __________ on the carpet. Do you know how to __________ it?
3 Did you know the lift was __________ order? ~ Yes, but someone is going to __________ it later today.
4 I’m afraid this radiator is __________; there’s water on the carpet.
5 I’ve got a hole in my pocket. Could you __________ it for me, please?
6 This lamp isn’t __________. Have we got any light __________?
7 I’m afraid there’s something __________ the front door. We may have to get someone to __________ it.
2 Which word is being described? Write it at the end.

1. You use one when you’re sewing. **needle**
2. You use one to hang a nail in the wall.
3. You use one to make a hole in the wall.
4. You use one to tighten a screw.
5. You use it to tie a boat to a wall.
6. You use it to tie some sticks together.
7. You use it to stick a broken bowl together.
8. You use it to wrap a parcel.

Unit 27

1 Complete the sentences.

**Mr Bristow’s Handy Housework excuses**

- I couldn’t do the **washing up** because there was no hot water.
- I couldn’t sweep the floor because I couldn’t find the **broom**.
- I couldn’t wash the floor because there was a **mop** but no **water**.
- I couldn’t hoover the carpets because the **sand** wasn’t working.
- I couldn’t **take** away the rubbish because the bins were all full.
- I couldn’t **clean** the furniture because the cloth was dirty.
- And I didn’t **clean** the surfaces because they all looked clean to me, anyway.

Unit 28

1 There is a mistake in each sentence. Write the correct sentence at the end.

- I like your new style of hair. **I like your new hairstyle.**
- I made my hair cut last week.
- I just want trim, please.
- I’d like a cutting and blow-dry, please.
- Are you leaving your hair grow?
- Can you pass me the scissor?
- She’s got a parted on the left.
- I’m having my hair colour tomorrow.
- Can I borrow your hairdry?
A The inner city

I parked in the **multi-storey car park** and went the rest of the way on foot. The street lights had just come on, and I could see the **pavements** were **filthy**. At the entrance to the **subway**, there was an old guy **begging** for money. I gave him something and **hurried** on down. There was the usual **graffiti** all over the walls, and **litter** everywhere. I came up the other side and passed a man who was **whistling** quite cheerfully, but I found this part of the **inner city** so **depressing** that I **wondered** if my decision to walk had been a good idea.

---

**Glossary**

- **multi-storey car park**: a large car park with several floors.
- **pavement**: the part of the road where people walk.
- **filthy**: very dirty.
- **subway**: a tunnel that goes under a road or railway so people can walk to the other side.
- **beg**: ask for food or money.
- **hurry**: move or do sth quickly. *syn: rush.*
- **graffiti**: pictures or writing on a wall in a public place (often humorous or political).
- **litter**: paper and rubbish that is dropped and left on the ground in a public place.
- **whistle**: make a musical sound with your lips nearly closed.
- **inner city**: the part of a large city which is near the centre and often poor.
- **depressing**: making you feel sad and without hope.
- **wonder**: ask yourself questions about sth.

---

1. Correct the spelling mistakes.
   - hurry, hurrrry
   - 1. filthy
   - 2. litter
   - 3. pavement
   - 5. graffiti
   - 6. deppresing

2. Complete the definitions.
   - inner city = ________ parts of a city, near the centre
   - filthy = very __________
   - rush = move or do something __________
   - pavement = place where people __________
   - litter = paper dropped on the __________
   - multi-storey = with several __________
   - beg = ask for __________ or __________
   - whistle = make a sound with your __________ nearly closed
   - graffiti = __________ on a wall in a public place

3. Complete the sentences with a suitable word.
   - My dog comes back to me when I ________.
   - 1. I hate people who drop __________ in the street. Why can't they put it in a bin?
   - 2. It's a dangerous road, so use the __________ to get to the other side.
   - 3. Leila says that someone in our class is getting married. I __________ who it is.
   - 4. You've got lots of time - you don't need to __________ to get the train.
   - 5. Two men were cleaning the __________ off the walls in the subway.
   - 6. The street was filthy and it was pouring with rain. It was very __________.

4. **Test yourself.** Cover the glossary words and look at the meanings. Can you remember the words?
The area where I live is ideal. It's a suburb not far from the centre and it's quite lively, but there's still a feeling of space, and my block of flats is surrounded by trees. It's also a handy place to live because there are good local shops, and a bus service that gets me into the centre in 15 to 20 minutes. The only disadvantage is that with the growth in the population, it's gradually becoming more built-up than it used to be, which is a shame.

**Spotlight**

area, region, district, part

The word area can be used for part of a town, country, or the world. A region is part of a country or the world, e.g. a desert region. A district is part of a town or country, often with special qualities, e.g. the financial district. A part is often used when we are talking about a town, e.g. a lovely part of the city.

**Glossary**

suburb an area outside the centre of a town, where a lot of people live.
ideal perfect; the best possible.
lively full of interest, and with things to do.
space a place or area that is empty and not used.
surrounded by sth If a building is surrounded by sth, that thing is all around it.
handy near located near to things you need, syn convenient.
local located in the area where you live.
disadvantage a situation or thing that is not good or causes problems, syn drawback.
opp advantage.
growth an increase in size or number.
built-up with a lot of buildings.
a shame a fact or situation that makes you feel disappointed, syn a pity.

5 Same or different? Write S or D.

- One of the suburbs/areas outside the centre. **S**
  1. The ideal/perfect place to live. _____
  2. A mountainous area/region. _____
  3. We need more growth/space. _____
  4. It was a pity/shame. _____

5 A handy/lively area. _____
6 It's a commercial district/area. _____
7 It's a real disadvantage/drawback. _____
8 It's a large space/suburb. _____

6 Complete the sentences with a suitable word.

- There used to be lots of space, but now it's a really **built-up** area.
  1. I live in a ___________ about two kilometres from the centre.
  2. Unfortunately, the whole area is ___________ by factories, which is a ___________.
  3. There are a few ___________ shops just round the corner.
  4. It's very ___________ because it's close to my children's school and the place where I work.
  5. It's a nice area with great shops, the only ___________ is that the bus service is terrible.
  6. We've found our ___________ house; it has absolutely everything we want.

7 ABOUT YOUR AREA Write your answers, or ask another student.

1. Is your area built-up, or is there a feeling of space?______________________________
2. What is your home surrounded by?______________________________
3. What local shops do you have?______________________________
4. Is it a handy place to live for you?______________________________
5. What are the disadvantages?______________________________

DEscribing THINGS 83
A substantial and impressive semi-detached house full of original features, and just a short walk from the town centre.

Inside, the hall leads to two spacious reception rooms and an enormous kitchen. Upstairs there are four bedrooms and two bathrooms on the first and second floors, with a narrow staircase to a further bedroom in the attic. There is also a basement which could be converted into a separate one-bedroom flat, and a cellar currently used to store things.

Outside, the house has pretty shutters either side of the front windows. There is a lawn at the front, and a drive provides plenty of parking. There is also a small walled garden at the back.

---

**Glossary**

**substantial**
- large and/or strong.

**impressive**
- (of a building) large and very good to look at.

**semi-detached**
- joined to one other house, forming a pair of houses.

**original**
- existing from the time when sth was first made or done.

**feature**
- an important part of sth, and often a part that you notice.

**lead**
- If sth leads to a place, you can go along it to that place.

**spacious**
- large, and having a lot of space.

**enormous**
- very large, s/sy huge, or tiny.

**staircase**
- a set of stairs.

**attic**
- the space or room under the roof of a house.

**basement**
- a room or part of a building that is partly or completely below ground level.

**convert sth into sth**
- change sth from one form or use to another.

**separate**
- not connected or together.

**cellar**
- an underground room without windows, where things are often kept.

**currently**
- at the moment (not actually).

**store sth**
- keep sth in a place for future use. storage n.

**lawn**
- an area of grass in a park or garden.

**drive**
- a wide path for cars that leads to the front door of a house.

**walled**
- If a garden or other area is walled, it has a wall around it (a wall is usually made of brick or stone).

---

**spotlight passage, corridor, hall**

A passage is a long, narrow way with walls on both sides that leads somewhere, e.g. an underground passage.

A corridor is a passage in a large building or on a train. A hall is a room or small passage just inside the entrance to a house.

---

1. Correct the spelling mistakes.
   - staircase
   - separate
   - currently
   - store sth
   - lawn
   - drive
   - walled

2. Impressive is correct.

3. Attic is correct.

4. Feature is correct.

5. Basement is correct.

6. spacious is correct.

7. The other words are correct.

---

84 DESCRIBING THINGS
2 Circle the correct word.
1 The flat is _______ impressive, but not very attractive.
2 I'm on the ground floor and my sister lives downstairs in the _______
3 There were no seats on the train, so I had to stand in the _______
4 There's a very wide _______
5 He parked his car in the _______
6 Just after the newsagent's, there's a little _______ that leads to the High Street.
7 We've got a small _______ in the garden where we sit in the summer.

3 Replace the underlined word or phrase with a word or phrase that has the same meaning.
1 There's a _______ living room. _______
2 The living room is absolutely _______.
3 Where do you _______ your garden furniture in the winter?
4 They've got a _______ garden.
5 There's a very elegant _______ of stairs up to the first floor.
6 The back door goes into the garden.
7 We could _______ that room into a bathroom.

4 Complete the words in the text.
My brother has just bought a very _______ six-bedroom house. It's a 1930s semi-
(1) _______ house, and (2) _______ it is in terrible condition, but it will be very nice
when he has done some work on it. As you approach it, there's a long (3) _______
up to the front door, with enough space for about three cars. Inside, the hall (4) _______
to the living room, dining room, and kitchen, and from the kitchen there are stairs down to a (5) _______
where they plan to (6) _______ wine and other things. At the back there's a (7) _______
garden, big enough for a football pitch, and around the garden there's a high stone
(8) _______. There are two garages, and they might (9) _______ one into a study.

5 Complete the sentences.
1 One of the main _______ of the building is the beautiful windows.
2 Can you see the smoke coming out of the _______?
3 It's an old house and it still has the _______ windows and fireplaces.
4 There's a big cupboard in the hall which is useful for _______.
5 I need about 100 _______ to finish the low wall at the front.
6 I'll have to go up on the _______ to repair the chimney.

6 ABOUT YOU Write your answers or ask another student.
1 Have you got shutters at your windows? If so, are they on the outside or inside?
2 Have you got a garden with a lawn? If so, what do you use it for?
3 Is there an attic in your building? If so, what's in it?
4 Have you got a basement or cellar? If so, what are they used for?
5 Is there a drive outside your building?
6 Would you describe any rooms in your home as spacious or tiny?

7 Test yourself. Look at the glossary words and cover the meanings. Can you
remember the meanings?
I can describe objects

A What's it made of?

- a rubber tyre
- a woollen blanket / a blanket made of wool
- plastic toys
- a metal ladder
- a wax candle
- a silver candlestick
- a gold medal
- a cardboard box
- a steel pipe
- a concrete bridge
- iron railings
- a wooden fence / a fence made of wood

1. Circle the most logical word.
   - a table made of wood/wool
   - 1 a rubber boot/book
   - 2 a concrete/cardboard wall
   - 3 a rubber ladder/tyre
   - 4 a wooden/woollen sweater
   - 5 a wooden/silver fence
   - 6 a silver/woollen medal
   - 7 a wax/wooden candlestick
   - 8 a plastic/concrete toy
   - 9 wax/gold earnings
   - 10 a plastic blanket/pipe
   - 11 concrete/metal railings

2. Complete the sentences.
   - A sweater is often made of wool.
   - 1 Jewellery is usually made of s. or g. 
   - 2 Toys are usually made of w. or p. 
   - 3 Bathroom and kitchen pipes are usually made of p. or m. 
   - 4 A ladder is usually made of w. or m. 
   - 5 A box can be made of p., w., or c. 
   - 6 A bridge can be made of i., s., or c. 

3. Test yourself. Look at the pictures and cover the words. Can you remember the words?

spotlight: Noun + noun

Sometimes we use a noun with another noun to say what things are made of, what they are for, etc. A rubber tyre is a tyre made of rubber; a letter box is a box for letters.
### Shapes and lines

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Shapes</th>
<th>Noun</th>
<th>Adjective</th>
<th>Lines</th>
<th>Adjective</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>circle</td>
<td>round.</td>
<td>circular</td>
<td>straight</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>square</td>
<td>square</td>
<td></td>
<td>curved</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>rectangle</td>
<td>rectangular</td>
<td></td>
<td>parallel</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>triangle</td>
<td>triangular</td>
<td></td>
<td>vertical</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>oval</td>
<td>oval</td>
<td></td>
<td>horizontal</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>point</td>
<td>pointed</td>
<td></td>
<td>diagonal</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

4. **Complete the words.**

   - straight
   - point
   - L-shape
   - curved
   - horizon
   - square
   - diagonal
   - oval
   - triangle
   - pointed
   - round

5. **Complete the sentences below with words from the box.**

   - A **diagonal** line connects opposite corners in a square.
   - An egg is **rounded**.
   - A computer screen is usually **triangular**.
   - A DVD is **round**.
   - The box your CD comes in is **pointed**.
   - A shape with three sides is **curved**.
   - A knife is **pointed** at the end.
   - A ball has a **curved** surface.
   - A ruler is **straight**, not curved.

6. **What can you see in the pictures?**

   - a heart-shaped cushion
   - a cushion in the shape of a heart

   1. ![Cushion](image1)
   2. ![Shoes](image2)
   3. ![Mirror](image3)
   4. ![Bag](image4)
   5. ![Mirror](image5)
   6. ![Star](image6)

7. **Test yourself.** Look at the pictures and lines in the table and cover the words. Say the words.
32 I can describe the senses

A Seeing and hearing

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Example</th>
<th>Meaning</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Look carefully, and you can see the bridge over the river.</td>
<td>look turn your eyes to sth and pay attention to it.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>From here it looks very small.</td>
<td>see know or notice sth using your eyes.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>look seem from what you can see.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>We watched TV for an hour.</td>
<td>watch sth look at sth for some time to see what happens.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>He appears to be very happy.</td>
<td>appear seem.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>A dog appeared from behind a tree.</td>
<td>appear If sth appears, you suddenly begin to see it.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>The children stared at the man with the long red hair.</td>
<td>stare at sb/sth look at sb/sth for a long time without moving your eyes.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Jay always notices what I’m wearing. He’s very observant.</td>
<td>notice sth see sth and be aware of it.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>observant good at noticing things.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>He glanced at me and smiled.</td>
<td>glance at sb/sth look quickly at sb/sth.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>A I can hear something.</td>
<td>hear sth receive sounds with your ears without trying.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>B It sounds like a child crying.</td>
<td>sound like sth make a noise that is like sth.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>She listens to the radio a lot.</td>
<td>listen pay attention to sth you hear, often for a long time.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>I overheard them in the bank.</td>
<td>overhear sb hear other people’s conversation by accident.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>I’m sorry, I didn’t quite catch what you said.</td>
<td>catch sth hear or understand what sb is saying; usually used when you don’t hear or understand sth.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

spotlight can + sense verbs

We don’t use see, hear, smell, or taste in the continuous tenses; we often use can (as in the examples above).
I can see two boats in this photo. (not I see or I’m seeing two boats.)

1 Circle the correct answer.

1 Can you hear/listen to that noise? 1 Did you notice/watch the colour of her eyes? 1 I can’t see/look at anything from here. 1 Don’t look/watch behind you. 1 How long did you see/watch TV for?

5 I glanced at/stared Julia. 6 I see/can see something in your eye. 7 I overheard-caught a funny story on the bus. 8 What can you listen/hear?

2 Complete the sentences with a suitable word.

1 She said her name but I’m afraid I didn’t ____________ what it was.
2 I ____________ hear a bird singing. It ____________ like a blackbird.
3 Why is that man ____________ at me? Have I done something wrong?
4 I spoke to him about the exam. He doesn’t ____________ to be nervous.
5 Did you see Nadia last night? I thought she ____________ ill.
6 I ____________ at my watch and realized it was time to go.
7 Sally always notices if I change my hairstyle. She’s very ____________.
8 A minute ago she was here, then she ____________ I don’t know where she is now.

3 Test yourself. Look at the examples and cover the meanings. What do the words in bold mean?
Word | Example | Meaning
---|---|---
smell sth | I can smell lunch ... | notice or recognize sth using your nose.
smell like sth | ... it smells like fish. | have a smell like the smell of sth / sth else.
stink inf | This towel stinks. I must wash it. | have a horrible smell.
flavour | They sell 30 flavours of ice cream. | the sensation of sth in your mouth (e.g. a chocolate/strawberry flavour).
taste | Try this wine. It tastes very strange. | have a particular flavour.
salty | The soup is very salty. | having the taste of or containing a lot of salt.
blond | This cheese is quite bland. | without much flavour.
touch sth | When I touched the back wall ... | put your fingers on sth.
feel | ... it felt a bit damp (= a little wet). | give a sensation of or like sth when touched (e.g. it feels hot, it feels like wood).
feel like sth | | |
press sth | If you press that button, you get a ticket. | put your hand or finger on sth firmly.
grab sth | He grabbed my mobile and ran off. | take sth with a sudden movement.
tap sb/sth | Someone tapped me on the arm. | touch sb/sth quickly with your hands or feet.
rub sth | I rubbed the book with a soft cloth to get the dirt off. | move your hand firmly backwards and forwards over the surface of sth.

4 Replace the underlined phrase with a single word that has the same meaning.

- Most cities such as London have a traffic problem. like
  1. This blanket has a horrible smell.
  2. My towel still feels a little wet.
  3. The soup is without much flavour.
  4. The film was similar to his others.
  5. I put my hand on the radiator and it felt cold.
  6. She moved her hand firmly over her leg.

5 Complete the sentences.

- You don’t need salt. It’s already very salty.
  1. The persimmon is a strange fruit. It looks like a tomato but doesn’t taste like one.
  2. They were both like their feet to the music.
  3. Press the button if you want the receptionist to come.
  4. Be careful – don’t touch the door. The paint is still wet.
  5. He tapped me on the shoulder and asked me to move my head.
  6. The policeman tapped the thief’s arm and pushed him to the ground.
  7. When I came downstairs, I could smell the steak frying; it was wonderful.
  8. You had ice cream, didn’t you? What did you have? – Strawberry, but it didn’t taste like strawberry.

6 Test yourself. Cover the examples and meanings and look at the words. What are the meanings?
This **painting**, *Bathers at Asnières* by Georges Seurat, **illustrates** a typical **scene** of 19th-century **leisure** and the developing **industry** in this suburb of Paris. **In the foreground** a group of workmen are relaxing by the river; **in the distance** you can **just** see the factory where they probably work. Everyone is looking out at the river and ignoring each other, even the little dog in the **bottom left-hand corner**. We can **sense** the **warmth** of the summer’s day in the **bright** sunlight, light colours, and **shadows**.

**Glossary**

- **illustrate sth**: explain sth in a picture or diagram. **illustration** **n**.
- **scene**: a view you can see in a picture or from the place where you are.
- **leisure**: time when you do not have to work.
- **industry**: the production of goods in factories. **industrial** **adj**.
- **in the distance**: far away from you.
- **just**: if you can **just** see sth, you can only see it with difficulty.
- **ignore sb/sth**: pay no attention to sb/sth.
- **even**: used for emphasizing sth that is surprising.
- **sense sth**: get a feeling about sth that you can’t directly see or hear.
- **warmth**: a pleasant heat.
- **bright**: having a lot of light. opp **dark**. **brightness** **n**.

**Spotlight** **painting and drawing**

*Bathers at Asnières* is a **painting**. Seurat was a **painter** or **artist** (**artist** is a more general word). **paint** **v**.

A **drawing** is a picture made with a pencil or pen, but not paint. **draw** **v**.

*I paint a lot of portraits.*

*I can’t draw faces very well.*

90 **DESCRIBING THINGS**
1 Look at the big picture on page 90. Write your answers to the questions.
   ▶ Where is the man in the red swimming costume sitting? In the middle of the picture.
   1 How many people are there in the foreground?
   2 Are the boats in the foreground or the background?
   3 Are the men sitting in the shade?
   4 Is the dog in the bottom left-hand corner?
   5 Can you see the dog’s shadow?
   6 Is the picture a drawing or a painting?
   7 Where are the factories?
   8 On which side of the picture is the boy in the river?
   9 Are the colours dark or bright?
   10 On which side is the man wearing the light-coloured hat?

2 Cover the glossary on page 90. Complete the definitions.
   ▶ even = used to emphasize something that is surprising
   1 ignore = pay __________ attention to someone or something
   2 leisure = time when you don’t have to
   3 sense = have a __________ about something that you can’t see or hear
   4 shade = a place which is __________ and cool because the sun doesn’t shine there
   5 scene = a view you can __________ in a picture or from the place where you are
   6 bright = having a lot of

3 Put the words in order. Use contractions, e.g. it’s, they’re.
   ▶ dog / foreground / the / in / is / the __________
   1 the / it / you / see / in / can / distance
   2 bottom / the / corner / he / is / in / lying / left-hand
   3 of / right-hand / is / on / the / it / side / the / painting?
   4 they / the / centre / drawing / of / are / in / sitting / the
   5 in / left-hand / some / there / corner / are / trees / top / the

4 Complete the sentences with one word from each pair.
   | warm/warmth | bright/brightness ✓ | just/even | illustrate/illustration |
   | industry/industrial | painter/painting | shade/shadow |
   ▶ This painter often uses dark colours, not __________ ones.
   1 He painted many __________ scenes of factories and factory workers.
   2 The paintings __________ the friendship between the three women.
   3 You can feel the __________ of the sun shining down on you.
   4 You can see the __________ on the wall in the art gallery.
   5 People go swimming in the river, __________ in winter when it is cold.
   6 It’s so hot! Shall we go and sit in the __________ ?

5 ABOUT YOU Think about a painting you know and like. Write your answers, or ask another student.
   1 What’s the name of the artist who painted it?
   2 Do you know when it was painted?
   3 What does the painting illustrate?
   4 What do you like about the painting?
   5 Do you do any painting or drawing yourself? If so, what do you do?
34 I can describe actions

A Using your hands

Don’t squeeze the tube in the middle!
She’s tearing the letter up.
He dragged the cabinet across the floor.
He knocked on the door.
He scratched the lid of the box.
Shake the bottle before opening it.
The thief smashed the window.
She folded the paper in half/in two.
She sprayed the leaves with water.

1 Can you do these things? Write Yes or No.
   ► smash a tube of toothpaste No
   1 fold a sheet in half......
   2 scratch coffee......
   3 drag a suitcase along a path......
   4 spray perfume on yourself......
   5 squeeze a wet jumper to get water out......
   6 knock on water......
   7 tear up a cabinet......
   8 shake a tin of paint......

2 Complete the sentences with verbs from the box in the correct form.
   spray knock ✓ scratch drag smash fold tear up shake squeeze
   ► I was woken up by someone knocking on my window.
   1 The boat was incredibly heavy so we had to drag it down the beach to the sea.
   2 I smashed all my old bank documents and threw them away.
   3 He scratched his scarf and put it on the table.
   4 Don’t squeeze that bottle of sparkling water before you open it.
   5 He kicked the ball hard and unfortunately knocked the neighbour’s window.
   6 You’ll need to scratch about six oranges to make a glass of juice.
   7 My little brother took a nail and scratched the side of the car. My dad was furious.
   8 She put on her make-up and sprayed perfume behind her ears.

3 Test yourself. Look at the pictures and cover the words. Can you remember the sentences?
# B Making noises 🎧

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Word</th>
<th>Example</th>
<th>Meaning</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>shout</td>
<td>Don't shout! I can hear you.</td>
<td>speak in a loud voice.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>whisper</td>
<td>He whispered 'I love you' in her ear.</td>
<td>speak very quietly so that other people can't hear you.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cry</td>
<td>The baby next door cried all night.</td>
<td>tear drops of liquid that come out from your eyes when you cry.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>scream</td>
<td>The plane dropped suddenly and we screamed.</td>
<td>cry out in a high voice because you are in pain, upset, frightened, etc.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>burst into tears</td>
<td>He sat down and burst into tears.</td>
<td>start crying suddenly.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>burst out laughing</td>
<td>I walked into the room and they all burst out laughing.</td>
<td>start laughing suddenly.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>breathe (in/out)</td>
<td>Breathe in, count to ten, and then breathe out.</td>
<td>take air into your lungs and let it out again.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sigh</td>
<td>He sat down and sighed: it had been a hard decision.</td>
<td>let out a long deep breath that shows you are sad, bored, relieved, etc.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sneeze</td>
<td>I've got a terrible cold; I've been sneezing all day.</td>
<td>sneezing</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Spotlight: loud, out loud / aloud, silent, silence

Loud means 'making a lot of noise'. e.g. silent, silence N.
The radio's too loud. We worked in silence.

If you speak out loud (syn aloud) you speak so that people can hear you.
I read the letter out loud / aloud to my father.

### 4 Complete the sentences with a suitable word or phrase.

- If you shout angrily at a child, they might ______.  
  1. When you have a cold, you might __________ a lot.  
  2. If you eat onions, your __________ might smell.  
  3. If something is incredibly funny, you might __________.  
  4. If your nose is blocked, you have to __________ and out through your mouth.  
  5. If you don't want to be heard when you're speaking to someone, you should __________.  
  6. If you are very relieved that something has gone well, you might __________.  
  7. If you suddenly get some very sad news, you might __________.  
  8. If your friend isn't looking and a car is coming, you would __________ to him.  
  9. If all the class wanted to hear a short story you've written, you could read it __________.  
  10. The room was completely __________; no one said a word.  
  11. If you upset her, she will burst into __________.  
  12. You can't speak in an exam; you must work in __________.

### 5 ABOUT YOU Write your answers, or ask another student. When did you last...

- 1. hear someone screaming? Who was it, and why?  
- 2. burst out laughing? Why?  
- 3. whisper to someone? Why?  
- 4. read something out loud? What was it?  

---

DEscribing THings 93
Review: Describing things

Unit 29

1 True or false? Write T or F.
   - You have to pay to go through a subway. F.
   1 The suburbs of a city are the areas where people with very little money live. ......
   2 It's depressing if your home is surrounded by litter. ......
   3 A multi-storey car park has only one floor. ......
   4 The pavement is where people walk. ......
   5 The inner city is often quite built-up. ......
   6 Having local shops near your home isn't very convenient. ......

2 Complete the text.
   - The district where I live now is very clean - not like the area I used to live in, which was (1) f. It's also quite (2) l. because there are several cafés and restaurants round the corner, but there isn't a supermarket nearby, which is a (3) p. Not far away, there's plenty of open (4) s. to go for walks, and it's also very (5) h. because I'm close to the station, so I can get to work easily. Where I lived before, you used to see lots of (6) g. on the subway walls, and people sitting on the pavement (7) b. for money. But there is one (8) d. to where I live now: my friends live in the older part of town, so I see them less often.

Unit 30

1 Write a sentence linking a word on the left with a word on the right.
   windows ✓  front door
   semi-detached  storage
   chimney  house
   cellar  garden
   lawn  shutters ✓
   drive  roof

   - Windows may have shutters on the inside or outside.

Unit 31

1 Complete the phrases with words from the box.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>iron</th>
<th>woollen</th>
<th>wax</th>
<th>rubber</th>
<th>wooden</th>
<th>gold</th>
<th>steel ✓</th>
<th>concrete</th>
<th>cardboard</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>a</td>
<td>steel</td>
<td>pipe</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>a</td>
<td>4</td>
<td>a</td>
<td>candle</td>
<td>6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1 a</td>
<td>fence</td>
<td>4</td>
<td>a</td>
<td>medal</td>
<td>7</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2 a</td>
<td>tyre</td>
<td>5</td>
<td>a</td>
<td>blanket</td>
<td>8</td>
<td>a</td>
<td>bridge</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
2 Answer the questions.
   ► What shape is a triangle? triangular
   1 What shape is a tyre?
   2 How many sides does a rectangle have?
   3 When people sleep are they vertical or horizontal?
   4 What shape has four equal sides? a
   5 What kinds of lines always have the same distance between them? lines
   6 What kind of line doesn’t have curves? a line

Unit 32

1 Match 1–8 with a–i.
   ► pay attention to something you hear c a touch
   1 look at something or someone quickly b stare at
   2 notice something using your nose c listen to
   3 put your hands or fingers on something d tap
   4 touch something quickly with your hands or feet e overhear
   5 have a particular flavour f smell
   6 look at something or someone for a long time g taste
   7 become impossible to see or find h glance at
   8 hear someone’s conversation by accident i disappear

Unit 33

1 Complete the text with the words from the box in the correct form.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>distance</th>
<th>scene</th>
<th>painting</th>
<th>shade</th>
<th>artist</th>
<th>ignore</th>
<th>hand</th>
<th>foreground</th>
<th>just</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>

The painting by a French (1) illustrates a (2) of peace and happiness. There is a mother playing with her small daughter in the (3), and in the background an older woman is watching them. Behind her, you can (4) see one side of a garden gate, and in the (5) an old house, perhaps where they all live. It’s obviously a warm day, but they are playing in the (6) to protect the small child from the hot sun. Finally, in the bottom (7) corner of the painting, there is a man. He’s (8) the mother and daughter, and seems much more interested in what is happening on his right – but that is outside the picture, so we’ll never know what fascinates him.

Unit 34

1 One word is wrong in each line. Cross it out and write the correct one at the end.
   ► Did you hear someone stream?... scream
   1 The police had to stash the door open.
   2 Don’t bear up that paper – we can use it again.
   3 If you sold that in two, you can put it in this envelope.
   4 He strayed us with water.
   5 The little girl was frying because her dog had disappeared.
   6 He burnt into tears for no reason at all.
   7 She signed noisily and left the room.
   8 Don’t snake that – it might explode!
   9 I saw her bragging an enormous box along the street.
35 I can talk about crime

A What is crime?

Crime is activity which is against the law: for example, if you steal someone’s property, you are committing a crime and breaking the law. Some offences are only minor, e.g. illegal parking; but for more serious and especially violent crimes, e.g. killing or attacking someone, a person could go to prison for a long time.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Spotlight: crime</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>The noun crime can be countable and uncountable.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>There are many victims of violent crime (f).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>It is a crime (c) to avoid paying tax.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Glossary

- against the law
- steal sth PP stolen property
- commit a crime
- break the law offence
- minor
- violent
- kill sb
- attack sb
- go to prison

- against the rules of a country. SYN illegal. opp legal.
- take sth belonging to sb else without permission.
- sth that belongs to you (e.g. a computer, jewellery).
- do sth illegal.
- do sth illegal/against the law. opp obey the law.
- an illegal activity. SYN crime. (The person is an offender / a criminal.)
- not important. opp serious.
- using force to hurt sb physically. violence n.
- make sb die.
- start fighting or hurting sb.
- go to a place where criminals have to stay after committing a crime. SYN go to jail.

1. Circle the verbs below. Don’t circle the other words.

   offence minor kill violent law steal crime prison commit illegal serious attack criminal offend obey

2. Is the meaning the same or different? Write S or D.

   - steal | take something belonging to someone without permission. S
   1. illegal | against the law ... 5. criminal | offender ...
   2. an offence | a crime ...
   3. legal | illegal ...
   4. kill someone | attack someone ...
   6. commit a crime | break the law ...
   7. prison | jail ...
   8. minor crime | serious crime ...

3. Complete the sentences using a word from the box. Put the verbs in the correct form.

   - She did something terrible, and I heard that she went ............ to prison.
   1. There is a lot of ............ in the centre of town at night.
   2. A group of boys .......... the man, but fortunately he wasn’t badly hurt.
   3. The young man .......... my bike and sold it in the market.
   4. .......... was stolen from several houses in the street last night.
   5. It was a very .......... crime; several people had to go to hospital.
   6. He committed a .......... crime, and he’ll probably go to .......... for a long time.
   8. He parked in the wrong place; it was only a .......... offence, but it’s still .......... the law.

4. Test yourself. Look at the glossary words and cover the meanings. Can you remember the meanings?
### B Types of crime

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Crime</th>
<th>The crime of ...</th>
<th>Verb</th>
<th>Criminal</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>theft</td>
<td>... taking something which belongs to someone else without permission.</td>
<td>He steals cars and sells them.</td>
<td>thief</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>robbery</td>
<td>... stealing from a person or place, often using violence.</td>
<td>They were planning to rob the bank.</td>
<td>robber</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>burglary</td>
<td>... entering a building illegally and stealing things from it.</td>
<td>They broke into the house and stole some jewellery.</td>
<td>burglar</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>shoplifting</td>
<td>... stealing things from a shop.</td>
<td>She stole a skirt from the supermarket.</td>
<td>shoplifter</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>mugging</td>
<td>... attacking someone in a public place in order to steal from them.</td>
<td>He mugged people for their money late at night.</td>
<td>mugger</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>assault</td>
<td>... hurting someone physically.</td>
<td>He assaulted/attacked a man. He stabbed him.</td>
<td>attacker</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**murder**  
... killing someone **deliberately** (= you wanted or planned to do it)  
He murdered his neighbour.  
Why did he **shoot** him?

**spotlight steal and rob**

You **steal** money or things, but you **rob** a person or place.

*Someone has stolen my bike. Thieves stole £2000 from the shop.*
*I was robbed at the football match. They robbed the museum last night.*

5 One word in each sentence is wrong. Cross it out.

- Thieves, robbers, murderers, and burglars all steal property.
  
  1 Rob, steal, murder, and attacker are all verbs.
  
  2 Theft, mug, robbery, and assault are all crimes.
  
  3 Shooting, assaulting, stabbing, and breaking into are all ways of attacking people physically.
  
  4 Mugging, assault, shoplifting, and murder are all acts of violence.
  
  5 Mugger, shoplifter, thief, and burglary are all criminals.

6 Complete the sentences.

- The thief **stole** $1000.
  
  1 Two robbers **entered** into the museum and **stole** three paintings. A guard tried to stop them, but one robber had a knife and **stabbed** him in the chest.
  
  2 The driver killed a man, but it wasn't murder, because he didn’t do it **intentionally**.
  
  3 Someone **robbed** me on the way home last night. He had a gun and said he would **kill** me if I didn't give him money and my mobile phone. It was horrible.
  
  4 He will be in prison for the rest of his life for **murdering** his wife. He bought a gun and **shot** her while she was asleep.
  
  5 A **burglar** broke into our house and took our jewellery and cameras.
  
  6 The three men **entered** that bank because it was in a very quiet area.

7 Test yourself. Look at the crimes, and cover the other three columns. Can you remember the meanings and the verbs?
A police investigation

A crime is **reported** to the police, usually by the **victim**.

The police **investigate** it. The victim and **witnesses** tell the police what they know.

The police may take **fingerprints**, or take photos where the crime **took place**.

If possible, they **catch** the suspect and **arrest** him.

If there is enough **evidence**, they will **charge** the suspect and he will **go to court**.

**Glossary**

- **report sth**: give information that sth has happened.
- **victim**: a person who has been robbed, injured, etc.
- **investigate sth**: try to find out about sth.
- **witness**: a person who sees sth happen (e.g. a crime or an accident).
- **may**: we use may to say that sth is possible. *syn* might.
- **take place**: happen.
- **catch sb**/ **caught**: find and hold sb.
- **suspect**: a person who the police think has committed a crime.
- **evidence**: facts, signs, or objects that make you believe sth is true.
- **charge sb**: (of the police) say officially that they believe sb has done sth illegal.

1. Circle the correct word.

When a robbery has **taken place**/ **reported**, someone will (1) **investigate**/ **report** it to the police. (2) Victims/Suspects and witnesses will tell the police what they saw. After that, the police will begin to (3) **investigate**/ **charge** the crime. They may take photos and take (4) **fingerprints**/ **suspects** where the robbery **took place**/ **caught**. They (5) **will**/ **may** **catch** the (7) **suspect**/ **victim**; if they do, they will (8) **report**/ **arrest** him. If they have enough (9) **evidence**/ **victims**, they will (10) **catch**/ **charge** the suspect, and he will have to go to (11) **court**/ **the police station**.

2. Answer the questions. One question has more than one answer.

- **Who has to find the evidence?** The police
- **Who catches fingerprints?**
- **Who is charged?**
- **Who investigates the crime?**
- **Who is hurt by the crime?**

3. Test yourself. Cover the words in the glossary and look at the meanings. Can you remember the words?
In court

In Britain, serious crimes such as robbery and murder are tried by a judge and jury. At the trial, the prosecution aims to prove that the accused (or defendant) has committed the crime; the defence aims to prove he is innocent. At the end, the jury decides whether the defendant is guilty or not guilty. If he is guilty, he is sentenced by the judge. He may get a fine or a prison sentence.

4 True or false? Write T or F.

1. The prosecution defends the accused. ___
2. The defendant is sentenced by the judge. ___
3. If the jury decides the defendant is innocent, he may go to prison. ___
4. With serious crimes, the jury decides what the sentence will be. ___
5. The defence aims to prove that the accused did not commit the crime. ___
6. If the accused is guilty, he may get a fine. ___
7. The judge has to prove whether the defendant is guilty or not. ___
8. Trials take place in a court. ___

5 Complete the sentences using the words on the right in the correct form.

- He may get a prison sentence.

1. The accused is ___ by the judge and jury.
2. The defence must ___ that the accused is innocent.
3. The ___ has to show that the accused committed the crime.
4. If the ___ is guilty, he may go to prison.
5. The guilty person is ___ by the judge.
6. A ___ takes place in court.
7. A person who is guilty may be ___ a sum of money.

6 Test yourself. Cover the glossary meanings and look at the words. Can you remember the meanings?

Glossary

- try sb ___ ask questions and listen to evidence in court to decide if sb has done sth illegal.
- trial ___ an examination of evidence in court to decide if sb has done sth illegal.
- the prosecution ___ the lawyers who try to prove that the accused person has committed a crime. prosecute sb v.
- prove sth ___ give evidence to show that sth is true. proof n.
- the defence ___ the lawyers who try to prove that the accused person has not committed the crime. defend sb v.
- innocent ___ If you are innocent, you have done nothing wrong. or guilty.
- sentence sb ___ tell sb who is guilty what they will have to do, e.g. go to prison. sentence n.
- fine ___ a sum of money you have to pay if you break a law. fine sb v.
37 I can discuss health issues

A Diseases common among younger people

Nowadays fewer children suffer from infectious diseases, but the number of children around the world with asthma has increased. Doctors believe that the breathing difficulties of asthma sufferers are often caused by allergies to smoke, food, or pollution. There has also been a dramatic increase in obesity in young people in the last 20 years. Amongst other things, it can lead to heart attacks, diabetes, and depression.

1 Write the related adjective.
   - infection infectious
   - allergy
   - obesity
   - depression
   - diabetes

2 Circle the correct word.
   - Breathing problems can be caused by asthma/depression.
   1 Diabetes/Asthma is related to sugar in the blood.
   2 She has a food allergy/asthma.
   3 Diseases/Asthma can be infectious.
   4 Instances of asthma have increased/decreased.
   5 The increase is dramatic/infectious.
   6 He had a heart/lung attack.

3 Complete the sentences.
   - If you have breathing difficulties, you may be suffering from ____________.
   1 I can eat most things, but I'm ____________ to seafood. It makes me really ill.
   2 So many children eat junk food; we have a big problem with ____________ in our country.
   3 My uncle had a heart ____________ last year, but he's fine now.
   4 He lost his job and became very ____________, but he's happier now.
   5 More people ____________ from asthma than in the past.
   6 He's ____________, so he has to test his blood sugar levels regularly.
   7 When you ____________ in your ____________, fill with air.
   8 Obesity can ____________ to a number of serious ____________.
   9 Fortunately there has been a small ____________ in numbers of children suffering from infectious diseases.

Glossary

suffer from sth: have the experience of sth bad.
infectious: An infectious disease passes easily from person to person. infection n.
disease: an illness (e.g. skin disease, kidney disease).
asthma: a medical condition which makes it difficult to breathe.
increase: get larger in number or amount. increase N. one decrease v., n.
breathe (in/out): take air into your lungs (see picture) and let it out again.

allergy: a medical condition that makes you ill when you touch, eat, or breathe sth that doesn't normally make other people ill. allergic Adj.
dramatic: sudden and surprising.
obesity: the state of being so fat that you are unhealthy. obese Adj.
lead to sth: cause or have sth as a result, often sth bad.
heart attack: When sb has a heart attack, their heart (see picture) suddenly stops working normally.
diabetes: a disease in which your body can't control the level of sugar in the blood. diabetic Adj.
depression: a feeling of being very unhappy (this can also be an illness). depressed Adj.
### Diseases common among older people

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Word</th>
<th>Example</th>
<th>Meaning</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>disabled</strong></td>
<td><strong>My sister is disabled: she can't walk.</strong></td>
<td><em>not able to use a part of your body properly.</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>disability N</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>blind</strong></td>
<td><strong>My uncle is going blind.</strong></td>
<td><em>not able to see.</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>go or be blind</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>SYN lose your sight</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>deaf</strong></td>
<td><strong>I'm a bit deaf, so please speak up.</strong></td>
<td><em>not able to hear.</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>go or be deaf</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>(have a) stroke</strong></td>
<td><strong>She had a stroke, but she's able to walk again now.</strong></td>
<td><em>a sudden illness which affects the brain (see picture) and can stop you walking, talking, etc.</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>heart disease</strong></td>
<td><strong>He suffers from heart disease.</strong></td>
<td><em>a serious long-term condition causing problems for your heart.</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>cancer</strong></td>
<td><strong>He got lung cancer from smoking.</strong></td>
<td><em>a very serious illness in which tumours often grow in the body.</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>e.g. skin cancer</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>arthritis</strong></td>
<td><strong>I can't walk very far because of my arthritis.</strong></td>
<td><em>a disease which causes pain when you bend your arms, fingers, etc.</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>arthritis adj</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>memory loss</strong></td>
<td><strong>She suffers from memory loss: she forgets things easily.</strong></td>
<td><em>a condition in which you lose your ability to remember things.</em></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Complete the words.

1. **lung cancer**
2. **m i r i n s s**
3. **a r r t i c**
4. **b l t y**
5. **s t r e**
6. **h r t d s s e**
7. **d s b l t y**

### True or false? Write T or F.

1. If someone has heart disease, the problems started some time ago. **T**
2. Arthritis means your fingers, feet, etc. may be painful. **T**
3. If you are going deaf, you can't see very well. **F**
4. If you lose your sight completely, you go blind. **T**
5. People with cancer often have a tumour in their body. **T**
6. Heart disease is the same as a heart attack. **F**
7. If you suffer from memory loss, you can remember things. **F**
8. A stroke attacks the lungs. **T**
9. Being deaf and blind are disabilities. **T**

### Complete the text.

Elderly people usually become more **disabled** as time goes by. My grandmother, for example, suffers from (1) **a**__________, and she can't walk very easily. Last year she started to go a bit (2) **d**__________, but fortunately she hasn't lost her (3) **s**__________, so she can still enjoy the TV. Sadly, she suffers from (4) **m**__________ loss, but that's very common with people of her age. No one in our family has suffered from either (5) **c**__________ or (6) **h**__________ disease, however.

### Test yourself. Cover the words and examples, and look at the meanings. Can you remember the words?
A The British political system

Glossary

**election** the time when people choose individuals to speak for them and act for them. **elect v.**

**hold sth** organize an event such as an election.

**constituency** one of the areas into which the country is divided for voting in political elections.

**vote for sb/sth** choose sb/sth in an election. **vote n.**

**represent sb/sth** act officially for people or an organization.

**political party** a group of people with the same ideas who want to win an election (e.g. the Labour Party, the Conservative Party).

**in power** in political control of the country.

**politician** a person with a job in politics.

**parliament** the group of people elected to make the laws in a country.

**consist of sth** be formed or made up of sth.

**majority** the largest number or part of sth. **op minority.**

**government** the group of people in control of a country. **govern v.**

**prime minister** (or PM) the leader of the government in some countries.

---

1. True or false in Britain? Write T or F.
   - The British parliament consists of 646 elected representatives.  **T**
   1. Elections must be held every four years.  
   2. People can only vote for one person in this election.  
   3. Two or three people may be elected in each constituency.  
   4. If you are a Member of Parliament, you are in the government.  
   5. The leader of the largest political party in parliament becomes prime minister.  
   6. The party with the minority of elected MPs forms the government.  

2. Complete the sentences.
   - **PM** is an abbreviation of **prime minister**.
   1. How often do you hold ________ for parliament?
   2. Parliament ________ of people from a number of different political ________.
   3. In the UK, the Conservative Party was in ________ from 1979 to 1997.
   4. Who did you ________ for in the last election?
   5. Politicians ________ the people who elect them.
   6. She had over 50 per cent of the votes, so a ________ of the people voted for her.

3. ABOUT YOUR COUNTRY Write your answers, or ask another student.
   1. How often does your country usually hold elections?  
   2. Which political party is in power at the moment?  
   3. How long have they been in power?  
   4. What is the title of the leader of the party?  
   5. How many people are in parliament?
B Political objectives

The government has announced that its first priority will be education, and today the prime minister will focus on the need for more young people to go to university.

A new transport policy will be announced today which aims to persuade motorists to leave their cars at home.

The government will face strong opposition to their new immigration policy.

An Olympic athlete has been chosen to launch the government’s new fitness campaign.

Glossary

| **objective** | a thing you are trying to do. syns aim, goal. |
| **announce sth** | say sth officially and in public. announcement n. |
| **priority** | a thing that is important or that you must do before anything else. |
| **focus on sth** | give all your attention to sth. focus n. |
| **need for sth** | a situation in which you must have or do sth. |
| **policy** | a plan to do sth, agreed by a government, company, etc. |
| **persuade sb (to do sth)** | give reasons to make sb agree (to do sth). |
| **face sth** | have to deal with a difficult situation. |
| **immigration** | the process of coming to live in a country that is not your own (the people are called immigrants). |
| **launch sth** | start sth new, especially a campaign or product. |
| **campaign** | (often used in politics or business) a plan to do a number of things with a specific aim. |

4 Circle the correct answer.

If you persuade somebody to do something, they (i) do it. 
1 If you announce something, you say it in public/private.
2 A priority is important/not important.
3 If you face a problem, you avoid it/deal with it.
4 If you launch something, you start it/finish it.
5 Immigration is the process of coming/growing to live in a foreign country.
6 If you oppose something, you agree/disagree with it.

5 Complete the sentences.

Helping poor people is a major priority for the government.
1 Do you agree with the government’s economic _______________?
2 They’ve launched a _______________ to educate people about the tax system.
3 Some MPs already agree with the prime minister, but he still has to _______________ others.
4 The USA received a lot of European _______________ in the early twentieth century.
5 The main _______________ of the education policy is to give parents more choice.
6 It’s clear that the _______________ disagree strongly with the government’s policy.
7 In his speech, the prime minister will _______________ on health issues.
8 The government has expressed the _______________ for change in their education policy.

6 Test yourself. Look at the glossary words and cover the meanings. What are the meanings?
I can talk about war and peace

A Conflict

...The bomb exploded in the city centre killing at least a dozen people ...

...Soldiers fought a two-hour gun battle and captured a number of enemy fighters ...

...The army have captured the airport and are now in control of the situation. Most enemy soldiers have now surrendered.

...If the current crisis gets worse, civil war could break out at any time ...

1 Match 1–6 with a–g.

1 They're in control ...d...
2 The conflict ...
3 Soldiers fought ...
4 Two bombs ...
5 Soldiers captured ...
6 A dozen ...

1 a surrendered.
2 b the main port.
3 c guns were found.
4 d of the city.
5 e a long battle.
6 f exploded.
7 g lasted many years.

Replace the underlined phrases with a single word that has the same meaning.

1 They were physically trying to hurt each other. Fighting
2 It's a dangerous and difficult period.
3 Many fighters have given up.
4 They took control of the city.
5 There were a dozen soldiers.
6 When did the bomb go off?

Complete the sentences.

1 Why did war break ...?
2 The ... exploded at 10.15.
3 Fifty people died in the first ... of the war.
4 There are 50,000 ... in the army.
5 Are they in ... of the situation?
6 The conflict could result in civil ...

Glossary

conflict an angry argument or state of fighting between people or countries. (War is fighting between countries or groups using guns, etc.)
bomb a container packed with materials that can burst out with force.
explode burst with force and a loud noise. Syn go off. explosion n.
dozen twelve or a group of twelve (half a dozen = 6).
soldier (see picture) a person who is a member of an army.
fight pt fought When people fight, they try to hurt or kill each other (sb who fights is a fighter). fight n.
battle a fight between armies in a war.
capture sb/sth 1 catch and keep sb so they can't leave. 2 take control of sth.
enemy the people your army or country is fighting against.
be in control of sth have the power or ability to deal with sth.
surrender stop fighting and admit you have lost. Syn give up.
crisis a time of great danger or difficulty. critical adj.
civil war a war between groups of people who live in the same country.
break out (used about fighting, wars, fires, etc.) start suddenly.
## B Compromise

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Example</th>
<th>Word and meaning</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>The US and its European allies are both determined to find a solution.</td>
<td>ally a country that agrees to support another country.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>determined having a strong desire to do sth and be successful.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>The two countries involved are hoping they can reach an agreement.</td>
<td>involved taking part in sth or connected to sth.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>reach an agreement arrive at a decision that both sides agree on.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Leaders from the two main parties are now negotiating, and there is some hope of a peace settlement.</td>
<td>leader a person who is in charge or control of sth.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>negotiate talk to sb in order to decide or agree on sth.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>peace settlement an official agreement that ends a war (peace is a time when there is no war).</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>The two sides have finally agreed a ceasefire.</td>
<td>side either of two or more groups who are arguing or fighting with each other.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ceasefire an agreement between two sides to stop fighting.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>If both sides are willing to compromise, there could be a settlement fairly soon.</td>
<td>willing to do sth happy and prepared to do sth. or unwilling.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>compromise accept less than you want in order to reach an agreement.</td>
<td>compromise n.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### 4

Cover the table above. Match 1–7 with a–h.

- settlement ____ a taking part in something
- 1 ceasefire ____ b having a strong desire to do something
- 2 ally ____ c an agreement to end a war or argument✓
- 3 determined ____ d happy and prepared to do something
- 4 willing ____ e accept less than you want
- 5 negotiate ____ f an agreement to stop fighting
- 6 compromise ____ g talk to somebody in order to agree something
- 7 involved ____ h a country that has agreed to support you

### 5

Complete the texts.

The civil war has now lasted almost ten years.

**Allies** of the two (1) have managed to get them to agree to a temporary (2) on several occasions, but they have never been able to get the two (3) of the sides to negotiate a peace (4). It seems they are both (5) to carry on fighting to the bitter end and are completely (6) to compromise.

The two countries (7) in the conflict have finally agreed to come to the negotiating table. Neither will be willing to (8) very much, but there is now at least the possibility that the two leaders could (9) an agreement that will lead to a more lasting (10) settlement.

### 6

Test yourself. Look at the examples in the table and cover the meanings. Can you remember the meanings?
## I can talk about events in history

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Date</th>
<th>Event</th>
<th>Meaning</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1066</td>
<td>William of Normandy invaded England and then defeated King Harold in a battle.</td>
<td>invade enter a country with an army to attack and take control of it. invasion n. defeat sb win a battle, vote, game, etc. against sb.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1781</td>
<td>William Herschel discovered the planet Uranus.</td>
<td>discover sth find sth that nobody has found before. discovery n.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1917</td>
<td>The Russian Revolution</td>
<td>revolution action taken by a large group of people to change the government, often using violence.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1923</td>
<td>Turkey became a republic.</td>
<td>republic a country with no king or queen.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1947</td>
<td>India gained independence / became independent.</td>
<td>gain independence become free from control by another country. independent adj.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1957</td>
<td>The European Common Market was established.</td>
<td>establish sth start or create an organization or system. establishment n.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1975</td>
<td>Prince Juan Carlos became king of Spain.</td>
<td>prince the son or grandson of a king or queen (a daughter is a princess).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1981</td>
<td>President Sadat of Egypt was assassinated.</td>
<td>president the leader of a country with no king or queen. assassination n.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1981</td>
<td>Attempt to assassinate President Ronald Reagan.</td>
<td>attempt the act of trying to do sth difficult (often without success). attempt to do sth v.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1990</td>
<td>Nelson Mandela was released from prison.</td>
<td>release sb allow sb to be free. release n.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

1 Cover the table above. Match 1–5 with a–f. Then write the nouns formed from each verb in the third column.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Verb</th>
<th>Meaning</th>
<th>Noun</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>discover sth</td>
<td>a kill a famous person</td>
<td>discovery</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1 release</td>
<td>b enter another country with an army and attack it</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2 assassinate</td>
<td>c find something that nobody has found before ✓</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3 establish</td>
<td>d try to do something, often without success</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4 invade</td>
<td>e start or create an organization</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5 attempt</td>
<td>f allow somebody to be free</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

2 Can you complete these sentences about other events in world history?

1 President Kennedy was ____________ in 1963.
3 The ‘Velvet ____________’ took place in Czechoslovakia in 1989.
4 American forces ____________ the British at the Battle of New Orleans in 1815.
5 In 1981 there was an ____________ to assassinate Pope John Paul II.
6 Argentina gained ____________ in 1816 and Brazil became ____________ in 1822.
Unit 35

1 Complete the sentences. Someone who ...
   1 attacks someone physically is an attacker.
   2 commits a crime is a criminal.
   3 kills someone deliberately is a murderer.
   4 attacks someone in the street for money is a robber.
   5 breaks into a house and steals things from it is a burglar.
   6 steals your car is a thief.
   7 steals things from shops is a shoplifter.
   8 steals from a bank is a bank robber.

2 Circle the correct word.
   The man robbed / mugged the post office.
   She shot / stabbed him with a kitchen knife.
   You don't go to prison if you obey / break the law.
   People who commit / break an offence may end up in prison.
   The two men broke into jail / the museum and stole / robbed some paintings.
   It was a terrible accident. Don crashed into another car and murdered / killed the driver.
   You don't see much violence / violent on the streets.
   Murder is a very serious / minor crime.
   They attacked / killed the guard, and he's still in hospital.

Unit 36

1 Put the sequence in the correct order.
   a The jury decided that the defendant was guilty.
   b The police charged the suspect.
   c A crime was committed.
   d The suspect went to court.
   e The police caught the suspect.
   f The jury listened to the evidence.
   g The police investigated the crime.
   h The victim reported the crime.
   i The judge sentenced the defendant to two years in prison.

2 Complete the sentences.
   The suspect may be guilty or innocent.
   1 The trial takes place / puts in a court.
   2 The prosecution try to prove / show that the defendant committed the crime.
   3 The defendant is also called the accused.
   4 Often a witness has to tell the court what they saw or know about the crime.
   5 If he is guilty, the defendant may get a sentence / or a prison sentence.
   6 The defendant might be guilty, or he might be innocent.
   7 When the police investigate a crime, they are looking for clues / for example, fingerprints.
   8 If the police find a suspect, they will question / them and question them at the police station.
Unit 37

1 What medical problem is being defined?
   - A feeling of being very unhappy. depression.
   1 The condition of being too fat. ____________
   2 A condition that makes you ill when you touch, breathe, or eat something that doesn’t affect other people. ____________
   3 A sudden illness affecting the brain; you may not be able to talk afterwards. ____________
   4 A medical condition which makes breathing difficult. ____________
   5 A condition in which the heart stops working suddenly. ____________
   6 A serious illness in which tumours often grow in the body. ____________
   7 A disease which causes pain when you bend your arms, fingers, etc. ____________
   8 A disease in which the body can’t control the level of sugar in the blood. ____________

2 One word is missing in each sentence. Where from? Write it at the end.
   - He is / and has been in a wheelchair for years. _disabled_
   1 She has suffered asthma for years. ____________
   2 He had a heart and died last week. ____________
   3 My grandfather is going so I have to shout to him. ____________
   4 It’s an infectious so he can’t mix with other people. ____________
   5 The doctor told me to in deeply through my nose. ____________
   6 She is allergic some medicines. ____________
   7 Obesity can lead heart disease. ____________
   8 He suffers from loss and can’t remember where he puts things. ____________

Unit 38

1 Match 1–10 with a–k.
   - I don’t belong to any political. ___
   1 The announcement was made by ___
   2 They hold ___
   3 The government will face ___
   4 We need to launch ___
   5 They want to persuade ___
   6 I don’t know which party ___
   7 I wouldn’t vote ___
   8 She’s the Member ___
   9 I don’t agree with their immigration ___
   10 The government needs to focus ___
   a Ben Jones represents.
   b a campaign.
   c for that party.
   d on better health care.
   e elections every four years.
   f policy.
   g the prime minister.
   h of Parliament for Hampstead.
   i strong opposition to their plan.
   j party. ✓
   k people to accept the scheme.

2 Which words are being defined?
   - the time when people choose politicians to speak and act for them elections.
   1 something that you are trying to achieve ____________
   2 disagree strongly with something ____________
   3 something that is very important or that you must do before anything else ____________
   4 the group of people elected to make and change laws in a country ____________
   5 a person whose job is in politics ____________
   6 in political control of a country ____________
   7 be formed or made up of something ____________
Unit 39

1 Answer the questions. Tick (✓) Yes or No.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>Yes</th>
<th>No</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Is a dozen less than ten?</td>
<td></td>
<td>✓</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1 Is a soldier a member of the army?</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2 Is a ceasefire at the beginning of a conflict?</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3 When a bomb goes off, is there an explosion?</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4 When two sides reach an agreement, do they usually compromise?</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5 If an army surrenders, does it stop fighting?</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6 Are your enemies on the same side as you?</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7 Are your allies on the same side as you?</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8 Is a civil war between people from different countries?</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

2 Is the meaning the same or different? Write S or D.

- He's one of our allies. | He's one of our enemies. D.
- The two leaders are negotiating. | The two leaders are fighting. 
- They arrived at a settlement. | They reached a settlement. 
- There are two sides. | There are two leaders. 
- There's a crisis in the country. | The situation is critical in the country. 
- He wanted to do it. | He was unwilling to do it. 
- They captured the enemy leader. | They fought the enemy leader. 
- It was a long battle. | It was a long war. 

Unit 40

1 Complete the sentences.

- Napoleon Bonaparte was defeated at the Battle of Waterloo in 1815.
- In 1969, Sirhan Bishara Sirhan was sent to prison for the murder of Robert Kennedy in June 1968. He is still there and will never be free.
- Seventy days after Ronald Reagan became President of the United States in 1981, John Hinckley attempted to assassinate him. Reagan survived the attack and lived for another 23 years.
- The French Revolution started in 1789 and lasted for ten years.
- Fidel Castro established a new Communist government in Cuba in 1959.
- Marie Curie, a Polish-French scientist, discovered radium in the early part of the twentieth century. She died from exposure to radiation in 1934.
- Diana, Princess of Wales, the first wife of Prince Charles, was killed in a car crash in Paris in 1997.
- China became a republic in 1912 after two thousand years of imperial rule.
- Zimbabwe gained independence in 1980.
LIFE AS AN EDITOR

Meet Cyrus Davis, who has spent his whole working life in journalism. He’s now the editor of The Evening Star, a local daily paper. He’s been a news reporter on several national papers, a sports editor, and a headline writer. The Star covers current affairs, sports, crime, and so on, but one section of our paper is about culture. It’s a good paper, but newspaper sales are declining because of TV and the internet. It’s a bad time for the press.

Glossary

whole - complete; with no parts missing. syn entire.
journalism - the profession of collecting and writing about news in newspapers, on TV, etc. (a person who does this is a journalist).
editor - the person in charge of a newspaper, magazine, etc. edit v.
daily - You can get a daily (newspaper) every day, except Sunday.
publish sth - prepare and print a book, newspaper, etc. publishing n.
several - more than two, but not many.
national - connected with all of a country (international involving two or more countries).
headline - the title of a newspaper article (see next page).
current affairs - important political or social events happening now.
section - one of the parts into which sth is divided.
culture - activities involving art, literature, music, etc.
cultural adj.
decline - become weaker or smaller. decline n.
the press - newspapers and the journalists who work for them.

1. Circle the adjectives. Don’t circle the verbs and nouns.

   internationwholeeditpressdeclinedailyjournalismentirecultursectionnationalcultural

2. Is the meaning the same or different? Write S or D.

   She edits the newspaper. | She’s the editor. S
   1 I didn’t understand the article. | I didn’t understand the headline. D
   2 Which section do you read first? | Which part of the paper do you read first? D
   3 I’m interested in current affairs. | I’m interested in cultural events. S
   4 The number of journalists has declined. | The number of journalists has gone up. D
   5 She read the entire paper. | She read the whole paper. D
   6 She’s worked there for several years. | She’s worked there for many years. S

3. Complete the sentences.

   The article is in the sports section on page 34.
   1 I always turn to the section on c. first to read about the latest films and books.
   2 My son reads all the papers and is fascinated by the p. . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . He wants to be a . . . . . . . .
   3 The paper is p. . . . . . in Denton and sold everywhere in the region.
   4 I spent the w. . . . . . morning reading the news about the i. . . . . . . . . situation.
   5 Newspaper sales are going up in China, but they’re d. . . . . . . . . in Europe.
   6 Do you buy a d. . . . . . . newspaper?

4. Test yourself. Look at the glossary words and cover the meanings. Can you remember the meanings?
5. Circle the correct word.
   - She claimed/promised to work hard.
   1. There was a health scare/aid last week.
   2. Twenty workers were protested/axed.
   3. Police clashed/aided with protesters.
   4. They took part in a demonstration/pledge.
   5. She claimed/promised she was French.
   6. I receive a company pension/pensioner.
   7. There was a threat/clash to kill him.

6. Replace the underlined phrase with a single word with the same meaning.
   - She went to the public protest demonstration.
   1. The company made a formal promise to improve services.
   2. He says that he is the tallest man in the country.
   3. We're sending money and food to the earthquake zone.
   4. I had a frightening situation last night – I saw a snake in the garden.
   5. You should act with others to say that you disagree about price rises.
   6. My brothers disagreed seriously with the organizers over the arrangements.
   7. The man said he would hurt me.
   8. I made a spoken agreement and I won't break it.

7. Test yourself. Look at the headlines and cover the meanings. Can you explain the headlines?

FOOTBALL FANS CLASH WITH POLICE

200 AXED CAR WORKERS PROTEST IN CITY CENTRE

Bomb scare in city centre

NURSES DEMONSTRATE OVER TAX CHANGES

THREAT to Hollywood Star

MAN CLAIMS DOG CAN TALK

GOVERNMENT PROMISES HIGHER PENSIONS

GOVERNMENT PLEDGES AID FOR ETHIOPIA

- clash with sb.light or disagree seriously with sb about sth. clash n.
- axe sb/sth cut numbers of people, jobs, etc. by a large amount (an axe is a large tool used for cutting wood).
- protest say or show that you don't agree with sth, especially in public. protest n.
- scare a situation in which many people are afraid or worried (e.g. bomb scare, health scare, food scare).
- demonstrate take part in a public protest for or against sth. syn protest. demonstration/protest n.
- threat a statement that sb may kill, hurt, or punish you if you don't do what they want. threaten v.
- claim sth or claim that say that sth is true without having proof. claim n.
- promise (to do) sth say definitely that you will do sth, or that sth will happen. syn make a promise. promise n.
- pension money paid regularly by the government or a company to sb who has stopped working because of old age (sb who receives a pension is a pensioner).
- pledge sth make a formal promise to do or give sth. pledge n.

spotlight Verbs and nouns with the same form
There are many words in English in which the base form of the verb and the noun are the same, e.g. clash, protest, claim, promise, pledge, and aid. There was a clash between the protesters and the police. The police and the protesters clashed.
(See the Vocabulary Building tables on page 202.)
42 | I can talk about films

A Film awards

The BAFTAs are the British equivalent of the Oscars. The highest award, the Academy Fellowship, is a prize given for an individual's work and achievements during their career; previous winners include Hitchcock and Fellini. There are awards for the outstanding film of the year, and for special achievements by a British director, writer, or producer in their first film. There are also awards for best actor and actress in a leading role and in a supporting role. Achievements are also recognized in editing, lighting, and so on.

Glossary

- equivalent: sth that has the same value, amount, meaning, or importance as sth else. equivalent adj.
- award: You get or win an award when you do very well in a competition. award n.
- prize: sth of value that you get when you are successful in a competition, race, etc. prize n.
- individual: one person who is seen separately from others or a group. individual n.
- achievement: sth you have done successfully that was difficult. achieve v.
- winner: a person who wins a competition, game, etc. winner n.
- outstanding: extremely good; excellent. outstanding adj.
- director: the person who tells actors what to do in a film, play, etc. direct v.
- producer: the person who is responsible for the business side of a film, play, etc. produce v.
- leading role: the most important role (or part) in a film or play. leading role n.
- supporting role: the next most important role. role n.
- role: the part an actor plays (e.g. the role of Julius Caesar). role n.
- editing: the process of deciding which parts of a film to show and in which order. edit v.

1. Complete the words.

   1. outstanding
   2. equivalent
   3. porting role
   4. individual
   5. a...rd
   6. achieve
   7. winner
   8. produce

2. True or false? Write T or F.

   1. An actor directs the film. F
   2. An outstanding film is very bad. F
   3. A BAFTA winner gets an award. F
   4. A leading role is always a man's role. F
   5. An individual is one person. T
   6. A producer edits films. T
   7. It's an achievement to win an award. T
   8. A role is what an actor wears. F
   9. A producer organizes the film's finances. T
   10. A director tells actors how to act. T

3. Replace the underlined word or phrase with a single word with the same meaning.

   Who was the business manager of the film? A producer
   1. Was the person who won? A producer
   2. Did they get the success they wanted? A producer
   3. Who played the most important role? A producer
   4. Who organized the business side of the film? A producer
   5. Which part did Leonardo di Caprio play? A producer
   6. Who won the prize for supporting actress? A producer
   7. Is an Oscar equal in importance to a BAFTA award? A producer
   8. Was he the first single person to win three awards? A producer

4. Test yourself. Look at the glossary words and cover the meanings. Can you remember the meanings?
B Opinions

Love it or hate it?

An extraordinary and moving performance by a great leading actor.

A gripping and entertaining thriller, and full of drama – I loved it.

I'm usually a fan of Jan Loos, but this movie had such a weak plot. Very disappointing indeed.

Very violent and too much swearing – totally unsuitable for children. Disgusting!

---

Glossary

extraordinary very unusual or much better than usual.
syn incredible, our ordinary.

moving causing strong feelings, especially of sadness.

performance the act of playing a role in a film or play.

gripping very exciting; holding your attention.

entertaining interesting and fun.

drama exciting things that happen: an exciting event.

dramatic adj.

fan sb who really likes and is enthusiastic about a person or an activity.

movie (especially in US English) a film.

plot the series of events that form the story of a film, novel, etc.

disappointing not as good as you had hoped.

swearing rude language that may upset people. swear v.

unsuitable (for sth/sb) not right or appropriate for sth/sb. opp suitable.

disgusting very unpleasant.

---

5 Are the adjectives positive or negative? Write P or N.

- extraordinary P 2 ordinary .... 4 unsuitable .... 6 moving ....
1 gripping .... 3 incredible .... 5 disappointing .... 7 disgusting ....

6 Circle the correct word.

- There's a lot of swearing in the film.
1 It's very funny extremely/indeed.
2 The plot/performance is about three men who have to look after a baby.
3 The drama/movie is on at the Odeon cinema.
4 It was an ordinary/extraordinary film – I really loved it.
5 That film won't be suitable/disgusting for you – it's much too violent.
6 Her performance/fan was really gripping – you must see it.

7 Complete the words in these sentences.

1 'Casino Royale' is a really enter............................ film. ..............................................
2 Forest Whitaker gave an extra............................ perf............................ in 'The Last King of Scotland'. ..............................................
3 I thought 'Snakes on a Plane' was very disapp............................ ind............................ ..............................................
4 I'm a f............................ of Cate Blanchett. ..............................................
5 'The Pianist' was very mov............................ ..............................................

8 ABOUT YOU Replace the underlined names and titles with your own examples of films and actors in the 'About you' column. Compare with another student if you can.
At an art exhibition, a variety of paintings and drawings may be on display: for example, portraits, landscapes, and still lifes (note the plural here is lifes, not lives). Some artists work in oils (oil paints), while others use watercolours.

Styles vary too: some works of art are realistic, others are abstract. Skilled artists use a range of techniques to create different sorts of effects.

Glossary

exhibition a collection of paintings, objects, etc. that are shown in public.

variety a number of different types of the same thing.

vary v.

drawing a picture made with a pencil, pen, etc., but not paint.

on display being shown in a place where people will see it, syn on show.

style the way that sth is painted, drawn, built, etc.

work of art a very good painting, drawing, book, etc. (a really great work of art, e.g. Mona Lisa by Leonardo da Vinci, is a masterpiece).

realistic showing things as they are. realism n.

skilled having the ability and experience to do sth well. syn expert.

technique a particular way of doing sth, often needing special skills.

create sth cause sth new to happen; produce sth new.

sort a type or kind.

1 Is the meaning the same or different? Write S or D.

- watercolours | oil paints D

1 a drawing | a painting ...... 5 a sort | a type ......

2 on display | on show ...... 6 a portrait | a painting ......

3 realistic | abstract ...... 7 a still life | a landscape ......

4 create | make something new ...... 8 skilled | expert ......

9 a work of art | a painting ......

2 Complete the text.

Picasso is a great artist who worked in a variety of different (1) s......, some realistic and others (2) a....... He developed a wide range of painting (3) t....... He usually painted using (4) o......, but he liked to (5) v...... things and sometimes used (6) w....... He loved to paint people, and produced a beautiful (7) p...... of his mother. Many people believe that his real (8) m...... was Guernica, which he painted during the Spanish Civil War. In the past, the painting was on (9) d...... all over the world, but it is now permanently in Madrid.

3 Test yourself. Cover the words and look at the pictures. Can you remember the words?
B Photography

Word | Example | Meaning
--- | --- | ---
out of focus | The photos are out of focus. | Not showing things clearly. Opp in focus.
focus on sth | I focused on the girl’s face. | Change the camera until the image is clear.
transfer sth (from... to...) | I transferred the photos from the camera to a laptop. | Move sth from one place to another.
develop a film | Could I have this film developed, please? | Make pictures from a piece of film using chemicals.
automatic | With an automatic camera, photos are usually in focus. | Able to work by itself without direct human control.
studio | She has a studio where she does fashion photography. | A room where a photographer or artist works.

4 Complete the phrases with words from the box.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>photographer</th>
<th>camera</th>
<th>flash</th>
<th>a film</th>
<th>focus</th>
<th>album</th>
<th>of film</th>
<th>focus</th>
<th>lens</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>in focus</td>
<td>5 develop</td>
<td>1 digital</td>
<td>6 roll</td>
<td>2 zoom</td>
<td>7 built-in</td>
<td>3 amateur</td>
<td>8 photo</td>
<td>4 out of</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

5 Write the words in the correct order to form sentences.

- / film / please / roll / have / a / could / of Could I have a roll of film, please?
- 1 can / studio / in / films / develop / she / her
- 2 frame / the / put / photo / 1 / the / in
- 3 negative / two / please / of / can / prints / have / 1 / this?
- 4 the / focused / the / in / he / girl / foreground / on
- 5 photographers / automatic / often / cameras / amateur / buy
- 6 you / computer / to / can / the / transfer / pictures / the

6 ABOUT YOU Write your answers, or ask another student.

1 Are you interested in photography? If so, why?
2 What kind of camera have you got?
3 What features does it have?
4 What kinds of problems do you have when you take pictures?
44 I can talk about music

A Musical instruments and musicians

1. trumpet
2. saxophone
3. flute
4. organ
5. keyboard
6. piano
7. violin
8. cello
9. guitar

Franz Liszt was a composer but also a great pianist. Chris Martin is the lead singer and main songwriter in the rock band Coldplay. Mark Elder is the conductor of the Hallé Orchestra.

Spotlight The suffix -ist
We often use this suffix for the person who plays a particular instrument, e.g. guitarist, violinist, pianist, saxophonist, cellist, organist. But we say trumpeter, drummer, and usually keyboard player. The word for a flute player is flautist. note the change in spelling.

Glossary

- musical instrument a thing that is used for playing music.
- musician a person who plays a musical instrument.
- composer a person who writes music. compose v.
- lead singer the main singer in a band.
- songwriter a person who writes the words and music for a song.
- band a number of people who play music together.
- conductor the person in an orchestra who directs the musicians.
- orchestra a large group of musicians who play music together.

1. Complete the words for the musical instruments, then write the person who plays them.
   - piano / pianist
   - 1. vi ____________ / ____________
   - 2. or ____________ / ____________
   - 3. tr ____________ / ____________
   - 4. gu ____________ / ____________
   - 5. sax ____________ / ____________
   - 6. ce ____________ / ____________
   - 7. fl ____________ / ____________

2. Complete the words in the sentences.
   - They both play in a rock band ____________.
   - 1. My brother plays the violin in an o ____________.
   - 2. Noel Gallagher plays the g ____________ in the rock b ____________ ‘Oasis’, and his brother Liam is the l ____________ singer.
   - 3. Do you play a musical i ____________?
   - 4. I don’t like modern c ____________ such as Bartók and Stockhausen.
   - 5. Paul Simon sings and plays the guitar but is most famous as a s ____________.
   - 6. Mike’s playing guitar, but who is the keyboard p ____________?
   - 7. There are five in the band and they’re all good m ____________.
   - 8. Sir Georg Solti was the c ____________ of several wonderful orchestras.

3. Test yourself. Cover the words and look at the pictures. What are the instruments?
**Music questionnaire**

1. Write the name of a modern band or solo artist that you admire.
2. Has their music been influenced by anyone/anything?
3. Do they write and record their own music or play other people's?
4. Do they often do live concerts? Have you seen them play live?
5. What was the last album they released?
6. Why does their music appeal to you? Is it because of:
a great voice / talented musicians / lovely melodies / good lyrics?

**Glossary**

**solo artist** a singer or musician who is not part of a band.
**admire sb** like sb and think they have achieved a lot. 
**influence sb/sth** make a change to the way sb thinks. 
**record sth** put music, a film, etc. onto a CD or tape. 
**album** a collection of songs (often eight or ten).

**release sth** put an album onto the market so people can buy it. 
**appeal to sb** be attractive or interesting to sb. 
**voice** the sound a person makes when they talk or sing. 
**talented** having a lot of ability. 
**melody** a series of musical notes in a particular order. 
**lyrics** the words of a song.

**spotlight: living, alive, live**

*Living* and *alive* mean 'not dead', but *alive* is not used before a noun. 
*He's one of the greatest living composers.* Mozart isn't *alive* today. 
*Live* adj, adv (sounds like *live*) means 'seen or heard as it is happening'. 
*We saw the band play live.* then watched a recording of the concert on TV.

4. Circle the correct answer.

1. I like the tune but not the lyrics/melody.  
2. Is he a solo/single artist?  
3. I've never seen the band live/alive.

4. Katie Melua has a great tune/voice.  
5. He's one of the best living/alive/songwriters.  
6. The song has a beautiful melody/voice.  
7. His music appeals/influences to me.

5. Complete the text with words from the box.

*albums influenced talented release appeals solo recorded admire recording*

Gilberto Gil is a Brazilian singer and guitarist, and one of his country's most talented songwriters. As a young musician in the 1950s, he was (1) ________ by the bossa nova style of João Gilberto, but he didn't (2) ________ his first album, *Louraçao*, until 1967. He travelled in the 1970s, (3) ________ an album in English, and, in 1980, introduced reggae to Brazil with his (4) ________ of the Bob Marley song, 'No woman, no cry'. He has played with many musicians, while continuing his career as a (5) ________ artist. In all he has produced over 40 (6) ________. His music (7) ________ to people because of the rhythm and melodies, but people also (8) ________ him for his work in politics and for social causes.

6. ABOUT YOU Write your answers to the questionnaire, or ask another student.
# I can talk about people and places in sport

## A People 🎧

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Word</th>
<th>Example</th>
<th>Meaning</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>referee</td>
<td>The referee gave out five yellow cards.</td>
<td>the official person in control in some sports (in tennis this is an umpire).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>linesman</td>
<td>The linesman put his flag up for offside, but I think he was wrong.</td>
<td>a person who helps the referee in some sports. SYN referee’s assistant.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>coach</td>
<td>Andy Murray has a new tennis coach.</td>
<td>a person who gives practical teaching to make sb better in a sport.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>captain</td>
<td>Fabio Cannavaro was the Italian captain in the 2006 World Cup.</td>
<td>the player who is leader of the team.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>spectators</td>
<td>Spectators ran onto the pitch (= the area where the game is played).</td>
<td>people who watch a game (also the crowd).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>supporters</td>
<td>Many football supporters travel all over Europe to see their team.</td>
<td>people who regularly watch a team play. SYN fans. support v.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>commentator</td>
<td>I thought the commentator was talking rubbish.</td>
<td>a person who describes a game on TV or the radio.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

1. Cover the spotlight box and complete the list of people.
   - football __footballer__
   - golf ____________
   - athletics ____________
   - boxing ____________
   - motor racing ____________
   - rugby ____________
   - skiing ____________
   - gymnastics ____________

2. Circle the correct answer.
   - They have a special manager __coach__ to improve their fitness.
   1. The captain/coach wears an armband during the game.
   2. The referee/umpire gave him a red card.
   3. I lead/support Real Madrid, and go to most of their home games.
   4. In the men’s singles final at Wimbledon, they had a Portuguese referee/umpire.
   5. There were 40,000 in the ground, of which about 5,000 were Arsenal spectators/supporters.

3. Complete the words in the text.

   ‘There was trouble at last week’s game. Our __captain__ got a red card in the second half for arguing with the (1) ____________, and then the other team scored a goal in the last minute, although the (2) ____________ had his (3) ____________ up for offside. Even the (4) ____________ on the radio thought it was offside, but the ref gave the goal. At the end of the match, some (5) ____________ who were in the (6) ____________ then ran onto the (7) ____________, and the referee had to have a police escort. In the press conference after the game, our (8) ____________ was still very angry.’

---

**spotlight**  Suffix -er and player

We usually add -er or player to a noun or verb for the person who does a sport: golfer, swimmer, skier, racing driver, boxer, tennis player, rugby player.

But: athletics/athlete, gymnastics/gymnast.
The Camp Nou Stadium, the ground of Barcelona football club, is the largest stadium in Europe with a capacity of 98,800 spectators.

Hochenstein is a motor-racing circuit where the German Grand Prix sometimes takes place. One lap of the track is 4.574 kms.

The Centre Court at Wimbledon is famous worldwide. Now they have constructed the new roof, the All England Championship won't be interrupted because of rain.

A standard Olympic swimming pool is 50 metres long, 25 metres wide, and has a minimum depth of two metres.

Glossary

**stadium** a large structure where people sit and watch sport.

**ground** an area of land where a game is played and people watch.

**club** A football club is the team, the management, and the ground.

**capacity** the amount or number that a space or container will hold.

**circuit** an area of land, often in a circle, where a race takes place. syn track.

**lap** one journey around a track.

**court** a place where tennis, basketball, or badminton are played.

**worldwide** everywhere in the world. syn all over the world.

**construct sth** build or make sth. construction n.

**championship** a competition to find the best player or team in a sport.

**interrupt sth** stop the progress of sth for a short period of time.

**standard** normal; average.

**minimum** smallest possible or smallest allowed. opp maximum.

4. Complete the sentences.
   
   1. Worldwide means __all over the world.__
   2. A synonym for circuit is __track__.
   3. The noun from wide is __width__.
   4. The opposite of minimum is __maximum__.
   5. The noun from deep is __depth__.
   6. The noun from construct is __construction__.
   7. One journey round a track is a __lap__.

5. Complete the words in each text.
   
   1. Liverpool Football Club is planning to construct a new football stadium, with a capacity of over 60,000.
   2. The Chinese Grand Prix is raced over 56 laps of the Shanghai International Circuit. It's the most expensive track ever constructed, costing $246m.
   3. The French Open Tennis Championship at Roland Garros is famous worldwide as the only one of the four major tournaments that is played on clay courts.
   4. Unfortunately we don't have a standard Olympic swimming pool. The one we use for competitions is only 25 metres long, and 15 metres wide. The minimum depth is one metre, and the maximum is two metres.
A The Olympics

- The first games took place in 776 bc, with one competition, a race of about 192 metres.
- The first modern Olympics took place in 1896 with 241 competitors taking part in nine sports: athletics, cycling, fencing, gymnastics, weightlifting, shooting, swimming, tennis, and wrestling. By 2004, there were over 11,000 people competing in 28 sports.
- Gymnast Larissa Latynina holds the record for the most Olympic medals (18).
- Boxing is now the only Olympic sport where professionals are not allowed to compete.

Glossary

take place (used about a meeting or an event) happen.
competition a situation in which two or more people are trying to win sth or be better than sb (a person trying to win is a competitor).
compete v. competitive adj.
race a competition to see who is fastest or best, or who wins.
take part in sth join with other people in an activity, syn participate.
medal a piece of metal given to an athlete who comes 1st, 2nd, or 3rd.
professional a person who plays a sport for money as their job, opp amateur.

Spotlight record
A record is the best performance in something, especially sport.
She holds the record for the long jump.
He broke the record in the 100 metres.

1 Complete the words for sports.
1 shooting 2 weightlifting 3 fencing 4 cycling 5 athletics 6 wrestling
1 gym 2 shooting 3 competition

2 Circle the correct answer(s). Both answers may be correct.

1. How many people took place/took part?
2. Anyone can take part/participate.
3. He broke the record/competition.
4. The race takes place/takes part on Tuesday.
5. Did she win a race/medal?
6. Does she hold/carry the record?

3 Complete the sentences.

1. How many sportsmen and women took part in the last Olympics?
2. It's hard for poor countries to compete against rich countries in certain events.
3. A Russian gymnast holds the record for the most Olympic medals won.
4. There are a few Olympic amateurs, but most of the participants are professionals.
5. The marathon (just over 42 kms) is the longest distance on foot at the Olympics.
6. My uncle won a silver medal in the shooting event at the 1984 Olympics.

4 Test yourself. Cover the words and look at the pictures. What are the sports?
In a very one-sided contest, Roger Federer defeated Andy Roddick 6–4, 6–0, 6–2 in the semi-final of the Australian Open to go through to his tenth grand slam final. Federer won the first set quite easily, then broke Roddick's resistance in the second with some brilliant tennis. Afterwards, Roddick was very critical of his own performance, but praised his opponent for some outstanding tennis. Federer is now clearly the favourite to take his third Australian Open, and tenth grand slam overall. This would put him just one behind Rod Laver, a tremendous achievement for someone who is still only 25.

Glossary
one-sided  • if a game is one-sided, one person or team is much better than the other.
contest  • an activity between two players or teams to see who is best.
semi-final  • one of two games to decide who plays in the final.
final  • the last game or match in a competition.
resistance  • the action of trying to stop sth happening or stop sb doing sth. resist v.
brilliant  • very good, clever, or skillful. syn outstanding.
critical of sth/sb  • saying what is wrong with sth/sb. criticize sth/sb v.
performance  • the way in which sb plays or does sth. perform v.
praise sb/sth  • say that sb/sth is very good. praise n.
opponent  • a person who plays against you in a sport or competition.
favourite  • the person or team who is expected to win. opp outsider.
overall  • including everything: in total.
achievement  • a thing that you have done successfully through hard work or skill. achieve sth v.

5 Complete the sentences.

1. The noun related to perform is performance.
2. The noun related to achieve is achievement.
3. The verb related to resist is resist.
4. The noun related to praise is praise.
5. Outstanding is a synonym for outstanding.
6. An outsider is the opposite of an insider.
7. Beat sb is the same as defeat sb.

6 Complete the sentences.

1. We were defeated in the semi-final, which was very disappointing.
2. Nadal won the match in the end, but it was a great contest between them.
3. Bjorn Borg won Wimbledon five times, which is a fantastic achievement.
4. He was the favourite, so we expected him to win, but it was a very one-sided contest.
5. Tiger Woods aims for perfection and is always very critical of his own performance.
6. Who will her opponent be in the final? – I don’t know. It depends on the other's performance.

7 Test yourself. Cover the glossary meanings and look at the words. What are the meanings?

MEDIA AND ENTERTAINMENT 121
A Types of book

Glossary

- encyclopedia: a book or set of books that gives information about many different subjects, arranged in alphabetical order.
- manual: a book that tells you how to do or use sth such as a car or a computer.
- catalogue: a complete list of things you can buy or see somewhere.
- pleasure: a feeling of enjoyment.
- poetry: poems in general (a poem is a piece of writing arranged in short lines which express thoughts and feelings through sound and rhythm).
- alphabetical: listed in the same way as the alphabet: A, B, C, etc.
- novel: a book that tells a story about people or events that are not real.
- mystery: a story in which the events are only explained at the end (e.g. a murder mystery).
- science fiction: books about events that take place in the future, often involving travel in space. SYN sci-fi. INF.
- non-fiction: books about real facts, people, events, etc. SYN fiction.
- biography: the story of sb's life written by someone different (an autobiography is the story of sb's life written by that person).
- fiction: novels, murder mysteries, science fiction, etc. But there is non-fiction as well; I read quite a lot of biographies. My husband says I'm book-crazy.

1. Complete the table with words from the box.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Fiction</th>
<th>Non-fiction</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>catalogue</td>
<td>catalogue</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>murder mystery</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>autobiography</td>
<td>manual</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>reference book</td>
<td>encyclopedia</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>novel</td>
<td>science fiction</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>biography</td>
<td>non-fiction</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

2. Complete the sentences.

- A dictionary is arranged in alphabetical order.
  1. If you don't know the date of the French Revolution, look it up in an ______________.
  2. Shakespeare is famous for his plays, but he also wrote beautiful ______________.
  3. Dictionaries are a kind of ______________ book.
  4. What kind of books do you read for ______________ in the evenings?
  5. Do you read crime stories? ~ Yes, I'm reading a murder ______________ at the moment.
  6. What's the tenth letter of the ______________? ~ It's 'J'.
  7. Did David Beckham write his life story himself? ~ Yes, it's his ______________.
  8. If you don't know how your camera works, you should look in the ______________.

3. Test yourself. Look at the glossary words and cover the meanings. What are the meanings?
B Choosing a book

The title and front cover just attracted my attention.

I was browsing in a bookshop. I just picked up a paperback that looked interesting.

A recommendation by a friend – he said it was very readable and well written.

It was a gift, but I like the author so I was really pleased.

I looked through the first chapter – it looked fascinating.

spotlight Compound adjectives with **well**

There are many adjectives consisting of **well** + past participle, e.g. **well written** (of a book, article, etc.), **well informed** (= knowing a lot about a subject), **well known** (= famous).

4 Tick (√) the correct sentence ending.

Who is the author? √ gift □.

1 The cover attracted my chapter □ attention □.
2 The author was well known □ well written □.
3 I read the second title □ chapter □.
4 The book looked very readable □ well informed □.
5 I wanted the cheaper one, so I bought the hardback □ paperback □.
6 I was in a bookshop the other day, just attracting □ browsing □.

5 Complete the text.

My cousin has just written a reference book. He's not well known, but he's a good (1) a____________. His book might attract a lot of (2) a____________ because it's called 'How to make a lot of money by doing very little' – isn't that a great (3) t____________! It's being published in hardback and (4) p____________. I read the first (5) c____________ about selling things on the internet, and it's really (6) f____________ – I couldn't put it down. On the front (7) c____________ there's a picture of my cousin in bed with his laptop; it's a bit silly. But it's a funny book and it's (8) well w____________.

6 ABOUT YOU Write your answers, or ask another student.

1 What kind of books do you find most fascinating?
2 What kind of reference books do you use most often?
3 Do you enjoy browsing in bookshops?
4 Are you ever attracted to a book just by the cover?
5 Do you have more paperbacks or hardbacks? Why?

7 Test yourself. Cover the glossary words and look at the meanings. What are the words?
I can describe festivals

‘LA TOMATINA’: THE WORLD’S BIGGEST TOMATO FIGHT

The event takes place every August in Buñol, Spain. People come from all over the world to participate in this huge social occasion, which includes music, parades, dancing, and fireworks. The main event is a tomato fight in which 100 tons of overripe tomatoes are thrown in the streets. Trucks bring the tomatoes into the town, and the fight begins; it ends after exactly one hour. No one is very sure how or why this festival started!

CHERRY BLOSSOM FESTIVAL, JAPAN

Cherry blossom is the national flower of Japan. And as spring approaches, people make special trips to various viewing sites to see the first signs of the cherry trees in flower. The trees are sometimes lit up at night. The festival includes all sorts of delicious food, games, rides, parades, folk music, religious ceremonies, and a beauty contest.

THE RIO CARNIVAL (‘CARNAVAL’)

One of the most spectacular entertainments in the world, Carnival is a wild four-day celebration of music, dance, and food and drink, all over Rio. The event means a lot to the people from the poorest neighbourhoods, who spend months in preparation. It is an opportunity for the whole community to go out and have fun together. It ends with the Samba Parade, for which the performers dress up in the most striking costumes.

Glossary

- participate (in sth) - become part of an activity. syn take part in sth.
- occasion - a time when sth happens.
- fireworks - objects that burn or explode in the sky with colours and noise.
- ton - a unit for measuring weight in Britain (one ton = 1,016 kilograms).
- throw sth - use your hand and arm to send an object through the air.
- blossom - a flower or mass of flowers especially on fruit trees in spring.
- approach sb/sth - come nearer to sb/sth.
- light sth up - make sth bright with light. syn illuminate sth.
- contest - a competition to see who is the best (e.g. a beauty contest).
- spectacular - very impressive; large, beautiful, and often with lots of colour.
- entertainment - an activity that people enjoy watching and listening to, e.g. theatre, film, music (the people who entertain you are entertainers).
- wild - exciting and enjoyable.
- mean a lot to sb - be very important to sb.
- neighbourhood - an area of a town and the people who live there.
- community - all the people who live in an area or town.
- have fun - enjoy yourself.
- dress up - put on special clothes either for fun or for a formal event.
- striking - very attractive in a way that causes people to notice.
1. Find one spelling mistake in each sentence. Write the correct word at the end.
   - The event is really designed to serve the local comunity.  
   - It was really amazing to see the trees illuminated at night.  
   - Carneval takes place once a year, usually during the holiday season.  
   - As we approached the centre, we saw that the entertainment had started.  
   - It was a really espectacular evening, which we will never forget.  
   - The festival takes place every three years.  
   - The display of firewarks was absolutely amazing.  
   - They picked tuns of grapes.  
   - Spring is the time when people make special trips to see the trees in blossum.  

2. Match 1–8 with a–i.
   - The trees are covered in .   
   - Fireworks .   
   - The crowd threw .   
   - The festival means .   
   - Everyone just wants to have .   
   - People dress up in .   
   - Lots of people want to .   
   - There is even a beauty .   
   - It was a very wild .   
   - a contest.  
   - b flowers at the entertainers.  
   - c lit up the night sky.  
   - d fun together.  
   - e blossom.  
   - f take part in the event.  
   - g occasion.  
   - h a lot to the community.  
   - i special costumes.  

3. Replace the word or phrase in italics with one which has a similar meaning.
   - We had a good time watching the carnival parade.  
   - How many people took part in the event?  
   - We were going to a party so we decided to put on special clothes for it.  
   - The church is usually lit up at night.  
   - She was wearing a very attractive and unusual dress.  
   - It's a great time because everyone goes onto the streets.  
   - The festival is an important event in the local area where I live.  

4. Complete the questions.  
   ABOUT YOUR COUNTRY

   1. What is the most important f__________ or c__________ in your country?  
   2. Do people p__________ through the streets as a part of it?  
   3. Do you have other kinds of e__________ during it?  
   4. Have you ever t__________ p__________ in a parade? If so, what did you do?  
   5. Have you ever d__________ u__________ in a special costume for a festival?  
   6. Are there any special o__________ when you have f__________ at night?  
   7. Do these different events m__________ a lot to you personally?  
   8. Would you like to p__________ in any of the festivals on page 124?  

5. ABOUT YOUR COUNTRY Write your answers to the questions in Exercise 4, or ask another student.  

6. Test yourself. Cover the words in the glossary and look at the meanings. Say the words.
Review: Media and entertainment

Unit 41

1 One word is wrong in each line. Cross it out and write the correct word at the end.

1 I spent the whose day waiting for the electrician to come. whole
2 The president received many death threats during his life.
3 Sales of newspapers have declined over recent years.
4 I worry a lot about bomb scares where I live.
5 Are you interested in current affairs?
6 I saw a huge demonstration today; people were protecting about the war.
7 Do you usually get a dairy paper? ~ Yes, I get The Times.

2 One word is missing from each sentence. Where from? Write a word from the box at the end.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>cultural</th>
<th>editor</th>
<th>pension</th>
<th>made</th>
<th>journalist</th>
<th>claims</th>
<th>headline</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>

1 I / a promise to help her, so I will do it. made
2 I enjoy all sorts of events, such as exhibitions and concerts.
3 I think he must receive a because he's nearly 70.
4 I saw a strange newspaper the other day: 'Man bites dog'.
5 She's in charge of the local newspaper; I believe she's been the for three years.
6 The government that it can cut crime by 20 per cent this year, but I don't believe it.
7 My cousin's a newspaper; he writes articles about current affairs.

Unit 42

1 Complete the crossword. What is the word in the grey squares?

1 the process of deciding which parts of a film to show.
2 film
3 the part an actor plays
4 the person who comes first in a competition
5 extraordinary; very much better than usual
6 the series of events that form the story of a film
7 not as good or interesting as you had hoped
8 rude language that may upset people

The letters in the grey squares make the word
Unit 43

1 Which words or phrases are being defined?
   ► an exhibition: a collection of paintings which are on display to the public
   1 an __________ camera: one which works by itself
   2 an __________ painting: a painting that shows the artist's feelings rather than showing the exact appearance of people or things
   3 a __________: a place where an artist or photographer works
   4 ______________ focus: not able to be seen clearly
   5 a __________ drawing: one that shows things as they really are
   6 a __________: a painting or drawing of the countryside
   7 a __________: a type or kind
   8 a __________ artist: an artist who has a lot of ability and experience

Unit 44

1 Complete the words. Then write P next to those that are people.

   ► record ► violinist
   1 c________t________r________ 7 t________m________t________
   2 l________n________r________ 8 m________d________
   3 k________n________r________ 9 f________st________
   4 c________p________t________ 10 g________t________
   5 f________ 11 s________p________n________
   6 b________ 12 s________r________t________

Unit 45

1 Tick (✓) the two correct words or phrases.

   ► five thousand spectators ✓ commentators □ supporters ✓
   1 a football ground □ stadium □ circuit □
   2 a tennis lap □ court □ umpire □
   3 the new spectator □ coach □ manager □
   4 a motor-racing track □ ground □ circuit □
   5 a football club □ referee □ umpire □
   6 a worldwide □ deep □ standard □ pool

2 Complete the sentences with a suitable word.

   ► The other members of the team chose him as their captain.
   1 They're __________ a new stadium. It will be finished next year.
   2 The ground has a __________ of 50,000.
   3 I watch my team every week. I've __________ them for 25 years.
   4 Alonso completed the last __________ of the circuit in one minute and 37 seconds.
   5 The game was __________ for 25 minutes because the lights went out.
   6 A __________ of 28,000 watched the last game.
   7 Who won the Drivers' World __________ last year?
   8 The __________ of a football pitch is about 100 metres; the __________ is about 50.
Unit 46

1 Match 1–9 with a–j.

1 It was an outstanding...
2 About thirty took part...
3 It was a very one-...
4 He was critical...
5 She’s the favourite...
6 She’s in the semi-...
7 The game takes...
8 He’s a difficult...
9 She won five titles...

a overall
b of the performance
c the record
d place on Tuesday
e in yesterday’s race
f to win
g performance ✓
h sided contest
i final
j opponent

Unit 47

1 Tick the correct column.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>Yes</th>
<th>No</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>▶ If a novel is readable, it means that you have definitely read it.</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1 Reference books are useful when you want to get information.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2 There is often a picture on the cover of a book.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3 A well-known person is someone only a few people have heard of.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4 An encyclopedia is arranged in alphabetical order.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5 If you are browsing in a shop, you definitely won’t buy anything.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6 You’ll find novels in the non-fiction section of a bookshop.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7 An autobiography is someone’s life story, written by someone else.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8 A manual is something most people read for pleasure.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Unit 48

1 One word or phrase is missing from each sentence. Where from? Write it at the end. Use words from the box in the correct form.

wild    festival    community ✓    throw    mean    striking    parade    take part    neighbourhood

▶ Anyone in the whole / can participate. community

1 Everyone through the main streets in the town.
2 The people in the where I live are very friendly.
3 It’s a two-day, which we have every year.
4 It was quite a party; we had great fun.
5 Do you ever in parades?
6 I enjoy the carnival; it a lot to me.
7 She wore a really dress with gold flowers on it.
8 We all had to a ball and try to hit the moving object.
A guide to exam success

- Follow the invigilator's instructions. Don't take any forbidden items into the room, or try to communicate with other candidates. You will be disqualified for cheating.
- Before you start, read the paper carefully. Don't waste time copying the questions; the examiner knows what they are.
- Planning is essential in successful writing. Devote 5-10 minutes to making notes.
- Have a positive attitude. It's your chance to show what you know. And it will be a relief when it's all over in a few hours.

Glossary

- success: the achievement of sth you have wanted. succeed v.
- follow instructions: do what sb tells you to do.
- invigilator: the person watching students in the exam room.
- item: a thing or an object.
- communicate with sb: talk to or make signs to sb.
- candidate: a person taking an exam.
- disqualify sb: officially stop sb from taking part in sth because they have broken a rule.
- cheat: do sth dishonest to get an advantage for yourself (a person is a cheat N).
- paper: the written questions in an exam.
- carefully: If you read sth carefully, you read slowly and pay attention.
- examiner: the person who will read and mark the candidate's answer.
- planning: the act or process of making plans for sth.
- essential: completely necessary and important in a particular situation.
- devote time to sth/sb: give proper time to sth/sb.
- attitude: the way you think, feel, or behave.
- relief: the feeling you have when sth unpleasant stops. relieved adj.

1 Circle the correct word.

- Read the planning (paper) carefully.

1. The examiner/invigilator watches students during the exam.
2. What's the best way to achieve relief/success in the exam?
3. If you want to succeed/cheat, you should study hard.
4. A positive attitude/candidate will help you be more successful.
5. Students should communicate/follow the instructions they hear.
6. If you cheat, you will be disqualified/relieved.

2 Complete the words in the text.

My brother has very little (1) success in exams. He gets very nervous and generally has a negative (2) attitude to them. He's so nervous that he can't follow the (3) instructions given by the examiner. He once forgot that he had his dictionary in his pocket; he was accused of (4) cheating and was (5) disqualified for taking a forbidden (6) item into the exam room. My mother gives him lots of advice, though; she tells him not to panic and to read the (7) paper slowly before he writes anything, and that it's (8) essential that he plans his answers (9) carefully. However, he never (10) devotes enough time to the planning, so the (11) paper must find his answers very difficult to understand. In our house, it's always such a (12) relief if he passes an exam.
## 50 I can describe university life

### A Academic life 📚

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Word</th>
<th>Example</th>
<th>Meaning</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>academic</td>
<td>I enjoy academic subjects like history.</td>
<td>connected to education, especially school or university.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>undergraduate</td>
<td>Undergraduates usually do a three-year course.</td>
<td>a university student studying for their first degree.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>graduate</td>
<td>She's an Oxford graduate.</td>
<td>a person who has finished their degree (when they finish, they graduate v).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tutor</td>
<td>You can ask your tutor for advice on your work.</td>
<td>sb who teaches and looks after a student or a small group of students.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>professor</td>
<td>She's a professor of law.</td>
<td>the highest level of teacher in a university.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>lecture</td>
<td>I went to an interesting lecture on Italian politics.</td>
<td>a talk given to a large group to teach them a subject (the person is a lecturer n).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>seminar</td>
<td>Are you going to the seminar this morning?</td>
<td>a class at a university where a small group discuss a subject with a tutor;</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>debate</td>
<td>We had a great debate.</td>
<td>a formal discussion.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>attend sth</td>
<td>You have to attend lectures.</td>
<td>go to sth, or be present at sth.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>take notes</td>
<td>Don't forget to take notes.</td>
<td>write words quickly to help you remember sth.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>read widely</td>
<td>Try to read widely.</td>
<td>read a lot of different kinds of books.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>write a thesis</td>
<td>I'm writing a thesis on global warming.</td>
<td>do a long piece of writing on a particular academic subject.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>do research</td>
<td>You do research for a PhD.</td>
<td>do a long and careful study of a subject.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>continuous assessment</td>
<td>We don't have exams; it's all continuous assessment.</td>
<td>a way of judging students by looking at the work they do during the year.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

1. Tick (✓) the words that are people.

   - professor ✓
   - assessment ✗

   1. thesis  
   2. debate  
   3. lecture  
   4. graduate  
   5. undergraduate  
   6. tutor  
   7. seminar  
   8. research  
   9. lecturer

2. Complete the text.

   If you are an undergraduate at university in Britain, you spend a lot of time studying alone, but you also have to (1) a____________ a lot of (2) s____________ and (3) l__________ and take (4) n___________. In seminars, the discussion is usually led by a (5) t_________. You have to read (6) w____________ and you may have to express your opinions on a range of (7) a___________ topics. In many courses, there is continuous (8) a___________: the marks you get for your essays go towards your final results, after which, if you are successful, you (9) g___________.

3. Test yourself. Look at the words and cover the examples and meanings. Can you remember the meanings?
## Advice for new students

- In Britain, many university students live away from home. This means you get the freedom and opportunity to meet new people. Most students choose to live in a hall of residence in their first year, where you are less likely to be homesick or lonely.
- Student life is all about learning to manage your money: tuition fees, loans, bills, accommodation fees, etc. You may be able to get a scholarship, and many students find part-time jobs to help pay the bills.
- At university, you can be flexible about when you study, but be sure to get out of bed in time for lectures, do your work on time, and plan your revision period before exams.
Applying for a job with FamAid UK

Wherever you are based, you can apply for any advertised vacancy.

Work permits

For jobs in the UK, you will usually be expected to have a valid UK work permit. For jobs outside the UK, the local FamAid office will advise you about the permit you may need.

Closing dates

Your application must reach us by the advertised closing date. Online applications will be acknowledged automatically by email.

Selection process

If we would like you to attend an interview, we will contact you. At that time, and if required, we will also assess other skills you may have or need.

If you are not successful, we will contact you and, wherever possible, give you feedback.

If you are the successful candidate, we will offer you the position, but this is subject to satisfactory references. We shall also request confirmation that you are medically fit to do the job and have the necessary permit/visa.

Glossary

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Term</th>
<th>Definition</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>apply for sth</td>
<td>ask for sth in writing (often a job or course). application N.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>be based somewhere</td>
<td>If you are based in a place, that place is the centre for your work.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>vacancy</td>
<td>a job that is available for sb to do.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>work permit</td>
<td>an official document which says you are allowed to work.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>valid</td>
<td>If sth is valid, it is legally acceptable and can be used.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>advise sb</td>
<td>tell sb the best thing to do. syn give sb advice (advice N. u).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>acknowledge sth</td>
<td>let sb know that you have received sth from them. acknowledgement N.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>automatically</td>
<td>without any human control.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>process</td>
<td>a series of things that are done for a particular reason.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>interview</td>
<td>an event in which sb is asked questions to find out if they are suitable for a job, course, etc. (the person who asks the questions is an interviewer). interview sb v.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>contact sb</td>
<td>phone or write to sb.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>assess sth/sb</td>
<td>decide on the quality or ability of sth/sb. assessment N.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>give sb feedback</td>
<td>give sb advice or criticism about how they have done sth.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>candidate</td>
<td>a person who makes a formal application for a job.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>reference</td>
<td>a statement or letter which describes sb's character and ability to do a job (a person who writes this is a referee).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>confirmation</td>
<td>a statement in writing which says that sth is true or accurate. confirm v.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Spotlight: Formal language

In a written text like this, some language will be formal. For example: attend sth (= go to/or sth), require sth (= need sth), request sth (= ask for sth), subject to sth (= depending on sth), position (= job), and shall (= will). The words in bold are more formal than the words in brackets, which we would normally use in spoken English.
Cover the glossary and complete the table.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Verb</th>
<th>Noun</th>
<th>Verb</th>
<th>Noun</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>advise</td>
<td>advice</td>
<td>confirm</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>apply</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>acknowledge</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>assess</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>interview</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

There is a mistake in each sentence. Write the correct sentence at the end.

1. They said they’d contact to me.
2. Is she applying a job?
3. Have you got a work permission?
4. The company is based on Tokyo.
5. He gave me some good advices.
6. She gave me feedback after the interview.
7. I have to confirmate it in writing.
8. If you apply for a job, it’s quite a long processment.

Replace the underlined words with a more formal word or phrase with the same meaning.

1. We will contact you as soon as possible. **shall**
2. Has the company asked for references?
3. They offered me the job on Thursday.
4. I went for an interview last week.
5. If you need more information, please contact me.
6. We’re going to give him the job, depending on satisfactory references.

Complete the sentences with a single word.

1. You can’t use this visa any longer – it’s not **valid**.
2. She was angry because they didn’t **mention** that they had received her letter.
3. He offered me the job on the phone, but I haven’t had written **confirmation** yet.
4. They said they would **contact** me by phone when they’ve made a decision.
5. You don’t need to ask for confirmation; they will reply **promptly**.
6. They interviewed four other **candidates** for the job as well as me.
7. Val wrote to the company for a job, but there are no **positions** at the moment.
8. I hope they’ll **inform** me feedback after the interview.
9. He wants to **apply** for the job, but he still has to fill in the **application** form.
10. You have to do tests and have several interviews; it’s quite a long **processment**.

ABOUT YOU Write answers to the questions, or ask another student.

1. What jobs have you applied for in the past?
2. How many interviews have you had?
3. Have any interviewers given you feedback after the interview?
4. How many times have you been the successful candidate?
5. Who were your referees?
6. Have you ever had to get a work permit? If so, where?

Test yourself. Cover the glossary meanings and look at the words. Can you remember the meanings and other parts of speech?
52 I can describe jobs

A Careers

Careers 4 U advertises jobs across a range of market sectors. Register by email now and you can be first in line to apply for jobs as they appear. Just complete the following:

Please select any two sectors in which you have experience and/or qualifications.
- engineering
- management
- military
- retail
- training
- finance
- publishing
- recruitment
- manufacturing

Glossary

sector a part of the business activity of a country
(public sector = controlled by the government;
private sector = controlled by private companies).
experience the things that you have done in your life.
qualifications the exams you have passed or courses you have finished.
enGINEERING the activity of designing roads, railways, bridges, etc.
military connected with soldiers, or the army, navy, and air force.
training the activity of teaching people the skills they need for a job.
train sb v.
publishing the business of producing and selling books, magazines, etc.
publish sth v.
manufacturing the business of producing goods in factories.
manufacture sth v.
management the control of a business or organization.
manage sb/sth v.
retail selling goods to people directly in shops, on the internet, etc.
finance the activity of managing money.
recruitment the business of finding people for job vacancies.
recruit sb v.

1 What sector do these people work in?
   I produce books and then we sell them. ... publishing.
   1 I teach people their jobs.
   2 I’m a soldier.
   3 I sell clothes.
   4 I design motorways.
   5 I produce cars.
   6 I’m the boss of a company.
   7 I control the money in our business.
   8 I fill job vacancies in companies.

2 Complete the words in the text.
I’ve just left university and I’m hoping to have a career in the private (1) sector, and eventually I’d like to be in the (2) military and have my own business. I had a couple of jobs in small companies in my holidays, so I have a little experience. I’m hoping to work for a large company to start with; they do a lot of (3) training, and I’ll be able to get some extra (4) qualifications too. My father’s in the legal (5) profession, but for some reason, he wants me to have some experience in the (6) retail as a soldier. I’ve no idea why, though.

3 ABOUT YOU Look at the website again. Which sectors do you have experience or qualifications in?
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Job</th>
<th>What does he/she do?</th>
<th>Glossary</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>plumber</td>
<td>installs and repairs water pipes, taps, central heating, baths, etc.</td>
<td>install sth put in some equipment so that it is ready to use.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>mechanic</td>
<td>repairs engines, especially in vehicles.</td>
<td>vehicle e.g. car, bus, lorry.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>electrician</td>
<td>installs, connects, or repairs electrical wiring.</td>
<td>electrical of or about electricity</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>carpenter</td>
<td>makes or repairs parts of a building and other objects made of wood.</td>
<td>object a thing that can be seen or touched but is not alive.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>nanny</td>
<td>takes care of / cares for children in their own home.</td>
<td>take care of / care for sb/sth look after sb/sth.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>travel agent</td>
<td>makes travel arrangements for people.</td>
<td>make arrangements for sb/sth make plans or preparations for sb/sth.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>estate agent</td>
<td>buys and sells houses or land for people.</td>
<td>land an area of ground; an area used for a special purpose.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>importer</td>
<td>imports goods.</td>
<td>import sth buy goods from another country to sell in your own country. or export sth.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>priest</td>
<td>performs religious ceremonies in some religions.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>civil servant</td>
<td>works for the civil service, i.e. all government departments except the military.</td>
<td>i.e. in other words; that is (used when you are explaining or defining sth).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sales rep/representative</td>
<td>travels to different places and sells the products of a particular company.</td>
<td>product a thing that people make or grow in order to sell.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

4. Cover the table above. Are these sentences true or false? Write T or F.

- An importer exports goods to sell. **F**
- A priest conducts religious ceremonies. **T**
- A mechanic can repair vehicles. **T**
- A carpenter makes wooden objects. **T**
- A civil servant works for a company. **T**
- A plumber can fix your central heating. **T**

5. Cross out one word which is wrong. Write the correct word at the end.

- I haven’t got central heating; I need a plumber to **install** a new system. **install**
- Our estate agent made the **arrangements**, i.e. buying tickets, booking hotels. **arrangements**
- The estate agent sold the **land** which belonged to the farm. **land**
- What products does that company **make**? **produce**
- My sister does quite a lot of training for the civil servant. **sold**
- I believe he exports silver jewellery from abroad. **export**
- A nanny takes care for children. **take care of**
- Sales **representants** have to travel a lot. **representatives**

6. Test yourself. Look at the jobs and cover the other columns. What do the people do?
I can describe a career

A Career structure

Two years ago, I got a challenging job with good prospects in local radio. I worked hard and, as a reward, I was promoted. I was delighted. I was quickly transferred to a different department. Then things went wrong: one colleague got the sack, and another handed in his notice. After that, ten people were made redundant. I didn’t want to be out of work, so I decided to look elsewhere. I applied for a job in TV and was appointed assistant director. Amazing!

Glossary

challenging difficult to do, but interesting and enjoyable. challenge n.
prospects (pl.) chances of being successful in the future.
reward sth you get because you have done sth helpful, worked hard, etc. reward sb v.
promote sb (usually passive) give sb a better job at a higher level in a company. promotion n.
transfer sb/sth (from ... to ...) move sb/sth from one place to another.
department a section of a business, university, etc.
hand in your notice say officially that you want to leave your job. syns resign, quit inf.
make sb redundant (often passive) make sb leave their job because they are not needed any more. out of work not working and unable to find a job.
unemployed.
elsewhere in or to another place.
appoint sb choose sb for a job.

1 Is the meaning the same or different? Write S or D.

- a challenge | a reward ... D...
- out of work | unemployed ......
- be promoted | be appointed ......
- get the sack | sack someone ......
- fire someone | dismiss someone ......
- prospects | chances of success ......
- hand in your notice | resign ......
- be sacked | be promoted ......
- transfer sb | move sb to another office ......
- make someone redundant | fire someone ......

2 Complete the sentences with a single word.

- I was glad to be appointed ... to the job I have. (chosen for the job) __________________________________________________________
  1 My job’s very difficult but interesting) __________________________________________________________
  2 I want to transfer to another section of the business) _____________________________________________
  3 I have good in my job. (chances of success) ______________________________________________________
  4 I’d really love to be given a better job in the company) _____________________________________________
  5 I’m bored at work, so I’m going to look ... (in another place) ________________________________________
  6 I’ve never been out of work) _____________________________________________________________
  7 I’d hate to have to dismiss someone. (dismiss) __________________________________________________
  8 If I hated my job, I would definitely hand in my notice) _________________________________________

3 ABOUT YOU Have you got a job? If so, are the sentences in Exercise 2 true for you? Write true or false, or talk to another student who has a job.
**Glossary**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Term</th>
<th>Definition</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>what does (your job) involve?</td>
<td>= what do you have to do (in your job)?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>handle sth/sb</td>
<td>take suitable action in a situation. SYN deal with sth/sb.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>enquiry</td>
<td>a question about sth (make an enquiry).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>face-to-face complaint</td>
<td>with and looking at sb.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>members of the public</td>
<td>a statement that you are not satisfied with sth (make a complaint).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>solve a problem</td>
<td>complain v.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>clerical duties</td>
<td>people in general (also the public). SYN find a solution.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>in charge of sth/sb</td>
<td>the tasks you do when you are at work. SYN responsible for sb/sth.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>make sure responsibility</td>
<td>check sth so that you can be certain about it. SYN the fact or duty of being in control of sth, so that it is your fault if sth goes wrong.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### 4. One word is missing in each line. Rewrite the sentences, adding the missing word.

1.  does her job involve? What does her job involve?
   - I'd like to an enquiry about the club.
   - I talked to her to-face.
   - It's very hard to deal this situation.
   - Who's charge of this department?
   - You have to sure the door is locked.
   - We're not responsible the cleaning.
   - Do you know how to the problem?
   - I want to a complaint about the service.

### 5. Complete the texts.

**A** I used to have a boring office job – I was a (clerk) in the civil service for five years, but I couldn’t stand it and left. I've now got a job in a tourist information office in Liverpool and I really like it. My (d) include helping people to find accommodation, dealing with their (e) about places to visit, and finding (s) to their travel problems. I'm also (r) for the Beatles tour: I take people to John Lennon and Paul McCartney's childhood homes. I try to make (s) everything goes well.

**B** I work in a travel agent's, and my job (i) organizing trips for people. I love meeting the (p) and I really enjoy (h) the money side of things. Some of my work is just routine (c) work; other times, I have a lot of (r) For example, if a customer’s holiday goes wrong, I have to (d) with their (c).

### 6. Test yourself. Look at the glossary words and cover the meanings. What are the meanings?
I can describe working conditions

**Job questionnaire**

1. Do you feel your job is stressful?
2. How much time off do you get every year?
3. Do you ever have to do shift work?
4. Do you often have to work overtime?
5. Do you normally receive an annual bonus?
6. Are you entitled to sick pay?
7. Do you have the right to join a trade union?
8. Do people in your kind of job ever go on strike?

**Spotlight**

*Time off*

If you have, get, or take time off, you are not at work, school, etc. perhaps because you’re ill or on holiday. *I had a day off to go to a wedding.*

*He’s taking a month off work.*

**Glossary**

- **working conditions**: the arrangements made at a place of work for physical comfort and safety.
- **stressful**: making you worry a lot. *stressful n.*
- **shift work**: a pattern of work in which you sometimes work during the day and sometimes at night.
- **overtime**: the time you spend working after your normal working hours (you can work overtime or do overtime **Inf**).
- **bonus**: an extra payment that is added to what you normally receive.
- **sick pay**: money you receive when you are ill and cannot work.
- **be entitled to (do) sth**: be allowed sth or to do sth because it is the law.
- **union or trade union**: an organization of people in the same kind of work who try to get better pay and working conditions for their members.
- **go on strike**: refuse to work for a period of time as a protest for more money, better conditions, etc.

1. Complete the words.
   - I often do sth. i. f. t. work.
   - I belong to a t. u. union.
   - We went on st. l. a. t. y. last year.
   - Do you get an annual b. s.?

2. Write the words in the correct order, and add the final word.

   - you / working / have / good / do... **Do you have good working conditions?**
   - 1. is / she / trade / member / a / of / a / ?
   - 2. we / sick / are / to / entitled / ?
   - 3. take / like / to / I’d / week / a
   - 4. you / shift / don’t / why / like / ?
   - 5. I / left / today / / time / on / didn’t / I / do
   - 6. go / why / the / / on / did / workers / ?

3. **ABOUT YOU** If you have a job, write your answers to the questionnaire. If you haven’t got a job, ask a student who has.

4. **Test yourself.** Cover the glossary words and look at the meanings. Say the words.
Review: Work and study

Unit 49

1 Rewrite the sentences using the words on the right. The meaning must stay the same.
   ► I'm a careful driver. CAREFULLY I drive carefully.
   1 You have to do what he tells you. INSTRUCTIONS
   2 Don't talk to anyone. COMMUNICATE
   3 The way you think and behave is important. ATTITUDE
   4 It was a relief to finish the exam. RELIEVED
   5 Spend ten minutes making notes. DEVOTE
   6 He would never do anything dishonest in an exam. CHEAT
   7 If you don't get what you want, try again. SUCCEED
   8 Do we need dictionaries? ESSENTIAL

Unit 50

1 Tick (✓) the words or phrases that are correct.
   ► At university, students have to attend lectures ✓ read widely ✓ teach professors □
   1 A tutor □ seminar □ lecture □ is a type of class at a university.
   2 Some students live and study at home □ homesick □ away from home □.
   3 Undergraduates □ Professors □ Tutors □ are types of teacher.
   4 In order to have enough money, students often pay tuition fees □ take out a loan □
      try to get a scholarship □.
   5 In seminars, students may have a debate □ take notes □ write a thesis □.

2 One word is missing in each sentence. Where from? Write it at the end.
   ► I won't have enough money to live on, so I'll have to take a loan.
   1 Our seminar started time at 10.00.
   2 My sister is studying away from home and she's living in a hall residence.
   3 How much were the tuition for your summer course?
   4 We had to hurry but we arrived just time for the beginning of the lecture.
   5 At the moment, she's some medical research as part of her studies.
   6 I would like to have the to study abroad, perhaps in Canada.
   7 When I was at university, our essays were all part of the continuous.
   8 Do you study away home?

Unit 51

1 There is a spelling mistake in each sentence. Write the correct word at the end.
   ► Do you need a reference? reference.
   1 Is there a job vacancie?
   2 Did they give you any advise?
   3 Did he acknowledge the application?
   4 I haven't got a valide work permit.
   5 They asess people differently.
2 Complete the dialogue.

A You know that job vacancy. Did you (1) ______________ for it?
B Yes, and I went for an (2) ______________ on Wednesday.
A Wow. How did it go?
B It seemed OK, but they didn’t give me any (3) ______________ afterwards, so it’s hard to know. They said they’d (4) ______________ me by the end of the week if they were going to offer me the job.
A What about (5) ______________ ?
B They said they’d already spoken to one of my referees.
A Oh really? And were there many other (6) ______________ ?
B Yes, over a hundred. I’m not sure if I want the job because it’s based (7) ______________ Scotland. Still, at least I don’t need a work (8) ______________ .

Unit 52

1 Tick (√) the correct words.
   ► A plumber √ A nanny □ An electrician √ often installs things.
   1 A carpenter □ A travel agent □ A plumber □ gets his hands dirty.
   2 A nanny □ A plumber □ An importer □ looks after people.
   3 A civil servant □ A carpenter □ An estate agent □ usually works in an office.
   4 An electrician □ A sales rep □ A mechanic □ often has to repair things.
   5 A sales rep □ A civil servant □ A travel agent □ wants to sell you something.
   6 A plumber □ An estate agent □ A carpenter □ has had a lot of technical training.

2 Complete the dialogues.
   ► Miguel produces his own magazine. ~ Really? And how long has he worked in publishing?
   1 Dr Erman seems very good, but how much ______________ does he have? ~ Oh, I think he’s been in the medical ______________ for about ten years now.
   2 Who made all the travel ______________ for your last holiday? ~ My wife did, but that’s her job; she’s a travel ______________ .
   3 How long has your father been a civil ______________ ? ~ Thirty-five years. He’s spent his whole ______________ in the civil ________ .
   4 Did the company give you much ______________ after you started? ~ Yes, they sent me on several courses, and I took exams to get extra ________ .
   5 What kind of ______________ does she sell? ~ Electrical stuff mostly, but she’s only been a sales ______________ for six months.

Unit 53

1 Complete the text using words from the box in the correct form.

clerk √ transfer charge responsibility involve challenging resign complaints elsewhere promote work deal
When I left school, I got a job as a clerk with an insurance company. It mainly (1) filling in forms and typing lists of names, so it wasn't very (2) . After a few months, though, I was (3) and they gave me a job where I was (4) with the public, which was much more interesting. Eventually, I was (5) to another department where I had to handle customers' (6) , which wasn't much fun. I hated it so I decided to (7) and look (8) . In fact, that was rather stupid of me, because I was out of (9) for several months. Anyway, in the end I got a fantastic job working in a zoo, and I'm still here. I'm in (10) of the snakes, which is an enormous (11) but I love it!

2 Complete the crossword. The letters in the grey squares spell out another word. What is it?

1  choose someone for a job
2  something you get when you have been helpful or worked hard
3  if you resign, you hand in your
4  out of work
5  chances of being successful in the future
6  the tasks you do when you are at work
7  connected with office work, such as keeping records and doing accounts
8  find a solution to a problem
9  deal with something or control it

The letters in the grey squares make the word .

Unit 54

1 Complete the words in the sentences.

She's been very ill, but she doesn't get any sick pay.
1 He always looks worried because he has such a (1) job.
2 Everyone has the right to a lunch break - it's the law.
3 I don't belong to a trade union any longer.
4 Are you entitled to sick pay in your job?
5 I often have to work nights, but I don't really like shift work.
6 Bus drivers have a basic 35-hour week, but many of them work overtime.
7 A lot of people get an annual bonus in addition to their salaries.
8 Some of the workers went on strike last year for higher pay.
# 55 I can talk about finance

## A Financial terms

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Example</th>
<th>Meaning</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>We need to raise capital.</td>
<td>capital the money you need to start a business (to raise capital is to find the money you need).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>The company has an annual turnover of $20 million.</td>
<td>turnover the total value of goods or services that a company sells in a particular period of time (annual = every year). syn sales revenue.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Operating costs have gone up this year.</td>
<td>operating costs the amount of money that a business needs to spend to continue as a business.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Inflation is now at 3 per cent.</td>
<td>inflation a general rise in the price of services and goods in a particular country.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>We paid £1 million in tax.</td>
<td>tax money you have to pay to the government.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>The company made a pre-tax profit of £2 million.</td>
<td>profit the money you make in a business after paying costs (pre-tax is before paying tax). or loss.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>I think the company has cash flow problems.</td>
<td>cash flow the movement of money into and out of a business (a cash flow problem means more money is going out than coming in).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>I need a bank loan. They took out a loan.</td>
<td>bank loan money the bank lends and sb borrows. take out obtain (you also take out insurance).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>We pay a lot of interest. The interest rate is 4 per cent.</td>
<td>interest extra money you pay when you borrow money (the interest rate is the exact cost of borrowing).</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### 1 Match 1–8 with a–i.

- annual  
- operating  
- pay  
- raise  
- interest  
- take out  
- sales  
- make  
- cash  

- a loan  
- b revenue  
- c rate  
- d a profit  
- e costs  
- f turnover  
- g capital  
- h flow  
- i 10% interest

### 2 Complete the sentences.

- We can't start the business unless we can raise more capital.
  1. If sales continue to rise, the annual __________ could reach five million euros.
  2. If we spend more money this month, we'll have a __________ problem.
  3. The current interest __________ is 5 per cent.
  4. It's been a good year; we've made a pre-__________ __________ of $3.5 m.
  5. __________ has gone up this year because of the increase in the price of oil.
  6. They needed more money so they __________ another bank.
  7. We usually make a profit, but if operating __________ go up, we may make a __________ this year.
  8. They need the loan to __________ the new business.

### 3 Test yourself. Look at the examples and cover the meanings. What do the examples mean?

**spotlight: finance**

Finance can be:

1. the money somebody borrows or receives to operate a business (They need to raise more finance.). finance v.

OR

2. the activity of managing money in a company. financial adj. (He's the new Director of Finance / Financial Director.)

---

142 BUSINESS
## Financial trends

A **trend** is the general direction in which a situation is changing.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Trend</th>
<th>Common verbs + examples</th>
<th>Common nouns + examples</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>↑</td>
<td>go up, rise, increase, grow</td>
<td>rise, increase, growth</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><em>Prices have risen by 10 per cent.</em></td>
<td><em>We saw some growth last year.</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>↓</td>
<td>go down, fall, drop</td>
<td>fall, drop</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><em>Interest rates fell last month.</em></td>
<td><em>There's been a drop in sales.</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>↔</td>
<td>remain unchanged/stable</td>
<td>stability</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><em>Stay the same</em></td>
<td><em>There has been stability in the markets.</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>↓</td>
<td>peak</td>
<td>peak</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><em>Sales peaked in the third quarter.</em></td>
<td><em>Sales reached a peak in 2007.</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><em>(third quarter = July to September)</em></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>↙</td>
<td>fluctuate</td>
<td>fluctuation</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><em>Sales have fluctuated all year.</em></td>
<td><em>There has been some fluctuation in prices.</em></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Adjective</th>
<th>Meaning</th>
<th>Adverb</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>a slight rise in costs</td>
<td>very small.</td>
<td>Costs rose slightly.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>a gradual rise in profits</td>
<td>slow and over a long period of time.</td>
<td>Profits have risen gradually.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>a steady increase in the interest rate</td>
<td>slow but regular and continuing.</td>
<td>The interest rate has increased steadily.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>a significant fall in profits</td>
<td>noticeable and important.</td>
<td>Profits fell significantly.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>a sharp fall in sales</td>
<td>very large and sudden.</td>
<td>Sales have fallen sharply.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### 4. Complete the sentences on the right. The meaning must stay the same.

1. There was significant growth in sales. Sales ____________.
2. There was a gradual rise in the price. The price ____________.
3. There was a slight fall in profits. Profits ____________.
4. There has been stability in costs. Costs have remained ____________.
5. There has been a steady rise in sales. Sales have ____________.

### 5. Complete the text. Use a different word each time.

Last year started well. In the first quarter sales ____________ significantly. The second quarter was even better: sales increased ____________ steadily in the third quarter and reached a ____________ at 90,000. By the end of September, sales had ____________ up ____________ almost 50 per cent. In the last quarter there was a slight ____________, but it was still a good year. This year has been very different. Sales ____________ in the first half of the year – up one month and down the next – but in the last three months they have remained ____________.

### 6. Look at the arrows and complete the sentences.

2. There was a ____________ in 2005.
4. In 2007, sales ____________.
5. In 2008, sales ____________.
A Setting up a business

Setting up a business is a risk. Twenty percent of new businesses fail within twelve months; fifty percent go out of business in three years. It may be because of poor quality services or goods, or one of these common mistakes:

- inadequate market research
- poor control over suppliers and customers
- being over-ambitious and over-optimistic
- poor management of stock and assets
- inadequate knowledge of rivals
- employing the wrong people

Glossary

- set up a business: start a business.
- risk: the possibility that something bad may happen in the future. risky adj.
- fail (about a business) be unable to continue. syn go out of business.
- quality: the good or bad condition or character of sth compared with similar things.
- goods: (pl.) things that are made to be sold.
- inadequate: not sufficient; not good enough. opp adequate.
- market research: the study of what people want to buy and why.
- supplier: a company that provides sth for another company. supply v.
- stock: everything a company has for sale at any particular time.
- asset: a thing of value that a person or company owns (e.g. a factory).
- rival: a person or company that competes with another. syn competitor.
- employ sb: give sb a job (an employer is sb who does this; an employee is sb who works for an employer). syn take sb on.

1. Circle things in this list that you can own or sell.

competitor business employee asset market rival good supplier stock quality

2. Complete the sentences. The meaning must be the same as in the sentences on the left.

- This business is risky.
  1. When did she start the business?
  2. Why did the business fail?
  3. We are the main company that supplies them.
  4. Their products aren’t very good.
  5. Do you still employ him?
  6. When did you employ her?

- This business is a _risk_.
  1. When did she set _business_?
  2. Why did they go _out_?
  3. We are their _main_.
  4. Their _products_ are of _poor_.
  5. Are you still _his_?
  6. When did you take _her_?

3. What mistakes do businesses make? Complete the sentences using words from the box.

- The company doesn’t have effective controls over its customers or its _suppliers_.
  1. The company doesn’t carry out adequate _market_.
  2. The company is poor at managing its _stock_.
  3. The company doesn’t have a very good _knowledge_.
  4. The company _employs_. the wrong people.
  5. The company is over-, and it over- what it can achieve.
The first years may be a **struggle**, but if a company can **survive** this difficult period, it may develop into a successful business:

- customer numbers grow and the company **gains a share** of the **market**
- turnover increases – the company **breaks even**
- the **brand** develops a **reputation**
- the company needs more capital and may sell **shares** to the public to obtain the finance
- eventually this growth may result in the company being **taken over**

**Spotlight: market**

The market is the amount of buying and selling of a particular type of goods, e.g. *There is a large market for these computers.*

It also refers to an area or group of people who buy something, e.g. *the European market, the teenage market.*

The **market leader** is the company with the biggest share of a market.

---

**Glossary**

- **growth**: the process of increasing in size or number. *grow v.*
- **struggle**: a period of action to achieve sth difficult. *syn. effort, struggle v.*
- **survive**: continue to exist in a difficult situation. *survival n.*
- **gain sth**: obtain sth, off. *lose sth.*
- **share**: a part of sth that has been divided.
- **break even**: not make a profit or a loss.
- **brand**: the name under which one or more products are sold. e.g. *Nike.*
- **reputation**: the opinion that people have about sth (it can be good or bad).
- **shares**: *(tsu pl) units of equal value that a company is divided into and which are then sold to raise money (the buyers then own part of the company).*
- **take over a company**: take control of another company. *takeover n.*

---

4. Complete the sentences. The meaning must be the same as in the sentences on the left.

- Will they continue to grow?
  - Will they **take it over**?
- 1 Will they take it over?
- 2 People say the company is very good.
- 3 They won’t make a profit or a loss.
- 4 It’s the biggest company in the market.
- 5 Are you worried they may not survive?
- 6 They’ve survived, but it’s been difficult.
- Will there be continued **growth**?
- Will there be a **survive**?
- The company has a very good **struggle**.
- They will **break even**.
- It’s the market **gain sth**.
- Are you worried about their **share**?
- They’ve survived, but it’s been a **brand**.

---

5. Complete the sentences.

- It’s been a struggle, but I think the business will **survive**.
  - The company now has a 10 per cent **growth** of the market.
  - I bought 1,000 **share** in that company. They are now worth over £10,000.
  - People go on buying the same **brand** of breakfast cereal because it’s familiar.
  - There has been considerable **growth** in the soft drinks **market**. up 25 per cent in two years.
  - I think the company may be **take over a company** over by the end of the year.
  - It’s been a good year: we’ve **gain sth** another 5 per cent of the market.

---

6. Test yourself. Look at the glossary words and cover the meanings. What are the meanings?
GECKO HEADGEAR Ltd is a designer and manufacturer of safety helmets for use at sea. The company was founded in 1993 by Jeff Sacree and it started by selling surfboards. However, surfing is a seasonal business, and Jeff realized he needed to diversify. Fortunately, he was able to exploit a gap in the market.

"As a surfer, I could see the potential for a light helmet that gave protection and retained heat. He made one and sold a few to other surfers. He then did some research and discovered that men who worked in lifeboats might also be interested in his helmet. It would have to be adapted for their use, and for that he needed investment: he took out a bank loan and employed more staff. A good relationship with the bank is crucial if you're developing an innovative product. In our case the process took three years."

After the contract to supply helmets for the lifeboats was successful, Jeff developed different types of helmet for different uses, and has always used customer feedback to refine the product.

"Partnerships with suppliers have also been a key factor in our success. We’ve worked closely with different manufacturers, and this has helped us to keep ahead of rivals."

**Glossary**

- manufacturer: a person or company that makes things using machines. *manufacture v. syns producer, produce v.*
- found sth: start an organization (the person is the founder).
- diversify: introduce a wider range of products.
- exploit sth: make the best possible use of sth. *exploitation n.*
- a gap in the market: an opportunity to create a new product, which has not been produced by other companies.
- potential: the ability to develop into sth or sth better in the future.
- retain sth: keep or continue to have sth. *retention n.*
- do research: do a careful study of sth to find out more information.
- investment: the activity of putting money into sth, hoping that you will make more money as a result. *invest in sth v.*
- crucial: very important.
- innovative: introducing new ideas. *innovate v.*
- case: a written legal agreement (a person signs a contract).
- feedback: information and comments from people who have used sth.
- partnership: a relationship between two people or organizations.
- key factor: one of the things that influences a decision or affects a situation.
- keep ahead (of sb): stay in front of sb.

**spotlight Verbs of change**

To alter sth means to change sth, but not completely.

We’ve had to alter our plans.

To adapt sth means to change sth so you can use it in a different situation.

We’ve adapted the product for the Asian market.

To refine sth means to change sth a little to make it better.

They have refined the products over several years.
1 Answer these questions (you may need to read the text again).

- What is Gecko Headgear? A company that manufactures safety helmets.
- When was it founded? .................................................................
- Why did Jeff need to diversify? ..................................................
- What qualities did the helmet have to have?
  a) it had to be light   b) .................................................................
  c) .................................................................
- How did Jeff discover that men in lifeboats were potential users?
- How did he get the money for extra staff?
- What does he say about the relationship with a bank?
- What information has he used to refine the products?
- What was a key factor in his success?

2 Rearrange the letters on the left to make words. Use the definitions to help you.

- ROTACF ............................................ one of the things that influences a situation
- TOCCARNT ........................................... a written legal agreement
- NATERI .............................................. keep or continue to have something
- RUCCLIA ............................................ very important
- EKABEDC ............................................ comments from people who use something
- VIONTEA ............................................ introduce new ideas
- REDYFIVS ............................................ introduce a wider range of products
- PERITNSARPH ..................................... a relationship between two organizations
- LOPENITAT ............................................ the ability to develop into something

3 Circle the correct answer(s). Sometimes both answers are correct.

- We have to keep ahead or retain our competitors.
- His company has the ability to exploit/alter the market more fully.
- They are the main producers/manufacturers.
- It's only a small business now, but it has the feedback/potential to be very successful.
- If we can't use the product like that, we may have to exploit/adapt it.
- It was a key/crucial factor in the decision.
- She invested/founded the company ten years ago.
- They don't have enough money; they need more research/investment.
- We may have to alter/adapt the product.

4 Complete the sentences.

- We may have to alter a few things to get the product exactly as we want it.
- 1. They were lucky because they saw a .................. in the market.
- Some people take out a loan. In my .................. I borrowed money from my parents.
- They are one of the leading .................. of washing machines in this country.
- 4. If we want to find out, we'll have to do more .................. .
- How much money did she .................. in the company?
- Innovation helps a company to keep .................. of its competitors.
- They can't change their minds now: they've signed the .................. .
- 8. We must .................. our most important customers. We can't afford to lose them.
- Profit was not a big .................. in my decision to invest in the company.
- 10. It's only one product and it's very limited; the company needs to .................. .

5 Test yourself. Cover the glossary meanings and look at the words. What are the meanings?
58 I can discuss marketing

A The basis of marketing

Marketing is the activity of presenting, advertising, and selling a company's products. To do this, you need to understand the company's strengths and weaknesses, and be aware of possible opportunities and threats. This is called a 'SWOT analysis'.

- **Strengths**, e.g. specialist skills in the company
- **Weaknesses**, e.g. limited financial resources
- **Opportunities**, e.g. increased demand for a product from a particular market sector
- **Threats**, e.g. a downturn in the economy, reducing overall demand

**Glossary**

- **Advertising** the activity of telling people about a product to try to make them buy it. **advertise** v.
- **Strength** a good quality or feature. **or weakness**.
- **Opportunity** a situation in which it is possible to achieve sth.
- **Threat** a possible danger or problem.
- **Limited** small in number or amount. **or unlimited**.
- **Resources** (singular) the supply of sth that you need, such as money or skills.
- **Demand (for sth)** the need for sth from a particular group of people.
- **Sector** a part of an economy, society, or area of activity.
- **Downturn** a time when an economy or industry is weaker than normal. **or upturn**.
- **Reduce sth** make sth less or smaller. **or increase sth. Reduction n.**

**Spotlight: skill**

- **Skill** (n) is the ability to do something well, usually needing practice. **skillful** adj. You often need a particular skill (n) for a job. **skilled** adj. or **unskilled**.
- He has the right management skills.
- She's a skillful negotiator.
- We had a number of highly skilled workers.

1 Good news or bad news for the company? Write G or B.

- **Limited demand B**
  1. A number of opportunities.
  2. They have a lot of skilled workers.
  3. There are a number of threats.
  4. Unlimited financial resources.
  5. A reduction in demand.
  6. An upturn in the economy.

2 Replace the underlined word or phrase with a single word. The meaning must stay the same.

- We only have a small number of products available at the moment. **limited**
  1. There is a lot of competition in this part of the market.
  2. There isn't much need for beach umbrellas in the winter.
  3. They have a number of good qualities.
  4. There is another company in the market, which could be a real danger.
  5. Do we have the money and skills to make this product?

3 Complete the sentences.

- New markets in Asia could be a great **opportunity** for us.
  1. If you work with advanced technology, you need people with the right.
  2. More people will know about the product if we it on TV.
  3. Is there still a growing for mobile phones?
  4. If there is more competition, we may have to the price.
  5. First we must analyse our strengths and
B Developing a marketing strategy

**Useful marketing tips**
- Don't **assume** you know what your customers want.
- **Target** the 20 per cent of your customers who provide 80 per cent of your profit.
- Don't **ignore** the competition, and be ready to **respond** to it.
- Don't try to compete on price alone: think about quality, reliability, etc.
- You need to **gather** reliable **data** to make accurate market **forecasts**.
- You need to have **realistic** **objectives**.
- Don't forget to **evaluate** your strategy, and if something isn't working, change it.

**Glossary**
- **strategy** — a plan you make in order to achieve sth.
- **tip** — a piece of advice.
- **assume** sth — accept or believe sth is true without proof.
- **target** sb — decide on the people you want to sell to (your **target market**).
- **ignore** sb/sth — pay no attention to sb/sth.
- **respond** to sb/sth — say or do sth as an answer to sb/sth.
- **gather** sth — bring many things together, e.g. information or data.
- **data** — facts or information.
- **forecast** — a statement saying what will happen in the future.
- **realistic** — sensible, and based on what is possible in a particular situation.
- **objective** — sth you are trying to achieve. syx **goal/aim**.
- **evaluate** sth — study the facts then form an opinion of sth.

4. Cover the glossary, then match 1–5 with a–f.

- a pay no attention to something
- b choose somebody you want to sell to
- c bring many things together
- d say or do something as an answer
- e study the facts then form an opinion
- f accept or believe something without proof

5. Complete the dialogues without repeating the same words.

- Did she know it was true? — No, she just **assumed** it.
- 1. Do they have a plan for this? — Yes, they’ve got a
- 2. He doesn’t have an aim. — No, he needs an
- 3. Has he replied to you? — No, there’s been no
- 4. Do they have the information? — Yes, they’ve gathered all the
- 5. Is it a sensible forecast? — Yes, I think it’s quite
- 6. Was it good advice? — Yes, it was a very useful

6. Complete the sentences.

- We contacted them, but so far they haven’t **replied**.
- They got into trouble because they **competed** all their competitors.
- Have they given you a sales **forecast** for next year?
- We don’t know if they’re competing for this contract, but we **know** they are.
- The company has decided to **target** the youth market next year.
- We’ve **gathered** all the information together. Now we need to evaluate it.

7. Test yourself. Cover the glossary meanings and look at the words. Can you remember the meanings?
Unit 55

1 Find eleven more ‘money’ words or phrases. (You can go across and down.)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>C</th>
<th>P</th>
<th>C</th>
<th>O</th>
<th>S</th>
<th>T</th>
<th>B</th>
<th>C</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>A</td>
<td>R</td>
<td>L</td>
<td>P</td>
<td>T</td>
<td>E</td>
<td>A</td>
<td>A</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>S</td>
<td>O</td>
<td>O</td>
<td>G</td>
<td>U</td>
<td>S</td>
<td>N</td>
<td>P</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>H</td>
<td>F</td>
<td>A</td>
<td>T</td>
<td>R</td>
<td>H</td>
<td>K</td>
<td>I</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>F</td>
<td>I</td>
<td>N</td>
<td>A</td>
<td>N</td>
<td>C</td>
<td>E</td>
<td>T</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>L</td>
<td>T</td>
<td>Y</td>
<td>L</td>
<td>O</td>
<td>S</td>
<td>S</td>
<td>A</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>O</td>
<td>T</td>
<td>A</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>V</td>
<td>D</td>
<td>I</td>
<td>L</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>W</td>
<td>R</td>
<td>E</td>
<td>V</td>
<td>E</td>
<td>N</td>
<td>U</td>
<td>E</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>I</td>
<td>N</td>
<td>T</td>
<td>E</td>
<td>R</td>
<td>E</td>
<td>S</td>
<td>T</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

2 Replace the underlined words with a word or phrase that has the same meaning.

- Sales went down quite a lot. Sales fell significantly.
- The price went up a little. The price increased slightly.
- The price went down a lot. The price decreased significantly.
- Last year the price stayed the same. Last year the price remained stable.
- Sales went down from $3 m to $2 m. Sales decreased from $3 m to $2 m.
- Sales went up and down. Sales fluctuated.
- Last year there was a very small rise. Last year there was a slight increase.

Unit 56

1 Good news or bad news for the company? Write G or B.

- They went out of business. B
- They’re gaining a share of the market. G
- They’re struggling. B
- They’re taking a lot of risks. B
- They have valuable assets. G
- There are more rivals. B
- They’re taking people on. B
- Their shares are going up. G

2 Complete the list of company objectives using words from the box.

- Set up the business by the end of the year.
- In our first year we aim to break even.
- In years 2 to 5, we want to see continued growth in our profit.
- We don’t want to take too many risks.
- We have to watch our reputation very closely.
- We want our products to be of the highest quality.
- Within three years we want a 10 to 15 per cent share of the market.
- We want the company to develop a good market position.
- Within five years we would like to sell shares to the public.
Unit 57

1 Match verbs 1-8 with definitions a–i.

- refine
  1 retain
  2 manufacture
  3 innovate
  4 invest
  5 alter
  6 found
  7 exploit
  8 diversify

   a change something but not completely
   b put money into something
   c make the best possible use of something
   d start a business/organization
   e keep or continue to have something
   f introduce a wider range of products
   g introduce new ideas
   h make things using machines
   i change something a little to make it better ✓

2 Replace the underlined words with a single word that has the same meaning.

- You have to try to keep in front of others. ahead
  1 The introduction of new ideas was crucial.
  2 It was a very important decision.
  3 We did a careful study to find the best product.
  4 My partners were prepared to put money in the company.
  5 They signed a written legal agreement.
  6 I knew the product had the possibility to become better.
  7 We try to get information and comments on our products.
  8 They wanted to introduce a wider range of products.

Unit 58

1 Find eight more pairs of words in the box that have a similar meaning.

small ✓ danger advice ability plan aim reply data need threat
information response limited ✓ strategy tip objective skill demand

- small
  1 limited
  2 found
  3 needs
  4 limited

2 Complete the words in each sentence.

- Developing a marketing strategy.
  1 Analyse the company’s s________ and w________.
  2 Analyse the o________ for the company and the threats.
  3 Make sure you have a________ reliable market d________.
  4 Don’t a________ you know what your customers want.
  5 Make sure you have realistic o________.
  6 Don’t i________ your competitors.
  7 Try to make accurate and reliable f________ for future sales.
  8 Remember to e________ your marketing strategy to see if it is working.
# I can express probability

**Next week in the life of pessimistic Pamela, aged 15**

| Sunday: | I’m going to a barbecue next Saturday. I’ll definitely see Max (the boy I fancy). |
| Monday: | My best friend Sarah said she’s going. She’s bound to speak to him first, and she’s prettier than me, so Max is more likely to fancy her. |
| Tuesday: | I’ve got nothing to wear – I doubt if he’ll even notice me. |
| Wednesday: | If he does speak to me, I expect he’ll think I’m stupid. |
| Thursday: | I’ve heard there’s another party on Saturday – Max might go there instead. |
| Friday: | There’s a good chance it’ll rain tomorrow. The barbecue will be a disaster. |
| Saturday: | Woke up with a spot on my face – I’m definitely not going. |

**Glossary**

- **pessimistic** always believing bad things will happen. opp. **optimistic.**
- **definitely** certainly; for sure.
- **fancy sb** inf. be attracted to sb.
- **bound to do sth** If sb is bound to do sth. they will almost certainly do it.
- **likely to do sth** If sb is likely to do sth they will probably do it. opp. **unlikely to do sth.**
- **doubt** (if/that ...) If you doubt if or that sth will happen, you think it probably won’t happen.
- **expect sth** think or believe sth will happen.
- **might** used to say that sth is possible. syn *may.*
- **a chance** a possibility (a good chance is a more than 50 per cent possibility).
- **disaster** If sth is a disaster, it is terrible.
- **spot** an unpleasant red or yellow mark on the skin (teenagers have them).

1. **Complete the definitions.**
   
   - If something is a disaster, it is **terrible**.
   - 1. If something is bound to happen, it will **certainly** happen.
   - 2. If something is likely to take place, it will **take place**.
   - 3. If something might happen, you can also say that it **may** happen.
   - 4. If there’s a chance that something will happen, it means it **it will happen**.
   - 5. If you expect something to happen, it means you **will happen**.
   - 6. If you think that something is unlikely, it means it is **not going to happen**.
   - 7. If you doubt that something will happen, it means you **think it is going to happen**.
   - 8. If you are pessimistic, you always believe that **will happen**.

2. **A friend is taking an exam next week. Will she pass? Look at the percentage (%) on the right and write sentences with a similar meaning. Don’t use the verb think.**

   - She’ll definitely pass.
   - PASS? 100% yes
   - 100% yes
   - 95% yes
   - 75% yes
   - 50% yes
   - 25% yes
   - 100% no

3. **ABOUT YOU Use the vocabulary to write sentences about your life next week.**
Labradors

In looks, Boss and Sam are almost identical except that Sam is a bit bigger. Jake and Boss are similar except for their colour. The similarity between Sam and Jake is that they both have large ears. In character though, they're not alike. Compared with Jake and Boss, Sam is very lazy. In fact, he's completely different from the other two. Apart from the fact that he's greedy — all labradors are greedy given the opportunity — with the other two, the main difference is that Boss is rather quiet in comparison with Jake.

Glossary

**identical** without a single difference. SYN exactly the same.

**except** not including sb/sth (except that + clause or except for + noun).

**similar** (to sb/sth) like sb/sth but not the same. similarity (a similarity between things).

**alike** very similar (don't use alike before a noun).

**completely different** different in every way.

**apart from** sb/sth SYN except for sb/sth.

**greedy** wanting to take more than you need (usually food).

**the main difference** the most important difference.

1 Replace the underlined words with a different word or phrase with the same meaning.
   - Barley is **like** my other dog. __similar to__
   1 She's very tall compared with Elena. __comparatively__
   2 I liked all of them except for the blue one. __but for__
   3 The two boys aren't very similar. __not at all__
   4 The most important difference is colour. __principal__
   5 Poland is very big in comparison with Hungary. __in comparison with__
   6 The twins are **almost** the same. __nearly__

2 Complete the sentences.
   - If you compare the two books, it's amazing how different they are.
   1 She is very __similar to__ her mother; they both laugh all the time.
   2 __Not at all__ with his last album, the new one's a bit boring.
   3 There is a __difference__ between the two tables: they're both made of the same wood.
   4 This chair is like the one in your bedroom, __not at all__ that this one's a bit softer.
   5 Max always tries to eat his brother's food as well as his own; he's a __greedy__ dog.
   6 Some people say my brother and I are __similar to__ , but I think we're __completely different__.
   7 I didn't like the film, __not at all__ from the ending, which was great.
   8 The main __difference__ between the two students is that Carlo has better pronunciation.

3 ABOUT YOU AND YOUR COUNTRY Write sentences about the similarities and differences between two members of your family or two cities in your country.
61 I can make arrangements to meet

A Mike, we need to talk about the project. Can we get together next week?
B Yes, sure.
A Can you make it on Monday morning, say?
B No, I'm not available then. How about Tuesday afternoon?
A I'd like to, but I'm afraid I'm tied up then. Can we make it Friday morning instead?
B I'm supposed to see Jo then, but I think I can postpone that. I'll confirm it with you tonight.
A Great, well, I'll wait to hear from you.

Glossary
How about ...? is ... suitable? syn What about ...?
instead (of sth) in the place of sth (e.g. We could take the train, or we could hire a car instead.). syn as an alternative.
postpone sth decide that sth you had planned will happen at a later time. syn put sth off.

1 Replace the underlined word or phrase with a word or phrase with the same meaning.
   ▶ I'll confirm it later. tell you definitely.
   1 I'm supposed to meet him at six.
   2 He's tied up tomorrow.
   3 How about Friday?
   4 He's not available now.
   5 I'll postpone it.
   6 Can you come, say, at five?
   7 Can you make it tomorrow?
   8 We must get together soon.
   9 I'm sorry but I'm busy.

2 There's a mistake in each sentence. Write the correct sentence at the end.
   ▶ She supposed to be here at 3.00. She's supposed to be here at 3.00...
   1 Shall we make together for a meeting?
   2 I'll tell you definite tomorrow.
   3 I could put the meeting out until Friday.
   4 I'm afraid but I'm tied up then.
   5 A Let's meet at a restaurant, saying?
      B No, what about the station in place?
   6 For an alternative, we could meet on Tuesday.

3 Test yourself. Look at the dialogue and cover the meanings. Can you remember the meaning of each word or phrase in bold?

154 SOCIAL ENGLISH
I can discuss my likes and dislikes

**Table:**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>MISCHA BARON: the food king!</th>
<th>Meaning</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>I’m mad about food. I spend a lot of time thinking about it.</td>
<td><strong>be mad about sth/sb</strong> inf like sth/sb very much. <strong>syn be crazy about sth/sb inf.</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>I adore cooking, though I’m not very keen on washing up afterwards.</td>
<td><strong>adore</strong> (doing) sth inf love (doing) sth. <strong>be keen on</strong> (doing) sth inf (usually used in the negative) like or enjoy (doing) sth. <strong>be fond of</strong> (doing) sth like or enjoy (doing) sth, especially over a long time.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>I’m very fond of Asian food, particularly Thai and Korean.</td>
<td><strong>not at all</strong> not in any way. (If you <strong>don’t</strong> like sth at all, you dislike it very much.)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>I don’t like takeaway food at all.</td>
<td><strong>loathe</strong> (doing) sth dislike (doing) sth very much (also <strong>loathe sb</strong>). <strong>get to like sth/sb</strong> start to like sth/sb. <strong>can’t stand</strong> (doing) sth inf strongly dislike (doing) sth. <strong>syn can’t bear</strong> (doing) sth. <strong>detest</strong> (doing) sth. hate (doing) sth (also <strong>detest sb</strong>). <strong>syn loathe sth/sb</strong>. would rather . . . than would prefer.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>As a child, I loathed cabbage (I hated the smell), but I’ve had to like it now.</td>
<td><strong>I’d rather die than eat yoghurt.</strong></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Spotlight:** Verb + -ing

Many verbs meaning 'like' or 'dislike' (= not like) can be followed by an -ing form.

1. Complete the table using the words and phrases in the box.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>like very much</th>
<th>like</th>
<th>dislike very much</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>can’t stand</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

2. Correct the mistakes in the sentence beginnings.

I’m not keen for . . . I’m not keen on.

1. I fond of . . .
2. I don’t stand . . .
3. I loathe to cook . . .
4. I’m mad about . . .
5. I can’t bearing . . .
6. I’m detest . . .
7. I adore eat . . .
8. I’ve crazy about . . .
9. Recently, I’ve got for like . . .
10. I’m rather eat . . . than . . .

ABOUT YOU

3. ABOUT YOU Complete the sentences in Exercise 2. Write about food, drinks, cooking, things you like doing, etc. If possible, tell another student.
63 I can give my opinion

A Asking for and giving opinions

A **Apparently**, the government wants to increase the number of young people going to university. **What do you think about** that?
B **Personally, I think** it’s a good idea. People should have the chance to go to university.
A Maybe, but **it seems to me** we need more people with manual skills, not more academics. And why haven’t we got those people? It’s the government’s **fault**.
B You think the government is **to blame** for everything. But don’t you **recon** it’s a good idea. **in principle**, for more young people to have a better education?
A Yes, I think education is an incredibly important **issue**, but **the point** is, what kind of education do we want young people to have?

![Glossary](image)

- **apparently** based on what you have heard or read.
- **What do you think about** . . . ? is used to ask sb’s opinion about a general topic (also **How do you feel about** . . . ? We usually use **think of** when asking about a person or thing, e.g. **What do you think of his new book?**
- **fault** responsibility for a mistake.
- **be to blame for** sth be responsible for sth bad (e.g. He’s to blame for the accident. = The accident is his **fault**.)
- **recon** (that) sth inf think or have an opinion about sth.
- **in principle** in general, but perhaps not in all the details. **syn in theory**.
- **issue** a problem or subject for discussion.
- **the point** is the most important part of what I’m saying is.

1 Write the words in the correct order.
   - issue / reckon / it’s / important / I / an 
     I reckon it’s an important issue.
   - I think / this / you / idea / do / what / of ?
   - I / it’s / think / good / personally / a / idea
   - agree / in / it / principle / I / with
   - choice / to / it / no / seems / we / have / me
   - it / disaster / if / me / ask / a / you / was

2 Rewrite the opinions using the words on the right. The meaning must stay the same.
   - I think it’ll be difficult. **EASY** I don’t think it’ll be easy.
   - I think we should do something. **SEEMS**
   - What do you think about that? **FEEL**
   - I think we should help them. **OPINION**
   - It’s my fault. **BLAME**
   - I think it’ll be a problem. **RECKON**

3 Complete the sentences.
   - **Personally**, I thought the film was awful.
   - As far as I’m ____________, the government made the mistake, so it’s their ____________.
   - As far as I’m ____________, the most important thing is to find a new manager.
   - I think climate change is one of the most important ____________ of the 21st century.
   - We both think it’s important, but the ____________ is, what are we going to do about it?
   - In ____________, I quite like his suggestion, but I don’t know if it’ll work.
The government's **considering** a **proposal** to increase the legal age to drive a car from 17 to 21. What do you think of this idea?

**FOR**
- Personally, I think it's very **sensible**. Too many young people are killed on our roads.
- Yes, I'm **in favour of** it, because it would reduce the number of cars on the road.
- I would **support** it, too. I don't think 17 year-olds are **mature** enough to drive a car.

**AGAINST**
- I'm **not in favour of** this. I reckon more young people will just drive illegally.
- I'm **against** it, too. I **believe** that if young people are old enough to vote, then they're old enough to drive.
- I'm **opposed to** it. It'll make teenagers more **dependent on** their parents.

---

**Glossary**

- **consider sth** think about sth carefully before making a decision.
- **proposal** a plan that is formally suggested.
- **propose** v.
- **sensible** practical and intelligent. opp **silly**.
- **in favour of sth** in agreement with sth. opp **against sth**.
- **reduce sth** make sth smaller or less in quantity or size. opp **increase sth**.

**support sth** agree with sth and sometimes offer help. **support** v.

- **mature** acting in a sensible, adult way.
- **believe** that have the opinion that.
- **opposed to sth** believing that sth is wrong.
- **dependent on sb/sth** needing sb/sth to help you.

---

4 Replace the underlined words with a single word that has the same meaning.

1. She is **not in favour of** it.
2. I think it's a **practical and intelligent** idea.
3. They're going to **think carefully about** the new plan.
4. We can **make it less**.
5. I **agree with** them and think they're right.
6. Do you **have the opinion** that he's innocent?
7. What do you think of the **plan that was formally suggested**?

**Against**

---

5 Complete the dialogues.

1. Are you going to help them? ~ Yes, I'm going to **support** the plan.
2. Is he in favour of it? ~ No, he's **against** it.
3. Will it increase the problem? ~ No, it'll **reduce** it.
4. Do they like the idea? ~ No, they're **against** it.
5. Are you going to support her? ~ Yes, I **support** that she's right.
6. Do you think it's sensible? ~ No, I think it's very **sensible**.
7. Are they against the idea? ~ No, they're in **favour of** it.
8. Does she really need our help? ~ Yes, she's completely **dependent on** us.
9. Is he old enough to look after the shop? ~ Yes, he's a very **sensible** young man.
64 I can talk about rules

A Rules at school

The school I went to in the 1930s was very strict. We had to wear a uniform, and the headteacher insisted that we even wore it to church on Sundays. We weren’t allowed to talk to the girls at the school next to ours, but of course nobody obeyed that rule. Smoking was banned everywhere. The teachers made us work very hard, and we were forced to stay after school some evenings to do four or five hours’ homework. One day I laughed during a test, and the teacher made me write to all 40 students in the class and apologize for my bad behaviour. How silly! I was very disobedient, and always being punished.

1 Cross out one word to make each sentence correct.

- Will the government ban to fast food?
  1 Did she force you to eat it?
  2 They made us sit there for an hour.
  3 I wasn’t be allowed to eat anything.

2 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the words on the right.

- She’s very bad; she always disobeys the rules.
  1 The children behave very well yesterday.
  2 You aren’t allowed to walk on the grass.
  3 My dog is forbidden to walk on the grass.
  4 They have forbidden alcohol at football matches.
  5 What was her behaviour for breaking the rules?
  6 His behaviour was terrible yesterday.

3 Complete the questions with a suitable word.

When you were at school at the age of 11,

- were girls allowed to wear make-up?
  1 were you an obedient child?
  2 what happened if you disobeyed the rules?
  3 were the rules very strict?
  4 what did teachers force you to do that you didn’t like?
  5 did children behave better or worse than nowadays?

4 ABOUT YOU Write your answers to Exercise 3, or ask another student.
### B Can you choose?

I'm a bus driver. In my job...

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>... wearing a uniform is <strong>compulsory</strong>/ <strong>obligatory</strong></th>
<th>= you must do it because of a rule or a law.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>I have no choice/option: I have to wear one.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>... smoking is <strong>forbidden</strong>/ <strong>isn't permitted</strong></td>
<td>= you mustn't do it: it's against a rule or the law.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>I'm not allowed to smoke at work.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>... working at night is <strong>optional</strong>/ <strong>not compulsory</strong></td>
<td>= you can decide or choose what to do; you needn't / don't have to do it.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>If I want to work at night, it's my choice ____________</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>it's up to me ____________</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>I have the option of working on Sunday twice a month.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>My boss lets me go home early on Fridays.</td>
<td>= you are allowed to go home early.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**5** Are the sentences the same or different? Write S or D.

- He allowed me to do it. | He permitted me to do it. **S**
- 1 It's not compulsory. | It's up to you. ____________
- 2 She has no choice. | It's optional. ____________
- 3 It's his choice. | It's up to him. ____________
- 4 Is it compulsory? | Is it forbidden? ____________
- 5 It's obligatory. | It's allowed. ____________
- 6 It's optional. | It's not compulsory. ____________
- 7 He lets me do it. | He allows me to do it. ____________
- 8 It's not optional. | It's obligatory. ____________

**6** Complete each of the dialogues with one word.

- Do you have to wear a uniform? ~ No, it's not ____________.
  1 Can you leave the building at lunchtime? ~ Yes, they ____________ you do what you want.
  2 Do you have to work at the weekends? ~ Yes, I have no ____________.
  3 Are you ____________ to use the phone for personal calls? ~ No, it's ____________.
  4 Can he work at home some days? ~ Yes, he can; it's ____________ to him.
  5 Do you have to do extra training for the job? ~ No, you don't ~ it's ____________, but I probably will.
  6 Is today's meeting optional or ____________? ~ Well, it's your ____________, but I think you should go.
  7 There's a café at work; you're not ____________ to eat your own food there.
  8 I have the ____________ of working in different departments if I want to move around.

**7** Test yourself. Cover the left-hand column in the table and look at the explanations. Can you remember the words and phrases in bold?
## A Making plans 🎓

| A Ramiro says you're making plans for your grandmother's 100th birthday in July. |
| B Yes, we've still got a few things to sort out. |
| A So you're going to have a big party, are you? |
| B Yes, we're expecting about a hundred people, actually. |
| A Wow! And where do you intend to have it? |
| B On a river boat, and I'm hoping to get a jazz band too. |
| A That sounds great! I hope it all goes smoothly. |
| B Yeah, I don't want anything to go wrong because she's really looking forward to it. |

### Glossary

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>make plans (for sth)</th>
<th>prepare for sth you want to do in the future. syn plan sth.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>sort sth out</td>
<td>organize sth.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>be going to do sth</td>
<td>plan to do sth in the future.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>expect sth</td>
<td>think that sth will happen because it is probable or has been planned.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>intend to do sth / doing sth</td>
<td>plan to do sth. inten tion w. opp have no intention of doing sth.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>hope to do sth</td>
<td>want to do sth and think that it is possible.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>go smoothly</td>
<td>happen without difficulties or delays.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>go wrong</td>
<td>If sth goes wrong, there is a problem and the plan might fail.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>look forward to (doing) sth</td>
<td>feel happy about sth that is going to happen.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### spotlight  actually

Actually is often used when adding new information or being more exact. syn in fact. Be careful: actually does not mean 'at the moment'.

He's German, isn't he? ~ Yes, he's from Berlin, actually.

## 1 Same or different? Write S or D.

1. She's looking forward to seeing John. | She's expecting to see John. **D**
2. Did the wedding go smoothly? | Did the wedding go wrong? **D**
3. He plans to go to Ireland. | He intends to go to Ireland. **D**
4. I live in Poland at the moment. | I live in Poland, actually. **D**
5. I'm hoping to get the job. | I'm going to get the job. **D**
6. I don't intend to buy the car. | I've no intention of buying the car. **D**
7. Have you planned anything for tonight? | Have you made any plans for tonight? **D**

## 2 Complete the email.

We're **going** to take six months off work and go travelling this winter. At the moment we're **making** plans and trying to decide exactly where to go. We **intend** to spend most of the time travelling round Australia and New Zealand as we both have family there. I'm **hoping** to be able to get hotel work there, which will cover the cost of our accommodation. I'm not **expecting** anything very smart, but at the same time, I've no **intention** of sleeping in a tent for the whole time. At the moment we're trying to sell our car to help pay for the adventure. I just hope nothing goes **wrong** with the sale. In **hope** if everything goes **smoothly**, we'll be in Sydney on Christmas Day, which will be fabulous; I'm really looking **forward** to it.

## 3 Test yourself. Look at the glossary words and cover the meanings. What do the words mean?
## Spoken responses

### Are you going to move house?

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Responses</th>
<th>Meaning</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>✓</strong> Definitely.</td>
<td>= Yes, I'm sure it will happen.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>×</strong> Definitely not.</td>
<td>= No, I'm sure it won't happen.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>✓</strong> I think so.</td>
<td>= I think it will probably happen.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>×</strong> I doubt it. / I don't think so.</td>
<td>= I think it probably won't happen.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>✓</strong> I hope so.</td>
<td>= I want it to happen, but I don't know if it will.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>×</strong> I hope not.</td>
<td>= I don't want it to happen, and I don't know if it will.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>✓</strong> I'm afraid so.</td>
<td>= I think it will happen and I'm unhappy about it.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>×</strong> I'm afraid not.</td>
<td>= I don't think it’ll happen and I’m unhappy about it.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>✓</strong> I assume so.</td>
<td>= I think it will happen, but I have no proof.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>I expect so. / I imagine so.</td>
<td>= I think it will happen.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>I suppose so. / I guess so.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Correct the mistakes. Write the correct sentence on the right.

1. I'm assume so.  
   I assume so.
2. I doubt so.  
   I don't think.
3. I'm not afraid.  
   I'm afraid not.
4. I don't hope.  
   I don't hope.
5. I afraid so.  
   I'm afraid so.
6. I don't think.  
   I don't think.
7. Definitely no.  
   Definitely not.
8. I guess so.  
   I guess it.

### Complete the dialogues with the correct words or phrases.

1. Is everything going smoothly with your holiday plans? ~ Yes, I hope so.
2. Are they going to have a party? ~ Yes, I think so. It's their fortieth wedding anniversary.
3. Is Ravi going to cook for us tonight? ~ I don't think. Mina always seems to do the cooking.
4. Is Melissa going to get married? ~ I hope not. I really don't like the guy she's going out with.
5. Are you going on holiday this summer? ~ I'm afraid so. We can't afford it.
6. Do you think Omar will get promoted? ~ I don't think so. He's the best candidate and everyone likes him.
7. Do you think they'll win? ~ I doubt it. They're playing very badly this season.
8. Are you going to buy that CD player? ~ I suppose so. It's the best one on the market.

### Test yourself. Cover the responses and look at the meanings. What are the responses?
I can express dissatisfaction

A How to complain

- Make sure you know how you want the situation to be resolved after you complain.
- Collect as much evidence as possible, e.g., photos, guarantees, etc.
- Expressing dissatisfaction in person can be the most effective.
- Always keep calm when you complain. There is no point in losing your temper.
- Back up your claim in writing.
- Consider getting an expert’s opinion to back up your claim.

Glossary

| make sure | be certain. |
| resolve sth | find an answer to a problem. syn settle sth. |
| complain (about sth) | say you are not satisfied with sth. make a complaint (about sth) n. |
| guarantee | a written promise by a company that it will repair or replace sth that stops working within a specific period of time. |
| dissatisfaction | the annoyed feeling you get when sth is not as good as you expected it to be. opp satisfaction dissatisfied adj. |
| in person | speaking to sb face to face. |
| keep calm | stay quiet and not get excited, worried, or angry. |
| lose your temper | be unable to control your anger. opp keep your temper. |
| back sth up | support sth: say or show that sth is true. |
| claim | a demand for sth, often money, that you think you have a right to, often from a company or the government. make a claim v. |
| in writing | in a letter, email, etc. |
| consider doing sth | think about doing sth. consideration n. |
| expert | a person who has a lot of knowledge of a subject. |

spotlight point

Point can mean ‘reason’ or ‘purpose’, and is used in several expressions:
What’s the point of doing that? (What’s the reason for doing that?)
There’s no point in doing that. (There’s no reason to do that.)

1 Match 1–6 with a–g.

- make sure a in person
- a written b calm
- lose c a claim
- make d guarantee
- keep e the situation
- speak to someone f your temper
- resolve g sure

2 Complete the sentences.

- Make sure you keep your receipt.
- We were very with the slow service, and in the end we about it.
- You often get a two-year with a new washing machine.
- There’s no complaining without a good reason.
- It helps to have someone to you up when you make a complaint.
- If you want to make a claim, you will need to back it up in .
- I tried to calm but I’m afraid I lost my
- You sometimes need to find an who really knows the subject.
- Have you seeing a lawyer to get some legal advice?

Test yourself. Cover the glossary meanings and look at the words. What are the meanings?
B Having a moan 🎵

A. I'm fed up with the painting course this term.
B. I'm not happy with it either. The room they've given us is dreadful - it's too small.
A. Actually, I'm not so bothered about the room. It's the man who joined the course last month - he really gets on my nerves. He's always moaning.
B. Yes, he's spoilt it for the rest of us, really. And next week someone else is starting.
A. Oh what a nuisance! I don't think they should let people join the course late. I might mention it to the teacher.

spotlight  bother

The verb bother is used in several expressions:
I'm not bothered about what I wear. INF = I don't care about what I wear.
(I'm) sorry to bother you. = I'm sorry to disturb you. (Used when sb is busy.)
Don't bother to buy the milk. = Don't trouble yourself; it's not necessary.

Glossary
fed up with sth - bored or unhappy with sth.
happy with sth - feeling that sth is good or right.
dreadful - very bad. syns terrible, atrocious, appalling.
join sth - become a member of a group such as a class or club.
get on sb's nerves - INF irritate sb or make sb angry.
moan - INF keep saying what is wrong or bad about sth. moan n.
spoil sth - pt. pp spoilt/spoiled - change sth good into sth bad or unpleasant. syn ruin sth.
nuisance - a person, thing, or situation that annoys you.
mention sth - talk about sth, usually quickly and without saying much.

4 Cross out one more word in this list that does not have a negative meaning.

atrocious  join  fed up  ruin  moan  dreadful
nuisance  spoil  mention  appalling

5 Complete the dialogues with a suitable word.

► What dreadful weather. ~ Yes, absolutely atrocious.
1. What's the matter? ~ Oh, I'm up with this essay.
2. Oh Brian, I'm sorry to you. ~ That's OK. Come on in.
3. We can't watch TV. It's not working. ~ Oh no! What a .
4. There was too much salt on the meat. ~ Yes I know. It really it.
5. Shall I close the gate? ~ No, don't Leave it open.
6. I've decided to a chess club. ~ I didn't know you played chess.
7. Do you want to go out? ~ No, I'm not Let's stay here.
8. Did you say anything about the course? ~ Yes, I it to the director.

ABOUT YOU Write your answers, or ask another student.

1. Is there anything you're fed up with at the moment?
2. Is there anything or anyone that gets on your nerves?
3. Do you moan about anything in particular?
4. Can you think of anything in your town that's dreadful?
5. Are you bothered about the level of your English at the moment?

7 Test yourself. Look at the glossary words and cover the meanings. What are the meanings?
67 I can understand warnings

Look out! Be careful! Watch out! Mind your head!

DANGER BEWARE OF LOW-FLYING AIRCRAFT
CAUTION If swallowed, seek medical assistance immediately
IN CASE OF FIRE, BREAK GLASS
WARNING Do not cross when the barrier is down
No smoking on the premises

Glossary

mind (your head, leg, etc.) used to tell sb to be careful of sth.
danger the possibility of sth happening that will injure, harm, or kill sb.
beware of sth (usually on written signs) be careful of sth.
warning a notice or statement that tells you to be careful. warn sb (of/about sth) v.
cross (sth) go from one side of sth to the other.
in case of sth if sth happens.
cautions (used in notices) be careful.
swallow sth make food or drink go down your throat and into your stomach.
seek sth try to find sth or ask sb for sth.
assistance help or support.
premises (pl) the building and land around it belonging to a business.

1 Write the words in correct sentences.

- mind / is / dish / your / that / hot / fingers  Mind your fingers. That dish is hot.
- assistance / any / need / do / you / ?
- help / seek / symptoms / Caution / if / continue / medical
- beware / bites / the / of / it / dog
- is / when / don’t / the / down / Warning / cross / barrier
- building / the / fire / case / in / of / leave / immediately
- police / ring / of / case / in / the / emergency

2 Complete the sentences.

- Look out! There’s a car coming!
- If someone the liquid, take them to hospital and take the bottle with you.
- of falling rocks. In of emergency, call the police.
- the step when you leave the building.
- Watch ! There’s a big spider.
- The river was flooded, and a policeman us about the ahead.
- Be when you’re driving there. There are often low flying !
- If you need any , please ring the office.
- There are usually guard dogs on the business .
Unit 59

1 Complete the sentences on the right, keeping the same meaning as in the sentences on the left.

- It's possible he'll go.
  1 He's sure to go.
  2 I don't think he'll fancy her.
  3 I'm almost sure it'll be a disaster.
  4 He might go.
  5 I expect it'll rain later.
  6 He always thinks the worst will happen.

He might go.

He'll ____________.

I ____________ he'll fancy her.

It's bound ____________.

There's a chance ____________.

It's ____________ to rain later.

He's very ____________.

Unit 60

1 Complete the text.

The twins and me

My sisters, Lucy and Ellie, are twins. To look at they are absolutely _____________. (1) ____________ for their hair. Lucy's is long, and Ellie's is shoulder-length. They adore being twins and they love people to know they are twins. When they go out, they make sure that their clothes are (2) ____________ the same.

In character, though, they're not (3) _____________. Ellie is confident and optimistic (4) ____________ with Lucy, who is much more reserved and quiet. When they are at university, their behaviour is also (5) ____________ different. Ellie is friends with everyone, but Lucy doesn't spend time with anyone (6) ____________ from her sister. The (7) ____________ difference between the twins and me is the way we look, of course. I'm very dark in (8) ____________ with them: they both have beautiful blonde hair.

Unit 61

1 Complete the conversation.

A Jun, we must ____________ together next week. Can you (1) ____________ it on Tuesday?
B I'm (2) _____________. I'm busy on Tuesday. (3) ____________ about Wednesday?
A No, I don't think I'm (4) _____________. then. I'm supposed (5) ____________ see Chris about the computer.
B Oh dear. Wednesday's the only day next week that I'm not (6) _____________. up. Could you possibly (7) ____________ your computer meeting until the following week?
A I'm not sure; I'll have to talk to Chris. Can I (8) _____________. that with you tomorrow?
B OK, Jun, that's fine. I'll wait to hear from you.
Unit 62

1 Complete the sentences with suitable words.

**Things or people that I like:**
1 I'm very __________________ on physical exercise.
2 I'm __________________ of the people in my class.
3 I'm __________________ about dancing.
4 I absolutely __________________ chocolate.

**Things or people that I don't like:**
5 I don't like shellfish at ____________ .
6 I can't __________________ waiting in queues.
7 I'm not very __________________ on cheese.
8 I absolutely __________________ cold weather.

2 ABOUT YOU Do you agree with the sentences in Exercise 1? Write your own sentences or ask another student.

Unit 63

1 Which two phrases have a similar meaning? Tick (✓) them.

- I support it [✓] | personally, I think [✓] if you ask me [✓]
- not in favour of [✓] | the issue [✓] | against [✓]
- is to blame [✓] | it seems to me [✓] | is his fault [✓]
- in my opinion [✓] | as far as I'm concerned [✓] | I'm considering [✓]
- in favour [✓] | in principle [✓] | in theory [✓]
- is opposed to [✓] | is against [✓] | is mature [✓]
- I believe [✓] | I reckon [✓] | I blame [✓]

2 Circle the correct word or phrase.

- It _________ reckons to me that we need this. 4. What do you think about/of my new car?
1 Is he in favour/against of the proposal?
2 It's not your blame/fault.
3 Give him a key; he's quite sensible/silly.

Unit 64

1 Rewrite the sentence using the correct form of the word in capitals. The meaning should stay the same.

- Smoking isn't allowed. BAN Smoking is banned.
1 He doesn't do what I say. DISOBEY ______________________________________
2 They make us work hard. FORCE ______________________________________
3 You can't eat here. ALLOWED ______________________________________
4 You have to wear a uniform. COMPULSORY ______________________________________
5 She allowed us to sit down. LET ______________________________________
6 The boss says we have to go. INSIST ______________________________________
7 The way he acts in class is terrible. BEHAVIOUR ______________________________________
8 He makes us suffer if we're late. PUNISH ______________________________________
Unit 65

1 Complete the dialogue.

A You must be busy making plans for your wedding.
B Yes, I am, in fact, I seem to do nothing else.
A Are you expecting a lot of guests?
B Oh, yes, I don't think so – it's going to be enormous. We've both got big families.
A And is Barry invited to come?
B Goodness, I really hope not – he's the last person I want at my wedding. Anyway, I have no idea of inviting him.
A And how about Auntie June – is she coming?
B No, I'm afraid not – she's not very well, actually. Her operation didn't go as expected, so she won't be able to make it. She's ok, though.
A That's a relief. And what about Grandpa – is he going to be there?
B Well, I guess so – it wouldn't be a wedding without him, would it?

Unit 66

1 Is the speaker happy or unhappy in the sentences? Write H or U.

1 The rain didn't spoil my holiday. H
2 I was really fed up with her. ....
3 The weather's atrocious, isn't it? ....
4 We've resolved the problem. ....
5 Judi didn't lose her temper. ....
6 I've got a complaint about the room. ....
7 The noise doesn't bother me. ....
8 That dog's a nuisance. ....
9 My day's been ruined. ....

2 Rewrite the sentence using the correct form of the word in capitals. The meaning must stay the same.

1 Don't get angry. TEMPER Don't lose your temper. ....
2 There's no reason to go out. POINT There's no reason to go out. ....
3 You should speak to her face-to-face. PERSON You should speak to her face-to-face. ....
4 I would ask someone who knows a lot about it for advice. EXPERT I would ask someone who knows a lot about it for advice. ....
5 She became a member of the tennis club. JOIN She joined the tennis club. ....
6 Waiting in queues really irritates me. NERVES Waiting in queues really irritates me. ....
7 I don't think the cost of the meal is important. BOTHER I don't think the cost of the meal is important. ....
8 Did she say anything to you about the divorce? MENTION Did she say anything to you about the divorce? ....

Unit 67

1 Complete the warnings.

LOW DOOR. WATCH

Your Head. For thieves.

If swallowed, seek medical help immediately.

Broken glass on the path. Please be careful.

IN CASE OF THEFT, PHONE THIS NUMBER.
A link between A and B is a connection between two or more people or things. The words in bold in this unit all link one idea (A) with another idea (B).

Glossary

as a result because of sth that happened before.
syn so.
due to sth because of sth.
what's more inf used when you are adding information in spoken English or informal written English. syn plus inf (and see spotlight).
as used to say why sth happens, or why sb does sth. syns since, because.
consequently because of sth that happened before. syn therefore. (Both words are more formal than as a result or so.)

1 Circle the correct word.

A In addition I had no money, I couldn’t pay.
   1 It snowed heavily, and as a result plus, we had to stay in for two days.
   2 It was an old armchair, and because what's more, it smelled horrible.
   3 He had to give up his job consequently due to stress.
   4 People are richer these days and therefore since they spend a lot more.
   5 It was a long way to the station, so plus I had a suitcase.
   6 Since furthermore he had no money, I ended up paying the bill.
   7 Zoltan saw a man standing in the shadows. Therefore moreover, he was holding a knife.
   8 The town has a good transport system. Furthermore as a result, it is very cheap.

2 Write the circled link words in Exercise 1 in the table below.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>reason</th>
<th>result</th>
<th>addition</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>As</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

3 Complete the sentences in a logical way.

A I had a very bad night’s sleep: the bed was uncomfortable, plus the room was hot.
   1 In winter, schools sometimes have to ______________ due to bad weather.
   2 Ulla lost her passport on the way to the airport; consequently, __________________ fly that day.
   3 The hotel was dirty and the service was poor. Furthermore, the food ______________.
   4 As I ______________ much money to spend, I decided to stay at home that evening.
   5 He forgot his key and therefore he couldn’t ______________ the flat.
   6 Jeans are extremely practical; what’s more ______________ expensive.
### B Contrasting ideas

A **contrast** is a difference between two or more people or things that are being compared. The words in bold below are used to introduce an idea which contrasts with something you have just said.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Contrasting two ideas in one sentence:</th>
<th>Notes</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>We got a ticket, even though it wasn't easy.</td>
<td>The clause with although, even though, and though can come at the beginning or the end, e.g. Although it wasn't easy, we got a ticket.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>I went to work despite feeling very unwell.</td>
<td>Despite and syn in spite of are followed by an -ing form or a noun.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Contrasting two ideas in two separate sentences:</th>
<th>Notes</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>The car was old. Despite that, I still bought it.</td>
<td>In despite that and in spite of that, the word that refers back to the fact that the car was old.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>She didn't work hard. However, she still passed.</td>
<td>However and nevertheless are more formal; all the same is more informal.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>He says he's rich. I don't believe him.</td>
<td>At the end of a sentence, however is more formal than though.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**spotlight still**

Still can be used to emphasize that the second part of a sentence is surprising, especially after what was said in the first part of the sentence.

She felt ill, but she still went to work.

He left an hour early, but he still missed the train.

### 4 Match 1–8 with a–i.

- He says nice things about you.  
- He got the job in spite of .  
- I saw the film last night.  
- He went out despite the fact that .  
- The soup was disgusting.  
- We had a nice day even .  
- He felt really cold despite .  
- He went to bed very late. All the same,  
- The bike's useful. Nevertheless,  

- he got to work on time in the morning.  
- he wasn't feeling very well.  
- although the main course was nice.  
- though the weather wasn't very good.  
- his lack of experience.  
- the fact that the heating was on.  
- However, you can't trust him.  
- I'd rather have a car.  
- I didn't think much of it, though.  

### 5 Complete the sentences with one word. Sometimes more than one answer is possible.

- We had quite a nice day there. ... the same, I wouldn't go back again.
- I could just see the house the fog.
- Jun has very little money. In spite of , he's really generous.
- You'll find it hard to get work there. It's worth trying.
- I wanted to see the exhibition. When I got there, it was closed.
- There was more snow today, I think it's warmer this evening.
- In , of leaving two hours early, we missed the plane.
- I didn't feel sleepy though it was very late.
- the fact that we thought we knew the way, we got lost twice.
### Other link words

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Word or phase</th>
<th>Example</th>
<th>Meaning/usage</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>whereas</td>
<td>I enjoy tennis, whereas my father prefers rugby.</td>
<td>used for comparing two people, things, etc. and saying there is a difference between them.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>on the one hand</td>
<td>On the one hand, it’s lovely here in summer, but on the other, the winter is terrible.</td>
<td>used for showing opposite points of view.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>otherwise (or else)</td>
<td>Put your cake on the table, otherwise the dog will eat it.</td>
<td>used to say that if sth doesn’t happen or isn’t true, sth else will happen, sometimes sth bad.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>provided (that)</td>
<td>I’ll go provided you come with me.</td>
<td>only if.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>as long as</td>
<td>I’ll accept the job at the BBC unless they offer me a job at Sky.</td>
<td>used to say that sth will happen or be true if sth else does not happen or is not true.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>unless</td>
<td>Take a map in case you need it.</td>
<td>because sth might happen.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>so (that)</td>
<td>He got there early so that he could speak to her before the lesson.</td>
<td>used to talk about the purpose of an action.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### spotlight: purpose

A **purpose** is a reason for doing something, or a thing that someone wants to achieve.

What’s the purpose of your trip?  
The purpose of the meeting is to discuss the figures.

### 6 Is the meaning of the sentences the same or different? Write S or D.

- He speaks German, whereas I don’t.  
  1. If you leave it here, someone will steal it.  
  2. I won’t go to the party unless Chica’s going.  
  3. I took some money so that I could pay.  
  4. She’ll get there provided she leaves now.  
  5. I always put sugar in, otherwise it’s not sweet.  
  6. What was the purpose of his letter?  

  **S**

### 7 Complete the sentences with words from the box.

- She won’t use a towel unless it’s just been washed.  
  1. The children can go out they don’t cross the main road.  
  2. You should get there early you get a good seat.  
  3. Flying can save time, but on the other hand, it’s not good for the environment.  
  4. Teachers’ salaries have gone up nurses’ salaries have fallen.  
  5. Take some chocolate with you you’re hungry on the journey.  
  6. Plug it in, it won’t work.

### 8 Test yourself. Look at the words in the first column and cover the examples and meanings. What are the meanings?
I can use a range of adjectives

A Describing places

Hidden away in this **remote** part of rural France is the village of La Toque. It's a **curious, old-fashioned** sort of place. There's only one hotel, so it's **vital** to book in advance, but don't expect anything **grand**. The accommodation and food are very **simple**, but the prices are **reasonable** and I was **impressed with** the **overall** quality. The local people are still a bit **suspicious of** tourists, but I found them very **polite**. However, you may not meet many, as the streets are usually **deserted** by 10 p.m.!

**Glossary**

- **remote**: far away from where many people live. Syn **urban**.
- **rural**: connected with the country, not the town. Opp **urban**.
- **curious**: unusual or strange.
- **old-fashioned**: typical of the past but not of the present. Opp **modern**.
- **vital**: necessary and important. Syn **essential**.
- **grand**: impressive and large or important.
- **simple**: including the things you need but no extra things. Syn **basic**.
- **reasonable**: If prices are **reasonable**, they are not too high. Syn **fair**, opp **unreasonable**.
- **impressed with sth/sb**: feeling that sth/sb is good or of a high standard.
- **overall**: general; considering everything.
- **suspicious of sth/sb**: feeling that sth/sb is dishonest and cannot be trusted.
- **polite**: behaving in a good or correct way. Opp **rude**.
- **deserted**: empty because everyone has left. Opp **busy, crowded**.

1. Find seven more pairs of synonyms or opposites in the box.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>simple</th>
<th>modern</th>
<th>curious</th>
<th>fair</th>
<th>polite</th>
<th>essential</th>
<th>busy</th>
<th>old-fashioned</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>rural</td>
<td>basic</td>
<td>urban</td>
<td>rude</td>
<td>deserted</td>
<td>vital</td>
<td>strange</td>
<td>reasonable</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

   - **simple** / SYN **basic**
   - **rural** / SYN **urban**
   - **curious** / SYN **old-fashioned**
   - **fair** / OPP **impressive**
   - **polite** / OPP **rude**
   - **deserted** / OPP **busy, crowded**

2. Is the meaning the same or different? Write S or D.

   - It's a rural area. | It's an urban area. D
   - No one was there. | It was deserted. S
   - It's expensive. | The price is reasonable. S
   - She's good. | I'm impressed with her. D
   - It's essential. | It isn't vital. D
   - It wasn't grand. | It was quite basic S
   - I'm suspicious of him. | I don't trust him. D
   - It was fair. | It was unreasonable. D

3. Complete the words in the sentences.

   - It gets very busy, so it's **vital** to arrive early.
   - The others found him normal, but I thought he was a **curious** man.
   - It's a long way from town, so it's quite a **remote** place.
   - I was suspicious of the man when he refused to give his name.
   - I like the restaurant, and what's more, the prices are **reasonable**.
   - I was very **impressed** with the hotel: it's clean, comfortable, and very friendly.
   - There were one or two things I didn't like, but the **suspicious** standard was good.

4. Test yourself. Cover the glossary meanings and look at the words. Say the words and their synonyms and opposites.
B Describing feelings

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Adjectives</th>
<th>Example(s)</th>
<th>Meaning</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>terrifying/terrified</td>
<td>It was a terrifying film. I was terrified watching that film.</td>
<td>very frightening, very frightened.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>disappointed/disappointing</td>
<td>I was disappointed with my results. My results were disappointing.</td>
<td>feeling unhappy because sth is not as good as you hoped.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>amazing/amazed</td>
<td>Some of the dancers were amazing.</td>
<td>surprising and difficult to believe, often in a positive way.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>shocking/shocked</td>
<td>It was shocking to see so many people with nowhere to live.</td>
<td>upsetting and very surprising in a negative way.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>alarming/alarmed</td>
<td>When the police arrived, it was a bit alarming.</td>
<td>frightening or causing worry.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>disgusting/digusted</td>
<td>Last night's meal was disgusting.</td>
<td>very unpleasant.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>amusing/amused</td>
<td>We all thought the film was quite amusing.</td>
<td>funny in a gentle way.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>embarrassed/embarrassing</td>
<td>I was embarrassed when I got his name wrong.</td>
<td>feeling uncomfortable because of sth silly you have done.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>astonishing/astonished</td>
<td>It's astonishing how much she has changed in the last five years.</td>
<td>very surprising.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>satisfying/satisfied</td>
<td>Cooking for others is very satisfying.</td>
<td>making you feel pleased or happy.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dissatisfied</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

5 Circle the correct answer.

- The beaches were really **amazing/amazed**.
  1. I was shocking/shocked when I saw it.
  2. He was satisfying/satisfied with the course.
  3. The hotel didn't have a restaurant, which was rather disappointing/disappointed.
  4. It was a terrifying/terrified experience.
  5. The smell was disgusting/digusted.
  6. José felt a bit embarrassing/embarrassed.

6 Complete the dialogues with adjectives from the table.

- Were you frightened? ~ Yes, absolutely **terrified**.
  1. Was the film funny? ~ Yes, it was quite **amusing/amused**.
  2. You wore jeans to a smart party! ~ Yes, it was a bit **embarrassing/embarrassed**.
  3. He steals money from old people. ~ I know. It's absolutely **shocking/shocked**.
  4. Was he pleased with his marks? ~ No, he was **dissatisfied** with them.
  5. Was the wine unpleasant? ~ Yes, it was absolutely **disgusting/digusted**.
  6. Were you surprised? ~ Yes, absolutely **surprised**.
  7. Were you very frightened? ~ Yes, it was a bit **terrified**.
  8. Were you happy with the work? ~ No, I wasn't **satisfied** with it.

7 Test yourself. Look at the words in the first column and cover the examples and meanings. Can you remember the meanings?
C Describing qualities

People have **mixed feelings** about the new city hotel. Here are some comments.

- The rooms were **adequate** but I didn’t like the **artificial** flowers.
- I like the **contemporary** design – simple but **effective**.
- The bed was a bit **firm** for my liking.
- Most of the staff were **temporary** but they seemed very **efficient**.
- I was able to take my dog. It’s **rare** for a hotel to allow them.
- I was glad we had one of their best rooms. Some looked a bit **cramped**.
- They put champagne in our room, which was very **unexpected**.

### Glossary

**mixed feelings** • both positive (+) and negative (−) feelings about sth.

**adequate** • just good enough but nothing more. OPP **inadequate**.

**artificial** • made by people and used instead of sth natural. OPPs **real**, **natural**.

**contemporary** • of the present time. SYNONYMS **modern**, **old-fashioned**.

**effective** • successful and giving the result you want. OPP **ineffective**.

**firm** • quite hard. OPP **soft**.

**temporary** • employed or continuing for only a limited period of time. OPP **permanent**.

**efficient** • working well, quickly, and without mistakes. OPP **inefficient**.

**rare** • not done, seen, or happening very often. OPP **common**.

**glad** • pleased; quite happy. SYNONYM **pleased**.

**cramped** • small, and not having enough space. OPP **spacious**.

**unexpected** • If sth is **unexpected**, it surprises you because you didn’t know it was going to happen. OPP **expected**.

8 Replace the underlined adjective with a word that means the opposite.

1. I had **positive** feelings. **negative**
2. The food was **adequate**. **inadequate**
3. We had a **firm** mattress. **soft**
4. The service was **efficient**. **inefficient**
5. My room was **cramped**. **spacious**
6. Is that **real** snow? **fake**
7. It’s a **rare** disease. **common**
8. It was an **effective** method. **ineffective**
9. The visit was **expected**. **unexpected**
10. It’s a **temporary** arrangement. **permanent**

9 Complete the sentences with suitable adjectives.

- You couldn’t move round in the bathroom; it was very **cramped**.
- I have ___________ feelings about working abroad: I’d like to, but I’d miss my family.
- It’s a fantastic climate here. It’s very ___________ to have bad weather in the summer.
- I’m ___________ your mother is feeling better now. She was quite ill last week.
- She wears very old-___________ clothes.
- My sister’s having a baby. It was completely ___________, but we’re all very happy.
- This machine does the work of ten men; it’s very ___________.
- I think his work is ___________, but it could be better.
- A lot of people don’t like ___________ art because they don’t understand it.
- Sometimes Ava is very positive, but she can also be quite ___________.
- She’s only a ___________ member of staff. I think she’s leaving next week.

10 Test yourself. Look at the glossary words and cover the meanings. What are the meanings? Can you remember the synonyms and opposites?
A Place 🎧

FIND THE HIDDEN MAP

Walk towards the main road, until you get to the edge of the village. Then go over the bridge, and turn left. There's a lane that takes you through a farm, and just beyond the farmhouse there's a cottage. Go round to the rear of the cottage, and you'll be facing a small stream. Go across - it's only about 10 centimetres deep - and onto the bank on the other side. You'll see some bushes beside the stream. There's a statue among the tall grasses, and underneath the statue there's a map. It's hidden beneath a pile of leaves.

Glossary

towards in the direction of (also toward).
edge the place where sth. e.g. a table, a cliff, or a town ends.
beyond past a place and further away.
rear the back of sth, especially a car or a building, opp. front.
face sth look towards sth, or have your back to sth.
onto moving to or on a particular place or position.
beside next to, syn. by.
among surrounded by things (also amongst). 
underneath under (when sth is hidden or covered).
beneathFML under.

spotlight over

Over has different meanings:
1. up and across to the other side of something. Go over the bridge.
2. used to express location at a distance from the speaker. Sit over there.
3. all over: in all or most parts of sth. His clothes were all over the floor.

1 Match the pictures with the words below.

1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8

towards over the rear beside beneath onto the edge among

2 Complete the sentences with words from the glossary.

1. The front seats are great, but there isn't much room for your legs in the rear.
2. The glass fell over the floor and smashed.
3. I could see a few of my friends over the crowd.
4. Don't sit beside me. Come and sit over there.
5. I'm not surprised I couldn't find my pen; it was among all those books.
6. We didn't stay in one town - we went all over the place.
7. I couldn't see what was happening because I had my over the window.
8. Don't stand so close to the edge of the road - it's dangerous.
9. There's a village in the valley, and underneath it, you can see the mountains in the distance.
We'd already played 85 minutes and we were losing. Bob suddenly shouted, 'Come on, there are still five minutes to go - it's not over yet.'

The children were woken during the night by a loud bang. It was followed by heavy rain which lasted throughout the night.

Guy said he'd be back at three this afternoon. In the meantime, I took Martha shopping. She spent all morning looking for a black dress and eventually found something she liked.

I used to play a bit, but these days I just watch football on TV. I go to a game now and again with my son. Recently we saw Arsenal play Spurs.

3 Replace the underlined phrases with a single word that has the same meaning.
   ▶ I saw Petra not long ago. . recently.
   1 Do you see your uncle much these days? ... yesterday.
   2 The play continued for about two hours. ...
   3 I go to the theatre from time to time.
   4 The train wasn't due for two hours. In the meantime we went for lunch.
   5 He slept from the beginning to the end of the film.
   6 We waited at the hotel and after a long period of time Danny arrived.

4 Complete the dialogues.
   ▶ They want us to meet them later this afternoon. - Well, in the meantime, let's go to the market.
   1 He's writing a book, but it's not finished. - Yes I know, he showed it to me ... recently. It looked very interesting.
   2 Is 'Love in Amsterdam' his most ... film? - Yes, it came out ... the summer. I think he's working on another film now.
   3 Is the match ... yet? - No, there are still ten minutes to ...
   4 How long does the film ... ? - About two hours, but Candy doesn't want to go. She's ... seen it.
   5 I used to go to Rome ... for work, just a couple of times a year. - Oh, really? I lived there the 1990s - I loved it.

5 Test yourself. Look at the glossary meanings and cover the words. What are the words?
# I can use prepositions in phrases

## A Preposition + word(s) 🎧

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Phrase</th>
<th>Example</th>
<th>Meaning</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>by chance</td>
<td>We met in the shop by chance.</td>
<td>without it/sth being planned.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>on board</td>
<td>Are all the passengers on board?</td>
<td>on a plane or ship or bus.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>on purpose</td>
<td>She broke my watch, but she didn’t do it on purpose.</td>
<td>with a definite intention; not accidentally. syn del.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>at least</td>
<td>It takes at least an hour to get home.</td>
<td>not less than, and probably more.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>at first</td>
<td>I didn’t understand him at first.</td>
<td>at the beginning.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>in a hurry</td>
<td>He got up late and left in a hurry.</td>
<td>quickly, and usually because you haven’t enough time. syn in a rush.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>in advance</td>
<td>Can I buy tickets in advance?</td>
<td>before a particular time or event.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>in charge of</td>
<td>Who’s in charge of the office while Matt’s on holiday?</td>
<td>in a position of control over sth/sb. syn res. for sth/sb.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sth/sb</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>in general</td>
<td>In general, I don’t work on Saturdays.</td>
<td>usually; in most cases. syn generally.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>in public</td>
<td>I don’t like it when people argue with each other in public.</td>
<td>when other people are present. syn in private.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

1. Make eight more phrases using *in, at, by, or on, and one of the words from the box.*

   - **general**
   - **purpose**
   - **advance**
   - **least**
   - **private**
   - **public**
   - **first**
   - **board**
   - **chance**
   
   - **in advance**
   
   - **in the end and at the end**

   - **in the end** can mean ‘finally’, after a period of time, or ‘in conclusion’.
   - *All the restaurants closed early, so in the end we went home.*
   - **At the end** can mean ‘in the final part’, or ‘when sth finishes’.
   - *At the end of the film, they go to live in New York.*

2. Replace the underlined words with a prepositional phrase that has the same meaning.

   - **We'll need not less than two hours to get there.** at least
   - 1. Generally, he’s very helpful. 
   - 2. I think he took my dictionary deliberately. 
   - 3. All the passengers are on the plane. 
   - 4. In the final part of the story, the old woman dies. 
   - 5. Who’s responsible for these noisy children? 
   - 6. I had to have breakfast quickly.

3. Complete the sentences with the correct preposition.

   - He made the comment _in_ private, but the journalist still reported it.
   - 1. All the buses were full, so _at_ the end we took a taxi.
   - 2. If you want to get seats on the train, you’ll have to book _on_ advance.
   - 3. _At_ first I didn’t like the book, but actually it got better.
   - 4. I found the shoes I wanted _by_ chance.
   - 5. Like many actors, he doesn’t like talking about his private life _in_ public.
**B Word(s) + preposition**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Phrase</th>
<th>Example</th>
<th>Meaning</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>access to sth</td>
<td>Do you have access to the internet?</td>
<td>the chance to use or have sth.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>make the most of sth</td>
<td>If he lets you use the gym, you must make the most of it.</td>
<td>make the best use of sth that will help you. syn take advantage of sth.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>capable of (doing) sth</td>
<td>She's capable of passing the exam if she works hard.</td>
<td>having the ability or qualities to do sth.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>involved in sth</td>
<td>He's become very involved in local politics.</td>
<td>connected with sth or taking an active part in it.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>approve of sb/sth</td>
<td>My mother doesn't approve of men who smoke.</td>
<td>think that sb/sth is good or suitable. syn disapprove of sb/sth.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>get rid of sth/sb</td>
<td>We got rid of our old sofa. They got rid of two workers.</td>
<td>throw sth away, or make yourself free of sth/sb you don't want.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>care about sth/sb</td>
<td>She cares about people. He doesn't care about money.</td>
<td>be interested in sb/sth and think it or they are important.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>take care of sb/sth</td>
<td>After their mother died, they took care of their father.</td>
<td>help and protect sb/sth. syn look after sb/sth.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>insist on (doing) sth</td>
<td>He insisted on paying for dinner.</td>
<td>say strongly that you must have or do sth, or that someone else must.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cope with sth/sb</td>
<td>I'll have more work next year, but I think I can cope with it.</td>
<td>take action successfully with a difficult situation. syn manage.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**spotlight depend on sb/sth**

1. be able to trust someone or something. syn rely on sb/sth.
   You can never depend on the trains in this country.
2. be decided or influenced by someone or something.
   We may go out — it depends on the weather.

4. Complete the sentences with the correct preposition.
   - We can look after the children.  5. Don't get rid of that lovely dress.
   - She approves of my new boyfriend.  6. Can you depend on him?
   - Is he still involved in the company?  7. Mark is capable of doing very well.
   - They can't cope with all this work.  8. I don't have access to email.
   - He insisted on doing the cooking.  9. We must take advantage of the weather.

5. Complete the word in each sentence.
   - Does she really care about Conrad?
   1. How do you cope with three children and a full-time job?
   2. I had to get rid of all my old records.
   3. We're taking care of the house while they're away.
   4. It's your only chance to speak English, so make the most of it.
   5. Do you want me to look after the dog when you go shopping?
   6. I want to go out, but it depends on the amount of homework we have to do.
   7. He wants us to get involved in making arrangements for the conference.
   8. Lucy's friends strongly disagree with her decision to marry Jack.
# I can use prefixes

## A Negative prefixes 🎧

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Adjective/opp</th>
<th>Example</th>
<th>Meaning</th>
<th>Other words</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>insecure</td>
<td>She’s very insecure about her appearance.</td>
<td>not confident about yourself.</td>
<td>informal, inflexible</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Opp secure</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>immoral</td>
<td>She stole money from my children. That’s immoral.</td>
<td>thought to be wrong or dishonest by most people.</td>
<td>impossible, impatient</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Opp moral</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>illegible</td>
<td>My doctor’s writing is illegible.</td>
<td>very difficult or impossible to read.</td>
<td>illegal</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Opp legible</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>irrelevant</td>
<td>I need some new shoes. The colour’s irrelevant.</td>
<td>not important to what you are discussing or doing.</td>
<td>irregular, irresponsible</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Opp relevant</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>unfair</td>
<td>His office is bigger than mine. It’s so unfair!</td>
<td>not treating each person in the same way or equally.</td>
<td>unpleasant, unsuccessful</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Opp fair</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>unacceptable</td>
<td>The player hit the ref. That’s unacceptable.</td>
<td>so bad that you think it should not be allowed.</td>
<td>uncertain, unkind</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Opp acceptable</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>disloyal</td>
<td>They were very disloyal to the family.</td>
<td>not supporting your friends, family, country, etc.</td>
<td>dishonest, disorganized</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Opp loyal</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>non-alcoholic</td>
<td>Is this drink non-alcoholic? Juice is non-alcoholic, beer and wine are alcoholic.</td>
<td></td>
<td>non-smoking, non-fiction</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Opp alcoholic</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Spotlight: Prefixes

A prefix is a letter or group of letters that you put at the beginning of a word to change its meaning. The prefixes in the table above have the meaning ‘not’, e.g. *insecure* = not secure, *illegible* = not legible.

---

1. **Cover the table. Write prefixes that add the meaning ‘not’ to the adjectives.**

   - immoral
   - legal
   - formal
   - regular
   - kind
   - responsible
   - smoking
   - honest
   - alcoholic
   - certain
   - secure

2. **Complete the dialogues with one word from the table.**

   - Did your company find a new manager? ~ No, we were unsuccessful.
   - Is stealing from the rich the right thing to do? ~ No, it's unsatisfactory.
   - Has it got alcohol in it? ~ No, it's unsuitable.
   - Is your age important for this kind of work? ~ No, it's unrelated.
   - Is she confident with other people? ~ No, she's quite unrelated.
   - Men and women don’t earn the same in this job, do they? ~ No, and that’s unbelievable.
   - He didn’t support his country, did he? ~ No, he was unfaithful.

3. **Complete the questions, then write your own answers, or ask another student.**

   1. Do you think life is generally fair or ____________ ?
   2. Is teenagers’ behaviour nowadays acceptable or ____________ ?
   3. Are your friends generally loyal or ____________ ?
   4. Is your handwriting legible or ____________ ?
   5. Do you think it should be legal or ____________ to drive at 17?

---

**ABOUT YOU**

---

178 LANGUAGE
Reversing an action

1. Do your jacket up
   Syn: fasten your jacket
   Opp: undo/unfasten

2. Tie your shoelace (up)
   Syn: fasten
   Opp: untie/unfasten

3. Pack your suitcase
   Opp: unpack

4. Load the van (up)
   Opp: unload

5. Plug the kettle in
   Opp: unplug

6. Wrap the parcel (up)
   Opp: unwrap

7. Lock the cupboard
   Opp: unlock

8. Get dressed
   Opp: get undressed

4. Circle two correct words in each sentence.
   a) You can wrap a) a parcel b) a present c) water.
   b) You can unload a) a ship b) a saucepan c) a lorry.
   c) You can pack a) your luggage b) a suitcase c) a handbag.
   d) You can unplug a) a room b) a printer c) a washing machine.
   e) You can untie a) a dog b) a boat c) a newspaper.
   f) You can do up a) a pair of trousers b) a hat c) a seat belt.
   g) You can unlock a) a suitcase b) a car c) a bottle.

5. Complete the table using a synonym of the verb on the left, then write the opposite.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Sentence</th>
<th>Synonym</th>
<th>Opposite</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1. Take the bags out of the car.</td>
<td>Unload the car.</td>
<td>Load the car.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2. Take the paper off the present.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3. Shut the suitcase with a key.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4. Put your clothes on.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5. Put your things in your suitcase.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6. Fasten the buttons on your shirt.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6. Fasten your shoelaces.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

6. Test yourself. Look at the pictures and cover the words. Say the words and opposites.
## 73 I can use suffixes

### A Noun suffixes

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Suffix</th>
<th>Verb</th>
<th>Noun</th>
<th>Verb</th>
<th>Noun</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>+ ment</td>
<td>judge</td>
<td>judgement</td>
<td>measure</td>
<td>measurement</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>+ ion / sion</td>
<td>react</td>
<td>reaction</td>
<td>extend</td>
<td>extension</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ation / ition</td>
<td>interpret</td>
<td>interpretation</td>
<td>define</td>
<td>definition</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>+ ance / ence</td>
<td>disappear</td>
<td>disappearance</td>
<td>prefer</td>
<td>preference</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Suffix</th>
<th>Adjective</th>
<th>Noun</th>
<th>Adjective</th>
<th>Noun</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>+ ty / ity</td>
<td>cruel</td>
<td>cruelty</td>
<td>real</td>
<td>reality</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>+ ness</td>
<td>gentle</td>
<td>gentleness</td>
<td>kind</td>
<td>kindness</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### 1 Circle the nouns.

disappear, definition, gentleness, react, prefer, kind, preference, extension, cruelty, reality, define

### 2 Look at the verbs and adjectives, which you did not circle, in Exercise 1. Write them below with the correct noun form.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>verb</th>
<th>noun</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>disappear</td>
<td>disappearance</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

1. ____________________________________________
2. ____________________________________________
3. ____________________________________________
4. ____________________________________________
5. ____________________________________________
6. ____________________________________________
7. ____________________________________________

### 3 Complete the sentences using a word from the table above.

1. She cooked for me when I was ill; I really appreciated her ________.
2. Could I have the ________ of the room so that I can order the new carpet?
3. I get very upset when I hear about ________ towards animals.
4. He lives in a dream world and doesn't want to face the ________ of the situation.
5. The police are investigating the ________ of the young man, who was last seen in 2007.
6. I told the boss I was leaving; her ________ was very surprising. She laughed!
7. She chose the wrong person for the job. That's just poor ________.
8. We're planning a new ________ for the old building; it'll be twice the size.  

### Glossary

- **judgement** an opinion you form after thinking carefully about sth (in a court of law, the judgement is the judge's official decision).
- **measurement**s the height, weight, etc. of sth.
- **reaction** sth that you do or say as a result of sth that has happened.
- **extension** a part that is added to sth to make it bigger or longer.
- **interpretation** an understanding or explanation of the meaning of sth.
- **definition** an exact statement of what a word or phrase means.
- **disappearance** a situation in which sb or sth becomes impossible to see or find.
- **preference** an interest in or liking of one thing more than another.
- **cruelty** behaviour that deliberately causes a person or animal to suffer.
- **reality** the way life really is.
- **gentleness** kind and calm behaviour towards other people.
- **kindness** behaviour that shows you care about others and want to help them.
### Adjective suffixes

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Suffix</th>
<th>Examples</th>
<th>Meaning</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>-less</td>
<td>Feel powerless in your job? Want to be powerful? Buy our POWERGUY video!</td>
<td>powerless not able to influence or control people or things. opp powerful.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-ful</td>
<td>The world's only waterproof and shockproof digital camera. Great for underwater photography!</td>
<td>waterproof not allowing water to enter. shockproof made so that it isn't easily damaged if it is hit or dropped.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-proof</td>
<td>Cool, practical, economical clothing for tropical conditions. Go to practicalguy.com</td>
<td>practical useful and suitable. economical using money, goods, etc. carefully and without wasting any. tropical from or in the hottest parts of the world.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-ical</td>
<td>Fabulous fashionable shoes — and they're machine washable too!</td>
<td>fashionable popular at the moment. washable able to be washed.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-able</td>
<td>Get our T-shirts with ridiculous or humorous slogans</td>
<td>ridiculous very silly. humorous funny; amusing.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-y</td>
<td>Try our spicy curry or fish with a creamy sauce.</td>
<td>spicy with a strong, hot flavour. creamy containing cream, or smooth like cream.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

4. Tick (✓) the correct form. Both forms may be correct.

- ridiculous ✓ ridicical  
1. waterproof ✓ proofwater  
2. careful ✓ careless  
3. creamful ✓ creamy  
4. humorful ✓ humorous  
5. practicy ✓ practical  
6. washable ✓ washless  
7. powerful ✓ powerless

5. Are these things generally good or bad? Write G or B.

- a powerful speaker G  
1. washable trousers B  
2. a shockproof watch G  
3. harmful medicine B  
4. painless medical treatment G  
5. tropical fruit B  
6. an economical car G  
7. a powerless government B

6. Complete the sentences using adjectives formed from the nouns in the box below.

spice pain practice fashion ridicule use harm humour✓ economy

- The article wasn’t supposed to be humorous, but it made me laugh all the same.
1. Don’t leave that powder there — it could be hazardous to the children.
2. The price of the meal was ruinous. I just couldn’t afford it.
3. Throw that thing away — it’s absolutely ridiculous.
4. A bike is much more economical than a car in the centre of town.
5. These shoes may be awful, but they’re incredibly uncomfortable.
6. My car uses less petrol than my sister’s, so it’s a lot more economical.
7. Is your toothache very painful?
8. I couldn’t eat the meal; it was much too harmful for me.

7. Test yourself. Look at the examples and cover the meanings. What are the meanings?
### Verb + infinitive

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Verb + infinitive</th>
<th>Example</th>
<th>Meaning</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>intend to do sth</td>
<td>We intend to leave early tonight.</td>
<td>plan or mean to do sth.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>manage to do sth</td>
<td>I managed to get a job, but it wasn’t easy.</td>
<td>succeed with sth that is often difficult.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tend to do sth</td>
<td>I tend to get up late on Sundays.</td>
<td>usually do sth, tendency n.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pretend to do or be sth</td>
<td>He pretended to be ill because he just didn’t want to go to school.</td>
<td>act in a particular way to make people believe sth that isn’t true.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>refuse to do sth</td>
<td>Why did she refuse to help you?</td>
<td>say that you won’t do sth that sb has asked you to do.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Other common verbs used in this way: expect, promise, offer, decide, hope, want, mean.

### Verb + -ing form

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Verb + -ing form</th>
<th>Example</th>
<th>Meaning</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>imagine doing sth</td>
<td>I can’t imagine working without a computer.</td>
<td>think what sth will be like.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>admit doing sth</td>
<td>He admitted taking the vasc. She denied taking his watch.</td>
<td>agree that you have done sth wrong. opp deny doing sth.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>deny doing sth</td>
<td>I don’t recall meeting them.</td>
<td>remember sth you did in the past.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>recall doing sth</td>
<td>Do you mind working late?</td>
<td>feel unhappy that you have to do sth.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>regret doing sth</td>
<td>I regret leaving school at 16.</td>
<td>feel sorry that you did sth.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Other common verbs used in this way: enjoy, avoid, keep, risk, regret, consider, suggest.

### Verb + object + infinitive

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Verb + object + infinitive</th>
<th>Example</th>
<th>Meaning</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>persuade sb to do sth</td>
<td>He persuaded me to buy a new car.</td>
<td>make sb do sth by giving them a good reason to do it.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>encourage sb to do sth</td>
<td>My sister encouraged me to have dancing lessons.</td>
<td>give sb help and support so that they feel confident to do sth.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>warn sb not to do sth</td>
<td>He warned me not to go into that area.</td>
<td>tell sb not to do sth that might be unpleasant or dangerous.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>remind sb to do sth</td>
<td>I had to remind her to post the letter.</td>
<td>help sb to remember sth that they have to do.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>enable sb to do sth</td>
<td>His map enabled me to find it.</td>
<td>make it possible for sb to do sth.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Other common verbs used in this way: want, ask, tell, beg, advise, expect, force, help, allow.

### Verb + object + preposition

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Verb + object + preposition</th>
<th>Example</th>
<th>Meaning</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>accuse sb of sth</td>
<td>The teacher accused the boy of cheating.</td>
<td>say that sb has done wrong or broken the law.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>blame sb for sth</td>
<td>They blamed the teachers for the bad exam results.</td>
<td>think or say that sb is responsible for sth bad.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>remind sb of sb/sth</td>
<td>You remind me of my dad.</td>
<td>cause sb to remember sb/sth.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>introduce sb to sb</td>
<td>I introduced Miss Anderson to my boss.</td>
<td>tell sb another person’s name when they meet for the first time.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Other common verbs used in this way: ask sb for, forgive sb for, prevent sb from (doing sth), spend sth on.
1 Cross out the verb that cannot be used in each sentence.

- They ___________ to go.
  a) wanted b) enjoyed c) refused d) intended
1. She ___________ me to do it.
   a) encouraged b) persuaded c) reminded d) pretended
2. He ___________ losing the money.
   a) managed b) admitted c) regretted d) denied
3. We ___________ to go away in the summer.
   a) hope b) enjoy c) tend d) intend
4. I don’t ___________ staying there.
   a) recall b) mind c) tend d) regret
5. Did they ___________ to spend all the money?
   a) deny b) intend c) refuse d) mean
6. They ___________ me not to go there.
   a) reminded b) accused c) persuaded d) warned

2 Circle the correct verb.

- He said he was at the meeting, but ___________ causing the trouble.
  1. The extra money I earn will ___________ me to have a holiday this year.
  2. The roads will be busy, so we ___________ to leave early.
  3. I can’t ___________ living in another country.
  4. He said it was dangerous and ___________ me not to go there.
  5. The girl behind the bar ___________ me of your sister.
  6. Actually, I don’t ___________ going to the dentist.

3 Match 1–6 with a–g.

- She suggested ___________.
  1. She accused ___________.
  2. She persuaded ___________.
  3. She denied ___________.
  4. She pretended ___________.
  5. She introduced ___________.
  6. She blamed ___________.

a) making any mistakes.
b) me to her sister.
c) to be an actress.
d) me for the mistakes.
e) going out.
f) me of lying.
g) me to go.

4 ABOUT YOU Write your answers or ask another student.

Is there anything:
1. you managed to do recently that was difficult? What?
2. you intended to do recently but didn’t? What?
3. you regret doing recently? What?
4. you have refused to do recently? What?
5. someone has persuaded you to do recently? What?
6. someone has warned you not to do recently? What?
7. someone has blamed you for recently? What?
8. someone has reminded you to do recently? What?

5 Test yourself. Cover the third column of each table and look at the verbs and examples. Can you remember the meanings?
## 75 I can use phrasal verbs

### A Grammar

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Verb</th>
<th>Example</th>
<th>Meaning</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>give up</strong> [no object]</td>
<td>They <strong>gave up</strong> when the other team scored the second goal.</td>
<td>accept you cannot do sth and so stop trying.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>go up</strong></td>
<td>Sales <strong>went up</strong> last month.</td>
<td>increase in price, level, etc. opp <strong>go down</strong>.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>run out</strong></td>
<td>My visa <strong>runs out</strong> next week.</td>
<td>come to an end.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>take after sb</strong> [object goes after the verb and particle]</td>
<td>I <strong>take after</strong> my father in looks but my mother in character.</td>
<td>look or behave like an older member of your family.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>get over sth</strong></td>
<td>She's been very ill, but she's <strong>getting over</strong> it now.</td>
<td>recover from an illness or bad experience.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>give sth away</strong> [object can go between or after the verb and particle]</td>
<td>I <strong>had a bike but I gave it away</strong>. His <strong>given away</strong> old CDs.</td>
<td>give sth to sb without wanting money for it.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>make sth up</strong></td>
<td>I couldn't remember the story, so I <strong>made something up</strong>.</td>
<td>invent sth, often sth that you pretend is true.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>switch sth on</strong></td>
<td>Could you <strong>switch the light on</strong>?</td>
<td>press sth to start electric power. opp <strong>switch sth off</strong>.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>put sth out</strong></td>
<td>They <strong>put out</strong> the fire quickly. They <strong>put it out</strong> quickly.</td>
<td>make sth stop burning, syn <strong>extinguish</strong>.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>get on with sb</strong> [verb with 3 parts, object at the end]</td>
<td>Do you <strong>get on with</strong> your brother?</td>
<td>have a good relationship with sb.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>run out of sth</strong></td>
<td>We've <strong>run out of</strong> bread.</td>
<td>finish your supply of sth.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

1. **Is the grammar in these sentences right or wrong? Write R or W.**
   - She gave away it. W
   - 1 The numbers have gone up. W
   - 2 Did he make the story up? W
   - 3 Does he take his father after? W
   - 4 Don't put it out. W
   - 5 He'll get over it. W
   - 6 You can't switch off it. W
   - 7 She couldn't do it, so she gave up. W

2. **Circle the correct answer.**
   - Prices have **gone up**, **given up**.
   - 1 He definitely takes after/gets over his dad. W
   - 2 It's not true; he made it up/took it after it. W
   - 3 Do you get on with/run out of his cousin? W
   - 4 My passport runs out/gets over soon. W
   - 5 I switched on/got over the cooker. W
   - 6 Did he give away/take after any food? W

3. **Complete the sentences.**
   - He didn't want his bike, so he gave it away. W
   - 1 The price went **up** from €5 to €6. W
   - 2 You can't smoke in here — you'll have to put that cigarette **away**. W
   - 3 Let's watch TV. Will you switch it **on**? W
   - 4 She was disappointed not to get the job, but she'll get **it**. W
   - 5 She gets **on** well **with** my parents. W
   - 6 Oh no! We've run **out** of rice. W

4. **Test yourself. Look at the meanings and cover the examples and verbs. What are the verbs?**
In the classroom

STUDENT I can't work out number seven.

TEACHER OK. Leave it out and go on with the next one.

S I can't see the board, Miss.

T Well, put your glasses on.

T How are you getting on, Sue?

S Fine, thank you.

T Could you pick up those bits of paper and put them in the bin?

T I'll give out the dictionaries, but could you put them back when you've finished?

T If you get through the exercises today, we can go over them tomorrow in class.

Glossary

work sth out find an answer to sth.
leave sth out not include sth. syn omit sth.
go on (with sth) continue (with sth). syn carry on (with sth).
pull sth on begin wearing sth.
take sth off.
get on make progress with sth you are doing.
pick sth up take hold of sth and lift it to a higher place. syn put sth down. (See spotlight.)
give sth out give one of sth to each person in a group. syn hand sth out.
pull sth back return sth to its place (see spotlight).
get through sth complete a task or activity.
go over sth examine and check sth carefully.

5 Replace the underlined words with a phrasal verb with the same meaning.

- When are you going to collect the tickets? ...pick up...
- 1 Do you want us to omit the next exercise? ____________________
- 2 Do you think we'll complete the book by the end of term? ____________________
- 3 I couldn't find an answer to the last question. ____________________
- 4 Do the exercise for homework and we'll check it on Thursday. ____________________
- 5 I asked her about her course yesterday. She's not doing very well. ____________________
- 6 Let's finish this first, then we can continue with Exercise 9. ____________________

6 Complete the sentences.

- If you don't want to do it, you can leave it out. ____________________
- 1 Could you give the books to the students, Claude? ____________________
- 2 I'd like to get Unit 5 by Friday, then go with Unit 6 on Monday. ____________________
- 3 I don't know why the dictionaries aren't there. I put them yesterday. ____________________
- 4 You had a job interview yesterday, didn't you? How did you get? ____________________
- 5 She took her boots and left them on the steps. ____________________
- 6 I couldn't read it until I put my glasses. ____________________
- 7 We're very busy this week, so I had to put the meeting to next Monday. ____________________
- 8 The suitcase was very heavy; I had to keep picking it and putting it. ____________________
I can use a range of adverbs

A Other ways of saying very

Some adverbs are used with particular adjectives or verbs to mean very, a lot, or to a large degree.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Phrase</th>
<th>Meaning</th>
<th>Other examples</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>I was <strong>bitterly disappointed</strong> with my results.</td>
<td>very disappointed.</td>
<td><strong>bitterly cold</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>He was <strong>desperately unlucky</strong> to lose his job.</td>
<td>very unlucky.</td>
<td><strong>desperately need</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Jack was <strong>seriously injured</strong> in the crash.</td>
<td>badly injured.</td>
<td><strong>seriously ill</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>He was <strong>terribly sorry</strong> he couldn't come.</td>
<td>very sorry.</td>
<td><strong>terribly sad</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>It's <strong>vitally important</strong> we remember.</td>
<td>very important.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>It's <strong>highly unlikely</strong> that she'll be late.</td>
<td>very unlikely.</td>
<td><strong>highly intelligent</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>He <strong>feels strongly</strong> that the war is wrong.</td>
<td>has a strong belief.</td>
<td><strong>strongly oppose</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Prices have <strong>risen sharply</strong>.</td>
<td>risen a lot.</td>
<td><strong>fall sharply</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>This expression is <strong>widely used</strong>.</td>
<td>used a lot.</td>
<td><strong>travel widely</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>I love Lucy, but she's <strong>completely mad</strong>.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>I <strong>completely forgot</strong> about the party.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Her first book was <strong>totally different</strong>.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>I'm not <strong>totally convinced</strong> he's innocent.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**1** Add a suitable adverb to each sentence. Show where it should go.

1. It's / important to go. **vital**
2. They're intelligent boys. __________
3. It's cold outside. __________
4. Paula's been ill. __________
5. Their profits have fallen. __________
6. We need to earn more money. __________
7. It was unnecessary to do that. __________

**2** Complete the sentences with a suitable word.

1. They were all **bitterly** disappointed to lose the match.
2. The cost of coffee has __________ sharply since last year. It's almost double now.
3. The accident happened this morning, and several people were seriously __________
4. I'm terribly __________ I completely __________ to bring my homework.
5. He __________ widely when he was in South America.
6. We both __________ strongly that the government should change its policy.
7. I'm not totally __________ that he knows what he's doing with that camera.

**3** Replace very with a different adverb in each sentence.

1. She's very sorry about the mistake. **terribly**
2. A good dictionary is very important. __________
3. It's very unlikely that he'll come. __________
4. We were very unlucky to lose the match. __________
5. It used to be quiet but it's very different now. __________
6. He was very disappointed he didn't win. __________
7. That story of the missing girl is very sad. __________
B Frequency and degree

AXEL Do you and Mac still go to concerts together regularly?
HARRY No, we rarely see each other these days. The last time was roughly a year ago.
AXEL Oh. Why's that?
HARRY Well, he lives in Watford now, which is miles away. That's mainly the reason.
AXEL But you still go to concerts, don't you?
HARRY No, actually I don't. I think I'm getting a bit old for rock concerts. Generally I just listen to music at home.
AXEL Don't you miss the excitement of live concerts?
HARRY That's partly why I don't go. I find the noise and hysteria rather annoying, actually.

Glossary

regularly • happening quite often.
rarely • not happening often. syn seldom.
roughly • about; not exactly. syn approximately.
mainly • mostly. syn largely.
actually • really (often used when you are saying the opposite of what sb expects). syn in (actual) fact.
generally • usually; most of the time. syn on the whole.
partly • to some degree but not completely. syn to some / a certain extent (to some extent I agree. or I agree to a certain extent.).

4 Same or different? Write S or D.

► The town is largely industrial. | The town is mainly industrial. ...S
1 It’s quite good. | It’s fairly good. ......
2 Generally it’s very quiet here. | On the whole it’s very quiet here. ......
3 The house is actually very nice. | The house is very nice at the moment. ......
4 It’s approximately ten kilometres. | It’s roughly ten kilometres. ......
5 We go there regularly. | We rarely go there ......
6 I partly agreed with him. | I agreed with him to some extent. ......
7 The book was rather good. | The book was pretty good. ......
8 They seldom work late. | They rarely work late. ......

5 Replace the underlined word with a different word or phrase with the same meaning.

► I go to the gym regularly. ...quite often
1 Generally I enjoyed the play. ..................
2 The students were largely Italian. ..................
3 There were roughly 30 at the party. ..................
4 We go there mainly for the skiing. ..................
5 It’s a nice flat but it’s pretty small. ..................
6 I wasn’t sure about Leo at first, but in fact he’s very nice. ..................
7 We seldom go out during the week. ..................
8 Your sister is quite tall, isn’t she? ..................

6 Test yourself. Look at the glossary words and cover the meanings. What are the meanings and synonyms?
Review: Language

Unit 68

1 Circle the word or phrase that is different.
   ► as / since / due to
   1 despite / because / in spite of 5 though / so / therefore
   2 as a result / all the same / consequently 6 in addition / moreover / however
   3 what's more / still / plus 7 so / nevertheless / however
   4 although / despite the fact that / furthermore 8 provided that / whereas / as long as

2 Complete the texts with appropriate link words.
   1 I stayed with a delightful family last summer when I was studying German in Heidelberg.
   ► Despite the fact that my German was quite basic to start with, they helped me with
   conversation, and as a (1) ____________, I made a lot of progress. And what's
   (2) ____________, by the end of my stay I felt I had made new friends. I'll go back and stay
   with them next summer (3) ____________ that they don't have other guests.
   2 The first day of the holiday was a disaster. There was a huge storm and we couldn't leave the
   hotel (4) ____________ to the bad weather. In (5) ____________, there was no electricity in the
   evening (6) ____________ the storm had brought down the power lines. (7) ____________, the
   following morning the sun came out, and things started to improve.

Unit 69

1 Complete the table.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Definition</th>
<th>Word</th>
<th>Opposite</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>► working well and quickly, and without mistakes</td>
<td>efficient</td>
<td>inefficient</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1 not done or seen or happening very often</td>
<td>r ____________</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2 just good enough, but nothing more</td>
<td>a ____________</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3 typical of the past, but not now</td>
<td>o ____________</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4 connected with the town, not the country</td>
<td>u ____________</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5 full of people</td>
<td>c ____________</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6 made by people and used instead of something natural</td>
<td>a ____________</td>
<td>natural or</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7 behaving in a bad and offensive way</td>
<td>r ____________</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8 feeling pleasure from what you have achieved</td>
<td>s ____________</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9 quite hard</td>
<td>f ____________</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10 successful and giving the result you want</td>
<td>e ____________</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Unit 70

1 Tick (√) the correct words. Be careful: one or both may be correct.
   ► We live on the edge ☑ the rear ☐ of the village.
   1 The cat was sitting underneath ☐ over ☐ the chair.
We don’t play cards very often nowadays □ these days □.
The man behind us coughed during □ throughout □ the film. It was so annoying.
We knocked on nearly every door, and now and again □ eventually □ found Lisa’s house.
She jumped down from the window beneath □ onto □ the grass.
I go there occasionally □ recently □ to get some peace and quiet.
I could see her in the distance as she was running beside □ towards □ me.
We were working hard in the lesson. Meanwhile □ In the meantime □, Darren was sitting outside, chatting to his girlfriend.

Unit 71
1 Complete the table with words from the box and their prepositions.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>a hurry ✓</th>
<th>get rid ✓</th>
<th>involved ✓</th>
<th>capable</th>
<th>insist</th>
<th>general</th>
<th>rely</th>
<th>favour of</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>take care</td>
<td>purpose</td>
<td>public</td>
<td>approve</td>
<td>depend</td>
<td>a rush</td>
<td>board</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>in</th>
<th>on</th>
<th>of</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>in a hurry</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>involved in</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Unit 72
1 Cross out the wrong word, and write the correct word at the end.

We outloaded the car and put the shopping away. unloaded.
Margo’s behaviour is completely non-acceptable.
His opinion is irrelevant; I’m going to leave anyway.
I think she’s feeling a bit dissecure – let’s look after her.
Could I have an unalcoholic drink, please?
You can disfasten your seat belt now.
My boss is very unhonest; I just don’t trust him.
I hate it when people are impatient.

Unit 73
1 Complete the dialogues.

Is it OK to put this jacket in the washing machine? – No, it isn’t washable.
He judges situations well, doesn’t he? – Yes, he has very good
Do you know what this word means? – No, I can’t give you a
How would you react if you saw a tiger? – I don’t know what my __________ would be.
That’s a woman with a lot of power. – Yes, she’s extremely
This mobile comes in grey, silver, and black. – Any colour’s OK for me; I don’t have a __________.
That’s cruel to animals. – Yes, I hate that kind of
Why are you building an __________? – We need a bigger kitchen.
Will this stuff do me any harm? – No, it’s completely
Unit 74

1. Rewrite the sentences using verbs from the box and the correct construction.

- deny ✓ accuse remind tend recall persuade pretend regret admit refuse blame

1. I don't remember meeting your parents. I don't ____________________________
2. He wouldn't leave. He ____________________________
3. Carrie said she stole the necklace. Carrie ____________________________
4. Mario said I took all the food. Mario ____________________________
5. She's sorry she moved to London. She ____________________________
6. When I see Boris I think of your brother. Boris ____________________________
7. He said the mistake was my fault. He ____________________________
8. I usually work in the evening. I ____________________________
9. Cal said he was a doctor, but he wasn't. Cal ____________________________
10. She gave me good reasons to leave. She ____________________________

Unit 75

1. One word is missing in each sentence. Where from? Write it at the end.

- I'd like to try and / through this chapter today. get
1. My brother is very like my dad, but I take my mother. ____________
2. If you don't need the money, why don't you give it? ____________
3. I don't get very well with my boss. ____________
4. If you can't answer one of the questions, just it out. ____________
5. He put his coat and ran out of the house. ____________
6. I can't work how to use this camera. ____________
7. Could you the TV on? I'd like to see the news. ____________
8. I've done my essay, but I need to go it again. ____________

Unit 76

1. Complete the sentences with a word from the box.

- seriously widely sharply totally roughly highly ✓ rather rarely strongly

He's got a PhD from Harvard; he's highly intelligent - and he's charming too.
1. Salaries have risen ____________ in the last three years.
2. I feel very ____________ about the need to improve public transport.
3. The garden is ____________ thirty metres long.
4. I didn't enjoy the food very much, and the place was ____________ expensive.
5. I'm always saying I'm going to do more exercise, but I ____________ go to the gym.
6. This kind of oil was ____________ used by farmers in the nineteenth century.
7. I fell off a wall and hurt myself, but I wasn't ____________ injured.
8. I'm ____________ convinced that better communication can change the world.
A Formal and informal English

Most words and expressions are neutral, and can be used in most situations. Occasionally we use formal language in spoken English, e.g. announcements (The play will commence in three minutes.), but more commonly in written English, e.g. business letters or official documents (Keep your receipt as proof of purchase.). Informal language is very common in spoken English, especially in conversation. Certain types of language are often informal:

- many phrasal verbs, e.g. turn sb/sth down
- uses of get, e.g. Could you get me a pen?
- many idioms, e.g. keep an eye on sth, out of the blue
- many examples of vague language, e.g. thing(s), stuff, sort of.

Glossary

neutral not having any strong qualities (so in this context, neither formal nor informal).
comence [ME. begin.
purchase [ME. the act of buying sth. purchase v.
turn sb/sth down [IN. refuse an offer.
get sth [IN. go to a place and bring sth back. syn. fetch sth.
idiom an expression in which the meaning is different from the meanings of the individual words in it. idiomatic adj.
keep an eye on sth [IN. look after sth and make sure it is safe.
out of the blue [IN. suddenly and unexpectedly.
vague not clear or definite.
sort of IN. not exactly, but partly (e.g. Are you busy? Yes, sort of.)

spotlight stuff

Stuff IN. is used to refer to something without using its name. We usually use stuff to replace uncountable nouns or plural countable nouns.

Do you need much of this stuff? (e.g. washing powder, soy sauce)
Put that stuff over there. (e.g. books, papers, files)

1 Formal, informal, or neutral? Write F, I, or N.
   ▶ get ___ 4 commence _____
   1 sort of ___ 5 vague _____
   2 purchase ___ 6 out of the blue _____
   3 stuff ___ 7 neutral _____

2 Replace the underlined word with a suitable word or phrase that has the same meaning in the context.
   ▶ I made him a good offer but he refused it. turned it down
   1 Do you want me to get your coat for you?
   2 [announcement] The film will start in five minutes.
   3 Where can I leave my clothes?
   4 [business letter] There is a discount if you buy a certain quantity.
   5 Then my parents arrived unexpectedly.
   6 Could you look after my suitcase for a minute while I get a coffee?

3 Complete the sentences.
   ▶ My brother arrived out of the blue.
   1 Do you understand? — Yes, sort _____________.
   2 I don’t know exactly where she lives, but I have a ____________ idea.
   3 Could you get some of that organic ____________ the children like to drink?
   4 ‘Keep an eye on something’ is quite a common ____________ in English.
   5 I offered him a lot of money but he still ____________ it down.
   6 The walls are ____________ of green, but it’s not a strong colour; it’s quite ____________.
**B Common exchanges**

A Hi. How's it going?
B Not bad. And you?
A Could you give me a hand?
B Yeah sure, no problem.
A What's up with Mark?
B I haven't a clue.

**4** Same or different? Write S or D.
1 Yeah | Yes S
2 no problem | nothing much
3 cheers | goodbye D
4 recently | lately S
5 late | lately D
6 I don't know | I haven't a clue
7 How's it going? | How are things?
8 What've you been up to? | What's up?

**5** Put these words and expressions in more informal English.
1 Hello. Hi
2 Wait a moment. Just a minute.
3 What's the matter? What's up?
4 I don't know. I haven't a clue.
5 How are you? How are things?
6 What've you been doing? What's been going on?
7 Thank you. Appreciate it.

**6** Complete the dialogues.
1 What's up? ~ Nothing. Why?
   A See you soon. ~ Yeah. Take care.
2 Hi. How's it going? ~ Fine, thanks. And you?
3 Could you give me a hand? ~ Sure. No problem.
4 We have to go. Hurry up. ~ OK. Just hang on a minute.
5 What've you been up to? ~ Nothing much.

**7** Test yourself. Look at the glossary words and cover the meanings. What are the meanings?
C An everyday conversation

A Do you fancy a drink?
B No, I'd better be off in a minute.
A Really? I thought you had loads of time.
B No, I've got to get to Mark's to pick up a tent.
A What for?
B It's for a mate of mine. He wants to take his kids camping this weekend.
A At this time of the year? You're joking!
B I'm not. He reckons the weather's going to be fine.
A That's nonsense. The forecast is awful.
B Oh well. If it's a disaster, they'll just have to come back home.

Glossary

fancy sth | INF want sth. SYN feel like (doing) sth.
I'd better be off | INF I have to leave now.
loads (of sth) | INF a lot of sth. SYN masses (of sth) INF.
pick sth/sb up | go and collect sth/sb.
What for? | INF Why are you doing sth? or What do you need sth for?
mate | INF a friend.
kid | INF a child.
recon | INF think.
nonsense | ideas or statements that you think are stupid or not true. SYN rubbish INF.
disaster | INF a complete failure.

Spotlight joke

A joke is something said or done to make you laugh, especially a funny short story. We use the expression you're joking or you must be joking to express surprise, when we don't believe what someone is saying.

8 Match 1–6 with a–g.

disaster  mate  loads  rubbish  fancy  kid  reckon
a  child  b  want  c  a lot  d  think  e  failure  f  nonsense  g  friend

9 Complete the dialogues with a single word.

> Do you fancy going out tonight? ~ Yes. Where shall we go?
1 Sam's going to get a snake. ~ What! You must be
2 What was the party like? ~ Terrible. An absolute
3 Are you going camping? ~ Yes, but I've got to buy a new
4 He said he had of money. ~ Don't believe him. He talks
5 I'd be off now. ~ Why? What time's your train?
6 I'm going to Sweden tomorrow. ~ Really? What?
7 Where's Leyla? ~ She's up the kids from school.
8 Do you feel going out? ~ Yes, good idea.

10 Test yourself. Look at the glossary meanings and cover the words. What are the words?
Notes

If you are writing to a stranger or you don’t know the person’s name, use the phrases on the right.

If you know the person, use Mr, Mrs, Miss, Ms, Dr, etc. and their surname.

If you know them quite well, you can use their first name.

For an informal letter to a good friend or family member, use the first name.

Note: Love (from) is not normally used by a man writing to another man.

Beginnings

Dear Sir
Dear Madam
Dear Sir or Madam

Dear Mr Wu
Dear Miss Gilberto

Dear Rosa
Dear Conrad

Dear Min Ho
Hi, Pavel

Endings

Yours faithfully
your name

Yours sincerely

(With) best wishes
Kind regards

Love (from)
All the best / Take care

Glossary

stranger
enclose sth
deposit
commence
I would be
grateful if you
could...
in particular
whether
nearby
don’t hesitate
to do sth
look forward to
sth
hearing from
you

- a person that you do not know.
- put sth in an envelope or packet with sth else.
- a sum of money which is your first payment for sth (you will pay the rest later). (You pay a deposit on or for sth.)
- to begin.
- used when you request sth.
- SYN I would appreciate it if you could...
- SYNs especially, particularly.
- if.
- not far away. SYN close by.
- don’t feel worried about doing sth.
- think with pleasure about sth that is going to happen.
- receiving your letter.

Spotlight: further, further to

Further ADJ has several meanings:
1) comparative of far: The station is further than the bank.
2) (only before a noun) more: Have you any further questions?
Further to... FML is used in letters to mention a previous letter or conversation about the same subject:
Further to my letter of 5 July, I am happy to...
Cover the letter and answer these questions.

1. Is Louise Robertson going to rent a cottage? Yes, she is.  
2. Is this the first time she has contacted Mr Ellison?  
3. Why is she sending him £50?  
4. Will she be leaving or arriving on 21 August?  
5. Are there any other things she needs to know? If so, what?  
6. Whose address did she write on the right-hand side?  
7. Whose address did she write on the left-hand side?  
8. Did she write the date? If so, where?  
9. Which beginning did she use?  
10. Which ending did she use?  
11. Could she end it 'Take care, Louise'? Why/Why not?  

Tick (√) the sentences that are correct and add a cross (X) to the sentences that are wrong.

1. If you're writing to a family member, you can end it with 'Love' and your signature. √  
2. If you begin 'Dear Maria', you can end it with 'Kind regards'.  
3. If you begin your letter 'Dear Sir', you can end it with 'With best wishes'.  
4. If you don't know the name of the person you are writing to, you begin 'Dear Sir or Madam':  
5. If you write 'All the best' at the end, you could also write 'Take care'.  
6. If you begin 'Dear Miss Periskic', you should end 'Yours faithfully'.  
7. 'Yours faithfully' is a common ending when you are writing to a stranger.  

Which words are missing where the slashes (/) are? Write them at the end.

1. Could you send me / details of the accommodation? Further  
2. I look forward / hearing / you.  
3. If there's a problem, please / hesitate / ring me.  
4. I / a photocopy / my identity card with the application form.  
5. I would be / if you / phone me about the meeting.  
6. Further / your letter / 7 April, I wish to confirm my booking.  
7. I would / it if / could help me.  
8. Please let me know / particular / there is a beach nearby.  
9. I enclose a cheque for €30 as a / for the rental of the room.  

Complete the letter.

40 Lincoln Rise, Churchfield, Yorkshire  
14 January 2008

Hot Property Rentals  
Barton St  
Weatherfield

Dear Mrs Stephens

(1) _______ to your letter of 12 January, 
I (2) _______ a cheque for £50 as a (3) _______ on Flat 7, Walsingham Buildings.  
As we agreed, my rental contract will (4) _______ on 1 February and run for one year. I would be (5) _______ if you could send me a receipt for the amount enclosed.  
I would also (6) _______ it if you could let me know (7) _______ I will be able to park in the basement of the building. If not, will I be able to find parking (8) _______?  
If you need any (9) _______ information from me, please don't (10) _______ to call me.  
Yours (11) _______  
Jurek Gorzy

Test yourself. Look at the glossary meanings and cover the words. What are the words?

STYLES OF ENGLISH 195
79 I can understand abbreviations and short forms

A Numbers and measurements 🎧

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>metric weight</th>
<th>metric length</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1 g / gm (gram) = 1000 mg (milligrams)</td>
<td>1 cm (centimetre) = 10 mm (millimetres)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1000 g = 1 kg (kilo/kilogram)</td>
<td>100 cm = 1 m (metre)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1000 kg = 1 t (tonne)</td>
<td>1000 m = 1 km (kilometre)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>metric capacity</th>
<th>money</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1 cl (centilitre) = 10 ml (millilitres)</td>
<td>UK £1 (pound) = 100 p (pence)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>100 cl = 1 l (litre)</td>
<td>penny pl. pennies (coins)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>speed</th>
<th>USA $1 (dollar) = 100 c/ct (cents)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>metric: 80 km/h (kilometres per hour)</td>
<td>non-metric: 50 mph (miles per hour)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

1 Write the correct abbreviation or symbol for each word.

- litre ___________
  1 metre ______ 5 tonne ______
  2 pence ______ 6 miles per hour ______
  3 kilometre ______ 7 centilitre ______
  4 millilitre ______ 8 kilogram ______
  9 centimetre ______ 13 gram ______
  10 milligram ______ 14 millimetre ______
  11 cents ______ 15 pound ______
  12 kilometres per hour ______ 16 dollar ______

2 Complete the sentences with an appropriate measurement or amount of money.

- For sale: 20 ___________ petrol cans at reduced prices.
  1 In Italy you can do a maximum speed of 130 ___________ on the motorway, or 81 ___________.
  2 You need a piece of card 20 ___________ thick.
  3 To make pasta for one, cook about 70–80 ___________ of spaghetti.
  4 The cheapest thing you can buy in the café is a coffee for 85 ___________.

B Shortened forms 🎧

The shortened forms in the table are used commonly in spoken English.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Short form</th>
<th>Full form / Meaning</th>
<th>Short form</th>
<th>Full form / Meaning</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>ad, advert</td>
<td>advertisement</td>
<td>paper</td>
<td>newspaper</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pub</td>
<td>public house</td>
<td>deli</td>
<td>delicatessen</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>FML, a place where</td>
<td></td>
<td>a shop or part of a</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>you can buy and</td>
<td></td>
<td>supermarket that</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>drink alcohol</td>
<td></td>
<td>sells special or</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>and meet friends.</td>
<td></td>
<td>unusual foreign</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>flu</td>
<td>influenza FML</td>
<td>TV, telly INF</td>
<td>television</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>gym</td>
<td>gymnasium</td>
<td>board</td>
<td>blackboard; notice</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>lab INF</td>
<td>laboratory</td>
<td>vet</td>
<td>veterinary surgeon,</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pop (music)</td>
<td>popular music</td>
<td></td>
<td>a doctor for</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>animals.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>fridge</td>
<td>refrigerator</td>
<td>bike</td>
<td>bicycle or motor</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>motorbike</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>plane</td>
<td>aeroplane</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
3 Write the short form of these words.

- television T⁴V, Tervas
- veterinary surgeon
- popular music
- refrigerator
- bicycle
- gymnasion
- aeroplane
- blackboard
- newspaper
- public house
- delicatessen
- laboratory

4 Complete the dialogues with shortened words from the table.

- Have you taken the cat to the _vet_ yet? ~ Yes, I’m waiting for test results from the __________.
- Could you buy some cheese from the __________? ~ I got some earlier — it’s in the __________.
- Are you still looking for a job? ~ Yes, I’m just looking at some __________ in the __________.
- Do you fancy a drink at the __________ tonight? ~ Well, I was planning to watch the __________.
- How are you? ~ I feel awful; I think I’ve got __________.

C Abbreviations

The abbreviations marked * are pronounced like words, e.g. AIDS is pronounced ‘aids’. Other abbreviations are pronounced as individual letters, e.g. BBC is pronounced ‘b-b-c’. It stands for British Broadcasting Corporation.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>NATO*</th>
<th>North Atlantic Treaty Organization</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>AIDS*</td>
<td>acquired immune deficiency syndrome (often called ‘SIDA’ in other languages)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>UEFA*</td>
<td>Union of European Football Association</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ATM</td>
<td>automatic teller machine (a cash machine)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>EU</td>
<td>the European Union</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>UN</td>
<td>the United Nations</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CV</td>
<td>curriculum vitae (a formal list of your education or work experience that you need when you apply for a job)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>UF⁴O¹</th>
<th>unidentified flying object</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>PIN*</td>
<td>personal identification number (you use this with a credit card, for instance)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>VAT</td>
<td>value added tax (a tax added to goods and services)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ISP</td>
<td>internet service provider, e.g. AOL</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DVD²</td>
<td>digital versatile disc</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IT</td>
<td>information technology</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ID card</td>
<td>identity card (a card with your name and photo which is proof of who you are)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

5 Complete the abbreviations.

- NATO is a European and North American organization.
- If you use an AT___, you’ll need your __IN.__.
- If you apply for a job, send in a C__.
- I showed my __card to the police.
- You have to pay VA___ on those goods.
- Who won the U___ A Cup last year?
- He’s good with computers; he’s in I__.
- Millions are suffering from __IDS in Africa.
- We watched a DV__ about UF___ last night.
- There are over 25 countries in the __U__.
- The __N is an international organization.
- An __SP provides access to the internet and email.

6 Test yourself. Cover the full forms and meanings in the tables in sections B and C, and look at the short forms and abbreviations. What are the full forms?
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>US English</th>
<th>British English</th>
<th>Meaning</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>candy</td>
<td>sweets</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cellphone</td>
<td>mobile (phone)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>closet</td>
<td>cupboard</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cookies</td>
<td>biscuits</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>elevator</td>
<td>lift</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>faucet</td>
<td>tap</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>French fries</td>
<td>chips</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>truck</td>
<td>lorry</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>billfold</td>
<td>wallet</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>US English</td>
<td>British English</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>apartment</td>
<td>flat</td>
<td>a set of rooms that is used as a home (apartment is sometimes used in British English for a smart holiday flat).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>attorney</td>
<td>lawyer or barrister</td>
<td>a lawyer, especially one who represents people in court (barrister in British English).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>datebook</td>
<td>diary</td>
<td>a book in which you write what you have to do in the future.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>drugstore</td>
<td>chemist</td>
<td>a shop that sells medicines and other goods.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>garbage/trash</td>
<td>rubbish</td>
<td>waste food, paper, etc. that you throw away.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>garbage/trash can</td>
<td>dustbin</td>
<td>a container outside your home, in which you put the waste.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>gasoline/gas</td>
<td>petrol</td>
<td>fuel used in a car (e.g. We stopped for more gas on the way.).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>high school</td>
<td>secondary school</td>
<td>a school for children aged 14 to 18 (a British secondary school is for children aged 11 to 16 or 18).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>mall</td>
<td>shopping mall / shopping centre</td>
<td>shops, cinemas, etc. in a large covered area.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>movie theater</td>
<td>cinema</td>
<td>a place where you see a movie (film in British English).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>purse</td>
<td>handbag</td>
<td>a bag for money, keys, etc., used especially by women (in British English, a purse is mainly used for carrying coins).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>railroad</td>
<td>railway</td>
<td>a system of trains and the tracks on which they run.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>round trip</td>
<td>return (ticket)</td>
<td>a journey to a place and back.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sidewalk</td>
<td>pavement</td>
<td>the part of the road where people walk.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>store</td>
<td>shop</td>
<td>a shop (large or small).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>subway</td>
<td>underground</td>
<td>an underground railway system.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>vacation</td>
<td>holiday</td>
<td>a period of time away from work or school, often spent travelling for pleasure.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
1. Combine words from the box to form five more American English words.

   free ✓ side cell date drug rail
   phone way ✓ walk store road book

   ➤ _freeway_ 3 ___________
   1 ____________ 4 ____________
   2 ____________ 5 ____________

2. Complete the missing letters.

   ➤ _movie_ 3 c________t
   1 g________g________
   2 s________y
   3 ___________d
   4 ___________y
   5 a________n________
   6 g_________e
   7 t________p________t________n
   8 b________d

3. Complete the American English words.

   ➤ What age do you start high _school_ in America?
   1 Put that stuff in the trash ____________.
   2 We went to the movie ____________ last night.
   3 You can buy these things at the drug ____________.
   4 Do you want French ____________ with your steak?
   5 I go on Tuesday and come back on Thursday, so I'll need a round ____________.
   6 We drove over 200 miles on the interstate ____________.

4. Replace the British English words with American English words.

   ➤ When does the _store_ open?
   1 Where are you going for your holiday?
   2 It's upstairs, so we'll need to take the lift.
   3 Where shall I put this rubbish?
   4 She keeps the note in her handbag.
   5 I put the appointment in my diary.
   6 Do we have any more sweets?
   7 He drives a big lorry.
   8 Would you like another biscuit?
   9 Could you turn on the tap?
   10 We can't use the pavement here.

5. ABOUT YOU Write your answers, or ask another student.

   1 How often do you use the subway?
   2 How often do you use the railroad?
   3 How often do you go to a movie theater?
   4 What was the last movie you saw?
   5 How often do you eat French fries?
   6 Where did you go for your last vacation?
   7 When was the last time you went to a mall?
   8 When did you leave high school?

6. Test yourself. Cover the US and British English words and look at the pictures and meanings. Can you remember the words?
Review: Styles of English

Unit 77

1 Change the underlined words to make them informal.
   ► T Hello, Suki. Hi.
   S Hey, Tomas! How (1) are you? Not bad. What’ve you been (2) doing lately?
   S Oh, nothing (3) important.
   T Listen, Suki, what’s (4) the matter with Jodie?
   S Well, she went for that job at NDC, but they (5) rejected her.
   T (6) I don’t believe you!
   S No, it’s true. She (7) thinks someone doesn’t like her there.
   T That’s (8) nonsense. Everyone likes Jodie.
   S I know. Anyway, there are (9) lots of other jobs around.
   T (10) Yes, you’re right.
   S Sorry, Tomas, (11) I have to leave now.
   T OK, see you later. (12) Bye!

2 Cross out the answer which is not correct.
   ► These are idiomatic:
   1 These verbs are formal:
   2 These mean ‘go and bring something back’:
   3 These can mean ‘goodbye’:
   4 These mean ‘wait’:
   5 These are used to express surprise:
   6 These are examples of vague language:
   a) out of the blue
   a) commence
   a) get
   a) hang on
   a) Tell me a joke
   a) stuff
   b) haven’t a clue
   b) fancy
   b) fetch
   b) hang on
   b) You’re joking
   b) keep an eye
   c) neutral
   c) purchase
   c) reckon
   c) hold on
   c) You must be joking
   c) sort of

Unit 78

1 Circle the correct word.
   ► Dear/Hi Mr Bruzone
   1 Dear Mr/Sir or Mrs/Madam
   2 Kind regard/regards
   3 Your/Yours faithfully
   4 I’d like further/further to details
   5 I close/enclose a self-addressed envelope.
   6 I’m not sure whether/weather it will be sunny.
   7 I need some information, particular/in particular the size of the garage.
   8 I look forward to hear/hearing from you.
   9 Please hesitate/don’t hesitate to contact me.
   10 All the best/All best, Jamila
1 Complete the letter.

Hot Property Rentals, Barton St, Weatherfield

25 March 2008

Dear Mr. Duerk

(1) ___________ to your letter of 23 March, I am writing to confirm that I have received your cheque for £90 as a deposit on Sunnybank Villa, South Stoke, for two weeks (2) ___________ 1 July.

You asked for (4) ___________ details about the cottage; it has four bedrooms, two bathrooms, a kitchen, a sitting room, and a small garden. You have parking (5) ___________ , about 30 m from the front door.

I would be (6) ___________ if you could let me know a few days before your visit (7) ___________ you will be using all four bedrooms so that I can let the cleaner know. I would also (8) ___________ it if you could send me the balance of £345 at least four weeks before your arrival.

Please don’t (9) ___________ to contact me if you have any (10) ___________ questions. I look (11) ___________ to seeing you at Sunnybank Villa in July.

Yours (12) ___________,

Judy Kelveton

Judy Kelveton

Unit 79

1 What do these abbreviations stand for?

1 EU = European Union
2 UN = United Nations
3 PIN = personal identification number
4 VAT = value added tax
5 CV = curriculum vitae
6 ISP = internet service provider
7 IT = information technology

2 Can you shorten these words? If “Yes”, what is the short form?

Yes: delicatessen, supermarket, refrigerator
No: veterinary surgeon, washing machine, advertisement, influenza

Unit 80

1 Complete the table with nine more pairs of British and American English words from the box.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>British English</th>
<th>American English</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>sweets</td>
<td>candy</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>garbage</td>
<td>drugstore</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>biscuit</td>
<td>candy</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>lift</td>
<td>diary</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>truck</td>
<td>rubbish</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pavement</td>
<td>cookie</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>chemist</td>
<td>gasoline</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>elevator</td>
<td>datebook</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>lorry</td>
<td>closet</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>petrol</td>
<td>faucet</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tap</td>
<td>wardrobe</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
## Vocabulary building

All the words in **bold** are in the units.

### 1 Verb and nouns

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Verb</th>
<th>Noun</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>avoid</td>
<td>avoidance</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>approve</td>
<td>approval</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>breathe</td>
<td>breathing</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>celebrate</td>
<td>celebration</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>communicate</td>
<td>communication</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>consider</td>
<td>consideration</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>contain</td>
<td>container</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>criticize</td>
<td>criticism</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>decorate</td>
<td>decoration</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>disapprove</td>
<td>disapproval</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>divide</td>
<td>division</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>evaluate</td>
<td>evaluation</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>exhibit</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>govern</td>
<td>government</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>interrupt</td>
<td>interruption</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>investigate</td>
<td>investigation</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>involve</td>
<td>involvement</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>kill</td>
<td>killing</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>propose</td>
<td>proposal</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>recognize</td>
<td>recognition</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>refer</td>
<td>removal</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>remove</td>
<td>requirement</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>require</td>
<td>shot</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>shoot</td>
<td>trade</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>trade</td>
<td>trade, trading</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### 2 Adjectives and verbs

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Adjective</th>
<th>Verb</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>amusing/amused</td>
<td>amuse</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>amazing/amazed</td>
<td>amaze</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>complicated</td>
<td>complicate</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>concerned</td>
<td>concern</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cracked</td>
<td>crack</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>delighted</td>
<td>delight</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>depressed/depressing</td>
<td>depress</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>devoted</td>
<td>devote</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>frightening/frightened</td>
<td>frighten</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>irritated/irritated</td>
<td>irritate</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>repeated</td>
<td>repeat</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### 3 Adjectives and nouns

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Adjective</th>
<th>Noun</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>accidental</td>
<td>accident</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>allied</td>
<td>ally</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>anxious</td>
<td>anxiety</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>artistic</td>
<td>artist</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>basic</td>
<td>basis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>determined</td>
<td>determination</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>disgusting</td>
<td>disgust</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>electrical</td>
<td>electrician</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>mysteriously</td>
<td>mystery</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>national</td>
<td>nation</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>proud</td>
<td>pride</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>regional</td>
<td>region</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sexual</td>
<td>sex</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>suspicious</td>
<td>suspicion</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sympathetic</td>
<td>sympathy</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>thick</td>
<td>thickness</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>traditional</td>
<td>tradition</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>valuable</td>
<td>value</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>wealthy</td>
<td>wealth</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>willing</td>
<td>willingness</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### 4 Nouns, verbs, and adjectives

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Noun</th>
<th>Verb</th>
<th>Adjective</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>contrast</td>
<td>contrast</td>
<td>contrasting</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>embarrassment</td>
<td>embarrass</td>
<td>embarrassing</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>entertainment</td>
<td>entertain</td>
<td>entertaining</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>disappointment</td>
<td>disappoint</td>
<td>disappointed</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>imagination</td>
<td>imagine</td>
<td>imaginary</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>infection</td>
<td>infect</td>
<td>infections/infected</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>impression</td>
<td>impress</td>
<td>impressive</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>preparation</td>
<td>prepare</td>
<td>prepared</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>relation</td>
<td>relate</td>
<td>related</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sailing, sailor</td>
<td>sail</td>
<td>sailing</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>separation</td>
<td>separate</td>
<td>separate</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>swelling</td>
<td>swell</td>
<td>swollen</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>variation</td>
<td>vary</td>
<td>varied</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
**Answer key**

### Unit 1

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>1 gist</th>
<th>2 identify</th>
<th>3 construct</th>
<th>4 foreign</th>
<th>5 context</th>
<th>6 translate</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
<td>guess</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3</td>
<td>recognize/know</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>1 repetition</th>
<th>2 pronunciation</th>
<th>3 explanation</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
<td>chat</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>1 study it again</th>
<th>2 successful</th>
<th>3 try something</th>
<th>4 make</th>
<th>5 a way of doing something</th>
<th>6 an informal</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>1 discussion</th>
<th>2 opportunity</th>
<th>3 chat</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>

### Unit 2

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>1 encouragement</th>
<th>2 improving</th>
<th>3 accurately</th>
<th>4 frustrating</th>
<th>5 motivation</th>
<th>6 enthusiastic</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
<td>getting better</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>5 accurately</td>
<td></td>
<td>6 is aware of</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3</td>
<td>progress</td>
<td>7 expand</td>
<td></td>
<td>4 obvious</td>
<td></td>
<td>8 frustrating</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>4 expanded</td>
<td></td>
<td>5 appropriate/right</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>4 contain</td>
<td></td>
<td>5 aim</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>1 detail</th>
<th>2 inappropriate</th>
<th>3 complicated/complex</th>
<th>4 contain</th>
<th>5 expanding</th>
<th>6 specialized</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>7 includes</td>
<td>8 range</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

6 **Answers from a Polish person**

I'm learning English at the moment. My goal is to speak it fluently. I want to expand my vocabulary and be able to speak on a wide range of topics. I would like to learn complex structures and specialized vocabulary relevant to my job.

### Unit 3

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>1 instance</th>
<th>2 selection</th>
<th>3 build, provide, related</th>
<th>4 offending</th>
<th>5 symbols, syllable</th>
<th>6 idiom, entry</th>
<th>7 collocation</th>
<th>8 stress</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>1 S</th>
<th>2 D</th>
<th>3 S</th>
<th>4 D</th>
<th>5 D</th>
<th>6 S</th>
<th>7 S</th>
<th>8 S</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>3 1 error, do sth wrong, fault</th>
<th>2 two</th>
<th>3 informal</th>
<th>4 no, it's informal</th>
<th>5 / gai /</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>6 a) correct</td>
<td></td>
<td>b) not correct (it should be 'My dad earns a lot of money in his job.' )</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Unit 4

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>1 full stop</th>
<th>2 colon</th>
<th>3 hyphen</th>
<th>4 brackets</th>
<th>5 question mark</th>
<th>6 exclamation mark</th>
<th>8 apostrophe</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>2 comma</th>
<th>5 much</th>
<th>6 quotation marks, apostrophe, comma</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>3 question mark</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>4 apostrophe</th>
<th>5 colon</th>
<th>6 brackets</th>
<th>7 hyphen, dash</th>
<th>8 quotation marks, apostrophe, comma</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>9 separate/divide</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>10 interrupt</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>11 connect/join</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>12 alternative</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

5 'Comma' and 'full stop' are both punctuation marks. 'p.m.' is an abbreviation. 'Omit' and 'leave out' mean the same thing. 'Join' and 'connect' mean the same thing. 'Information' and 'details' mean the same thing. 'Separate' and 'divide' mean the same thing.

6 1 'She' needs a capital letter (not a small letter).

2 A comma is missing after 'tall'.

3 A preposition is missing between 'in' and 'on'.

4 A colon is missing after 'choices'.

5 A comma is missing after 'arrived'.

6 An apostrophe is missing after 'boyfriend' and before 's'.

7 Commas are missing before and after 'fortunately'.
Unit 5
1. eyebrows 5. stubble
2. fattish 6. clean-shaven
3. scar 7. in good shape
4. broad shoulders
2. 1D 2S 3D 4S 5D 6D 7S 8S 9D
3. 1. shape 5. built
2. bald 6. skinny
3. clean 7. skinned
4. shoulders 8. scar
4. Answers from an Italian person
   1. My mother.
   2. My father.
   3. My cousin.
   4. My brother.
   5. My sister.
   7. My whole family is dark-skinned.
   8. My boyfriend has a scar on his neck.
6. 1F 2T 3F 4F 5T 6F 7F 8T
7. 1. hair, appearance 4. smooth, rough
   2. tell, expecting 5. slim/slender
   3. wrinkles 6. tell, tan

Unit 6
1. IN 2N 3P 4P 5P 6B 7N 8B
2. 1. energy 5. energetic
   2. responsible 6. aggressive
   3. generous 7. patient
   4. cheerful 8. tolerant
3. 1f 2a 3g 4h 5e 6b 7i 8d
4. honest dishonest responsible irresponsible lazy hard-working generous mean ambitious unambitious self-confident insecure honest honesty tolerant tolerance aggressive aggression arrogant arrogance generous generosity patient patience
5. 1 hide 4. moody
   2. sympathetic 5. insensitive
   3. sensitive 6. emotions
6. 1 mood 4. sympathetic
   2. upset 5. in
   3. supportive 6. hurt

Unit 7
1. 1. anxious 5. heartbroken
   2. furious 6. fed up
   3. astonished 7. scared stiff
   4. thrilled 8. kissed/kissed
2. 1. delighted 4. amazed
   2. miserable 5. jealous
   3. terrified
3. Answers from a Colombian person
   1. I'd be amazed as I don't usually study for exams!
   2. I'd be delighted for him; after all, he is my best friend.
   3. I'd be miserable, but everything has to end some time, so I would be fine after a while.
   4. I'd be furious and would probably react violently.
   5. I'd be envious of my friends who could go out.
   6. I'd be heartbroken and would get another girlfriend.
   7. I'd be anxious as it is always hard to speak in front of people.
   8. I'd be proud that I actually got into the plane in the first place.
5. 1 hide 4. moody
   2. sympathetic 5. insensitive
   3. sensitive 6. emotions
6. 1 mood 4. sympathetic
   2. upset 5. in
   3. supportive 6. hurt

Unit 8
1. a close friend, get on well with someone, make friends, keep in touch, depend on someone
2. 1 reliable 4. disloyal
   2. depend on 5. friendship
   3. antisocial 6. close
3. 1 He's friendly with Ruben.
   2. She never keeps in touch. / She doesn't keep in touch.
   3. I don't get on with my father.
   4. I made friends with her at university. / We made friends at university.
   5. I can rely on my boss.
   6. Donna's an old friend.
5 1 in 4 in
2 out 5 went
3 get 6 get
6 1 argue, row 3 split, regrets
2 know, common 4 realize, go out
7 1 another 6 split
2 common 7 go
3 relationship 8 regretted
4 wrong 9 realized
5 argument/row

Unit 9
1 1 an only child 5 get divorced
2 half-sister 6 adopt a child
3 foster parents 7 single parent
4 stepfather 8 bring somebody up
2 1 S 2 D 3 S 4 D 5 D 6 D
3 1 brought 4 single
2 only 5 divorced
3 half
4 Answers from a Spanish person
1 I was brought up in Salamanca, in Spain.
2 I’ve got a younger sister.
3 No, I don’t have any half-brothers or
   sisters.
4 One of my friends is a single parent.
5 One of my colleagues has recently got
divorced.
5 1 ancestors 4 relations
2 looks like 5 originally
3 emigrated 6 member
6 1 related 4 member, like
2 royal, queen 5 after
3 previous
7 Answers from a Japanese person
1 No, I’m not related to anyone famous.
2 Yes, we have a royal family. The current
   monarch is Emperor Akihito.
3 Previous generations of my family have
   lived in Kyoto and Osaka in Japan.
4 I’m often told that I look like my
   grandmother.
5 I take after my dad. We’re both good with
   our hands.

Unit 10
1 1 anniversary 8 honeymoon correct
2 I’ve chosen it 9 speech
3 traditional 10 guest
4 civil 11 ceremony
5 bridesmaid 12 reception
6 celebrate correct 13 religion
7 wedding
2 1 groom 5 after
2 bridesmaid 6 best man
3 chosen 7 reception
4 guests 8 husband and wife
3 1 go on your honeymoon
2 drink a toast
3 wish someone a happy marriage
4 make a speech
5 bride and groom
6 celebrate your anniversary
7 a religious ceremony
8 the best man
9 a wedding reception
4 1 choose, civil 6 guests
2 best 7 traditional, make
3 bridesmaids 8 toast
4 rings 9 couple, honeymoon
5 reception 10 celebrate
5 Answers from a Norwegian person
1 Yes, you can choose either.
2 Yes, he does, and the bride has a best
   woman.
3 Sometimes younger family members act
   as bridesmaids.
4 Yes, they do.
5 Yes. The wedding traditionally takes place
   in the late afternoon, and there’s often a
   sit-down meal after that.
6 It could be any number.
7 Yes, very much so. The best man, best
   woman, bridegroom, bride’s father, and
   sometimes the bride all make speeches.
   After that, anyone else who wants to
   speak can do so, and some guests write a
   song which is performed by all the guests
   for the couple.
8 Yes, they do.
9 Yes, normally the day after.
10 Yes, they do.
7 1 widower 5 inherit
2 gravestone 6 death
3 funeral 7 cemetery
4 bury 8 coffin
8 1 died 4 buried, cremated
2 will, gravestone 5 widow, mourner
3 funeral, burial 6 grave, coffin
9 1 of 5 funeral
2 in 6 buried
3 widow 7 will
4 death 8 inherited

ANSWER KEY 205
Unit 11

2 1 soaking 6 drops
2 rainbow 7 drizzled
3 mild 8 heatwave
4 bitterly 9 muggy
5 frost
4 1 predictable 6 environment
2 disappear 7 pollution
3 famine 8 liquid
4 harmful 9 disease
5 atmosphere 10 climate

5 1 B 2 G 3 B 4 B 5 G 6 B 7 B 8 B

6 1 affect 5 melting
2 unpredictable 6 liquid
3 the environment 7 disappearing
4 human 8 atmosphere

7 1 extreme, climate
2 liquid, solid
3 polluted, affects/affected
4 predict, rise
5 global, disappearing
6 spread
7 Pollution, harmful
8 famine

8 Answers from a Polish person
1 I'm quite worried about global warming, but what worries me most is the fact that
scientists and politicians talk about this problem a lot, but nothing is being done
about it.
2 We don't have rainforests in Poland.
3 Summers have become warmer and
winters are milder now. Also, summer
starts earlier, almost right after winter, so
sometimes it seems as if we haven't had
spring.
4 The changing of natural habitats, the
construction of roads and buildings, and
the growth of industry are all harming
the environment.
5 I think industrial pollution is probably
most common in Poland.

Unit 12

3 N 2 Y 3 Y 4 Y 5 N 6 Y 7 N 8 Y
9 N 10 N

4 1 on the surface 5 stream
2 lake 6 drowned
3 capsized 7 shallow
4 width 8 floods
5 1 burst 5 lake
2 caused 6 capsized
3 deep 7 sink
4 floating 8 drowned

6 1 horizon 6 shore
2 rock 7 harbour
3 beach 8 cave
4 cliff 9 coast
5 ship 10 bay

7 1 rough 4 sandy
2 wave 5 steep
3 protects 6 on

8 Answers from a Polish person
1 I'm quite worried about global warming, but what worries me most is the fact that
scientists and politicians talk about this problem a lot, but nothing is being done
about it.
2 We don't have rainforests in Poland.
3 Summers have become warmer and
winters are milder now. Also, summer
starts earlier, almost right after winter, so
sometimes it seems as if we haven't had
spring.
4 The changing of natural habitats, the
construction of roads and buildings, and
the growth of industry are all harming
the environment.
5 I think industrial pollution is probably
most common in Poland.

Unit 14

1 volcanic eruption
2 tidal wave
3 surrounding land
4 starve to death
5 violent storm

2 1 destruction 4 surroundings
2 violence 5 damage
3 eruption

3 1 hurricane, destroyed, damaged, disaster
2 drought, crops, starve
3 erupted, ground, lava
4 sudden, violent, typhoon
Unit 15

1 1 leopard 4 gorilla 7 snake
2 elephant 5 whale 8 shark
3 eagle 6 spider 9 monkey

2 eagle, bee, mosquito
1 leopard, elephant, lion, tiger, camel, monkey
2 fly, bee, mosquito 5 tiger
3 gorilla, bear 6 leopard
4 elephant 7 eagle

4 1 F 2 T 3 F 4 T 5 F 6 F

5 1 survival 4 poisonous
2 expectancy 5 harmful, harmless
3 weight

6 1 survive 3 hunt 5 up
2 average 4 sting 6 vary

7 1 calf 5 rat 8 herd
2 mice 6 frog 9 turkey
3 goats 7 male 10 cattle
4 donkey

8 1 horse 4 calf 7 donkey
2 goat 5 frog 8 turkey
3 bull 6 mouse

9 Answers from an Italian person
1 In Italy, people eat horse, calf, turkey, donkey, cow, and frog.
2 People keep horses for sport and hobbies. People keep goats for their milk.
Not many people keep bulls. Donkeys are often kept in zoos.
People use mice for animal testing.

Unit 16

1 1 papaya 3 thyme 5 stone
2 spinach 4 sweetcorn

2 In Britain
artichoke C, beetroot C, fennel R, chickpeas C, celery R, broccoli C

3 1 plum 3 apricot 5 avocado
2 coconut 4 grapefruit

4 Answers from a British person
papaya Yes, but not much
coconut Yes, but not much
raspberries Yes
passion fruit Yes, but not much
plums Yes
basil Yes
parsley Yes
chickpeas Yes, but not much
asparagus Yes
artichoke Yes, but not much
sweetcorn Yes
fennel Yes, but not much

6 1 calf 7 oyster
2 lobster 8 liver
3 rabbit 9 veal
4 squid 10 sea bass
5 kidney 11 mussels
6 trout 12 salmon

7 Answers from a German person
1 I think most Germans would like to eat a nice piece of veal.
2 I think salmon is the most popular fish in Germany.
3 I don’t eat seafood, but I think it would be crab.
4 I don’t eat any seafood because I don’t like the taste of it very much.
5 I would never eat liver or kidney because I don’t like to eat the insides of animals.
6 Out of the five fish, the one I’m least likely to eat is carp.

Unit 17

1 1 B 2 B 3 G 4 B 5 B 6 G 7 G

2 1 on 4 of
2 on 5 on
3 up 6 of

3 1 plenty 4 diet
2 exercise 5 waste
3 cut 6 keep

5 1 peel 5 boil
2 chop 6 fry
3 add 7 bake
4 mash 8 roast

6 1 recipe, ingredients 4 bake, oven
2 add 5 flour
3 pan, dish 6 stock, stir
**Unit 18**

1. afford
2. discount/reduction
3. reduced
4. sales
5. bargain
6. change
7. receipt
8. refund
9. scratch, off
10. sales

**Answers from a Japanese person**

1. I don’t always look for a bargain but I’m very happy when I find one.
2. I would ask the shop assistant whether they have another one in stock.
3. I check the number of notes, but I don’t check the number of coins.
4. I often wait for the sales. I usually buy my clothes then.
5. I don’t usually take things back or ask for a refund, but once the heel came off a pair of boots a few weeks after I had bought them, so I did take those back.

4. 1. €1,000,000.
2. €250,000.
3. Six months.
4. She didn’t live there, and she sold it for less money.
5. Over €5,000.
6. Yes (to the credit card company).

5. 1. It’s a huge house.
2. The house is valued at £2,000,000. / The value of the house is £2,000,000.
3. Rani is broke.
4. I don’t own the flat.
5. Her shoes cost a fortune.
6. Gisela owes €5,000.

6. 1. amount, well
2. broke
3. worth
4. huge/massive

**Unit 19**

1. fell asleep
2. fast asleep
3. nightmare
4. go / get to sleep
5. went off
6. overslept
7. awake
8. yawning
9. pyjamas, snores

4. have a nap, sleep like a log, suffer from insomnia, have a restless night, a heavy sleeper, on my mind

5. 1. nap, habit
2. like a log
3. suffer from
4. restless
5. mind
6. disturbs, heavy
7. exhausted
8. lack

**Unit 20**

1. 1. infection
2. bandage
3. thoroughly
4. wound
5. blood
6. symptom
7. temporarily
8. develop
9. burn
10. running
11. covered
12. prevent

4. 1. F
2. T
3. F
4. T
5. 5T
6. 6T
7. 7F
8. 8T
9. 9F
10. T

5. 1. I slipped on the ice and fell over.
2. I know he slipped, but did he fall backwards or forwards?
3. He passed out, and when he came round he didn’t know where he was.
4. Nobody was killed, but three people were injured in the accident.
5. She banged her head on the door and fell to the floor.
6. My finger was bleeding so I put a dressing on it.

**Unit 21**

1. steering wheel
2. door handle
3. windscreen wiper
4. gear lever
5. number plate
6. wing mirror

2. 1. O
2. 1
3. 4O
4. 5I
5. 6I
6. 7O
7. 8I
8. 9O

3. 1. brake
2. clutch
3. accelerator
4. boot
5. bonnet
6. headlights
7. mirror
8. windscreen wipers
9. horn

5. 1. past
2. faster
3. backwards
4. advice
5. direction
6. instead

6. 1. prepared
2. limit, close
3. skidded
4. watch
5. keep
6. rather

7. **Answers from a British person**

1. I know these things, but it’s useful to be reminded of them.
2. Usually I do, but I accelerate quickly to overtake.
3. No, not always. In supermarket car parks I go in forwards, then it’s easier to put things in the boot.
4. Yes. I’m afraid so – usually on motorways.
5. I know what I’m supposed to do, but in an emergency I might panic and forget.
6 We don’t have much snow or ice in the south of England, so I don’t make preparations for bad weather.

Unit 22

1 1 B 2 2 G 3 3 B 4 4 G 5 5 B 6 6 G 7 7 B
2 1 due 5 meant, held
2 connecting 6 get
3 trouble, delayed 7 pick
4 cancelled 8 warning

3 Answers from a British person
1 Trains are often delayed, because of work to repair the track.
2 I have never missed a train or a plane (but I’ve often missed the ferry to France).
4 get stuck, end up, rush hour, traffic jam, stop off, on the way, the wrong way, hire a car
5 1 trip 4 rent/hire
2 traffic jam 5 nightmare
3 overnight 6 via
6 1 hired/rented 3 stuck, heavy
2 stop, way 4 trips

7 Answers from a British person
1 I hired a car in Germany when my boyfriend came to visit me so we could go to the coast.
2 On really long journeys, I like to stop off somewhere to have a break, but mostly I prefer to get from A to B as quickly as possible, so long as it’s not dangerous.
3 I get stuck in traffic in Headington, on the outskirts of Oxford, every evening on my way home.
4 I sometimes go on day trips to London or Bath.

8 1 ambulance 5 occur
2 vehicle 6 block
3 serious 7 avoid
4 emergency 8 collide
9 1 injured 4 skidded
2 vehicles 5 emergency services
3 collided with 6 occurred
10 1 blocking 3 serious 5 broke down
2 skidded 4 lane 6 injured

Unit 23

1 1 underwear 6 necklace
2 material 7 blouse
3 sleeve 8 earrings
4 tights 9 vest
5 suede 10 button

2 1 T 2 T 3 T 4 F 5 T 6 F 7 F 8 F 9 T
10 T

3 Underwear: vest, slip, bra
Jewellery: bracelet, ring, necklace, earrings
Material(s): cotton, leather, suede, silk
Clothes: skirt, waistcoat, cap, blouse

4 1 ring 5 leather, silk
2 bracelet 6 neck
3 belts 7 sleeves
4 denim 8 material

5 Answers from a Polish person
▶ No, I don’t think I’ve ever worn a cap.
1 Yes, I wear a ring on my middle finger.
2 I wear a bracelet on my right wrist.
3 I’ve got four leather belts.
4 I’ve got seven pairs of jeans but I rarely wear them.
5 All of my shoes, boots, handbags, and belts are made of leather. I’ve got a few silk scarves, pyjamas, and pillowcases.
6 Yes, I’ve got lots of V-neck sweaters, in various colours.
7 Yes, I often wear short sleeves.
8 My favourite material is linen.

7 1 matches 5 suits
2 unfashionable 6 very good
3 outfit 7 accessories
4 latest, style 8 neutral

8 1 matching
2 elegant/stylish/fashionable
3 latest
4 suit
5 versatile
6 transforms
7 accessories
8 outfit

Unit 24

1 1 The dentist 6 The dentist
2 The tooth 7 1
3 I 8 1
4 The dentist 9 The tooth
5 I 10 1

2 1 look 4 filling/check-up
2 surgery 5 painful, chew
3 have 6 take

3 Answers from an Italian person
▶ I don’t have a check-up very often – about once a year.
1 I don’t look forward to going to the dentist because I find it very scary.
2 My dental surgery is in a very nice, modern building with lots of rooms.
3 I had toothache last month.
4 About two years ago.
5 It's not normally painful when I bite or chew my food.
6 I can’t remember the last time a dentist took one of my teeth out.

Unit 25

1 1 consultant 6 urgent
2 immediately 7 well enough
3 recover 8 successful
4 patient 9 benefit
5 straightaway 10 surgeon
2 1 patient 5 surgeon
2 specialist 6 nurse
3 patient 7 patient
4 patient 8 nurse
3 1 consultant 7 risks
2 tests 8 successful
3 operation 9 enough
4 urgent 10 get over
5 straightaway 11 take care
6 into

4 Answers from a German person
1 Yes, I had my tonsils removed in 1997.
2 Yes, I visited my mum in hospital when she had an operation on her ankle a few years ago.
3 Nurses are there to take care of you and families are there to support you.
4 Yes, you can see a specialist straightaway in Germany if you want to. Waiting times are minimal.
5 No, you can go directly to a specialist.
6 It depends on the operation. If it’s a minor operation, people go home.

Unit 26

1 1 needle 5 a hammer
2 scissors 6 a drill
3 screwdriver 7 Sellotape
4 rope 8 screw
2 1 tools
2 scissors, sew, cotton/thread
3 stick, glue
4 string
5 screwdriver, tighten
6 hole
7 nail
8 tied
4 These are possible
1 fix, repair
2 faulty, not working
3 remove, replace
4 lamp, light bulb
5 is out of order, isn’t working properly
6 leaking, faulty
5 1 stains 6 working

2 fixed 7 repaired
3 decorate 8 properly
4 repair 9 leaking
5 cracked 10 remove

Unit 27

1 1 dust 3 grease
2 muddy 4 vacuum
2 1 Sweep 6 mop, bucket
2 vacuum cleaner 7 Dust, polish
3 up 8 wipe
4 cloth 9 sweep
5 Do 10 Throw

3 Answers from a Colombian person
1 I do the washing up and I clean my room.
2 Every other week I have to clean the kitchen or the toilet.
3 If I clean the toilets my housemates will clean the rest of the house.

Unit 28

1 1 fringe 5 parting
2 scissors 6 trim
3 hairstyle 7 colour
4 hairdryer 8 blow-dry
2 1 Could you colour it for me, please?
2 Sasha is letting her hair grow.
3 I’d like a fringe and a parting on the right.
4 I’d like a cut and blow-dry, please.
5 I want to keep the same hairstyle, please.
6 She’s going to have/get her hair trimmed.

3 Answers from a Spanish person
1 Yes, I’m letting my hair grow longer.
2 I had my hair cut about two months ago.
3 I don’t have a fringe. I have a parting in the middle.
4 I go to a different hairdresser’s every time.
5 My mum and my sister have their hair coloured.

Unit 29

1 1 filthy 4 whistle
2 litter 5 graffiti
3 pavement 6 depressing
2 1 dirty 5 floors
2 quickly 6 money, food
3 walk 7 lips
4 ground 8 pictures/writing
3 1 litter 4 hurry/rush
2 subway 5 graffiti
3 wonder 6 depressing
5 1 S 2 S 3 D 4 S 5 D 6 S 7 S 8 D
6 1 suburb 2 surrounded, shame/pity

210 ANSWER KEY
3 local/handy
4 handy/convenient
5 disadvantage/drawback
6 ideal

7 Answers from a Japanese person
1 The area where I live is built-up. I’d like to live in the country where I could have a nice garden.
2 My home is surrounded by other houses.
3 There are a few convenience stores and a small supermarket in the area.
4 It’s not handy at all! The nearest bus stop is 15 minutes’ walk away and the nearest train station is a 15-minute bike ride away. Wherever you go, it takes quite a while.
5 One of the disadvantages of where I live is that there is no park nearby where children can play or where you can go for a walk.

Unit 30
1 1 impressive 4 attic 7 currently
2 cellar 5 basement 8 feature
3 separate 6 spacious
2 1 basement 3 hall 5 passage
2 corridor 4 drive 6 lawn
3 1 enormous 4 staircase
2 store 5 leads
3 tiny 6 convert
4 1 detached 4 leads 7 huge
2 currently 5 cellar 8 wall
3 drive 6 store 9 convert
5 1 features 4 storage
2 chimney 5 bricks
3 original 6 roof
6 Answers from a British person
1 We don’t have shutters on our windows.
2 We do have a lawn. We sit out on it when the weather is warm.
3 Yes, there’s a small room we use for storage and a children’s bedroom.
4 We haven’t got a basement or a cellar, but we have got a garage where we store our bikes and the dustbins.
5 There’s a drive in front of the house.
6 Most of the rooms are quite spacious but the spare room is tiny.

Unit 31
1 1 boot 5 wooden 9 gold
2 concrete 6 silver 10 pipe
3 tyre 7 wooden 11 metal
4 woollen 8 plastic
2 1 silver, gold 4 wood, metal
2 wood, plastic 5 plastic, wood, cardboard
3 plastic, metal 6 iron, steel, concrete
4 1 pointed 6 circular 11 square
2 L-shaped 7 round 12 parallel
3 curved 8 circle 13 diamond
4 rectangle 9 triangle 14 star-shaped
5 vertical 10 horizontal
5 1 oval 4 square 7 curved
2 rectangular 5 triangular 8 straight
3 round 6 pointed
6 1 a rectangular table
2 a curved needle
3 pointed shoes
4 a triangular handbag
5 an oval mirror
6 a star-shaped box

Unit 32
1 1 notice 5 glanced at
2 see 6 can see
3 look 7 overheard
4 watch 8 hear
2 1 catch 5 looked
2 can, sounds 6 glanced/looked
3 staring 7 observant
4 seem/appear 8 disappeared
4 1 stinks 3 bland 5 touched
2 damp 4 like 6 rubbed
5 1 like, like 4 touch 7 smell
2 tapping 5 tapped 8 flavour, taste
3 Press 6 grabbed

Unit 33
1 1 five
2 the background
3 no
4 yes
5 yes
6 a painting
7 in the distance/background
8 on the right-hand side
9 bright
10 on the left-hand side
2 1 no 4 dark
2 work 5 see
3 feeling 6 light
3 1 You can see it in the distance.
   2 He's lying in the bottom left-hand corner.
   3 Is it on the right-hand side of the painting?
   4 They're sitting in the centre of the drawing.
   5 There are some trees in the top left-hand corner.

4 1 industrial 4 painting
   2 illustrate 5 even
   3 warmth 6 shade

5 Answers from a Polish person
   1 Gabriela Trykler.
   2 Yes, in 1995.
   3 It's an abstract painting.
   4 I like the many different ways I can interpret it, depending on my mood. I also like the colours.
   5 No, I don't.

Unit 34

1 1 Yes
   2 No
   3 Yes
   4 Yes

2 1 drag
   2 tore up
   3 folded
   4 shake

3 1 sneeze
   2 breath
   3 burst out laughing
   4 breathe in
   5 whisper
   6 sigh

4 1 Yes
   2 No
   3 No
   4 Yes

5 Answers from an Italian person
   1 Yesterday I heard my neighbours' baby screaming in the night because she was hungry.
   2 I last burst out laughing when I went to a comedy show.
   3 I last whispered to someone when I was visiting a museum.
   4 I last read something out loud to my boyfriend. It was part of a review of a film.

5 These words are wrong
   1 attacker
   2 mug
   3 breaking into
   4 shoplifting
   5 burglary

6 1 broke, stole, stabbed
   2 deliberately
   3 mugged/attacked, shoot/killed
   4 murdering/killing, shot
   5 thief/burglar
   6 robbed

Unit 36

1 1 report
   2 Victims
   3 investigate
   4 fingerprints
   5 took place
   6 may

2 1 The police
   2 The suspect
   3 The police
   4 The victim

3 1 T
   2 F

4 1 F
   2 T
   3 F
   4 F

5 1 tried
   2 prove
   3 prosecution
   4 defendant

6 1 suspect
   2 arrest
   3 evidence
   4 charge
   5 court

Unit 37

1 1 allergic
   2 obese
   3 Diseases
   4 diabetes

2 1 Diabetes
   2 allergy
   3 Diseases

3 1 allergic
   2 obesity
   3 attack
   4 depressed
   5 suffer

4 1 memory loss
   2 arthritis
   3 brain
   4 blind

5 1 T
   2 F

6 1 arthritis
   2 deaf
   3 sight

7 1 allergic
   2 obese
   3 Diseases
   4 diabetes

8 1 memory loss
   2 arthritis
   3 brain
   4 blind

9 1 allergic
   2 obese
   3 Diseases
   4 diabetes

10 1 memory loss
    2 arthritis
    3 brain
    4 blind
**Unit 38**

1 1 F 2 T 3 F 4 F 5 T 6 F
2 1 elections 4 vote
2 consists, parties 5 represent
3 power 6 majority

3 Answers from a Colombian person
1 My country holds elections every four years.
2 The Uriibista party is in power at the moment.
3 They have been in power for five years.
4 The President of the Republic.
5 There are more than 500 people in parliament.

4 1 public 4 start it
2 important 5 coming
3 deal with it 6 disagree

5 1 policy 5 aim/objective/goal
2 campaign 6 Opposition
3 persuade 7 focus
4 immigrants 8 need

**Unit 39**

1 1 g 2 e 3 f 4 b 5 a 6 c
2 1 enemy 4 captured
2 critical 5 twelve
3 surrendered 6 explode

3 1 out 4 soldiers
2 bomb 5 control
3 battle 6 war

4 1 f 2 h 3 b 4 d 5 g 6 e 7 a
5 1 sides 6 unwilling
2 ceasefire 7 involved
3 leaders 8 compromise
4 settlement 9 reach/negotiate
5 determined 10 peace

**Unit 40**

1 1 f, release
2 a, assassination
3 e, establishment
4 b, invasion
5 d, attempt

2 1 assassinated 4 defeated
2 established 5 attempt
3 Revolution 6 independence, independent

**Unit 41**

1 whole, daily, entire, national, cultural
2 1 D 2 S 3 D 4 D 5 S 6 D
3 1 culture 4 whole, international
2 press, journalist 5 declining
3 published 6 daily

5 1 scare 5 claimed
2 axed 6 pension
3 clashed 7 threat
4 demonstration

6 1 pledged 5 demonstrate/protest
2 claims 6 clashed
3 aid 7 threatened
4 scare 8 promise

**Unit 42**

1 1 equivalent 5 award
2 produce 6 achieve
3 supporting role 7 winner
4 individual 8 prize

2 1 F 2 F 3 T 4 F 5 T 6 F 7 T 8 F 9 T
10 T

3 1 winner 5 role
2 achieve 6 award
3 leading 7 equivalent
4 produced 8 individual

5 1 P 2 N 3 P 4 N 5 N 6 P 7 N

6 1 indeed 4 extraordinary
2 plot 5 suitable
3 movie 6 performance

7 1 entertaining
2 extraordinary performance
3 disappointing indeed
4 fan
5 moving

8 Answers from a Spanish person
1 The Bourne Ultimatum is a really entertaining film.
2 Nicole Kidman gave an extraordinary performance in The Others.
3 I thought Music and Lyrics was very disappointing indeed.
4 I'm a fan of Brad Pitt.
5 Life is Beautiful was very moving.

**Unit 43**

1 1 D 2 S 3 D 4 S 5 S 6 D 7 D 8 S 9 D
2 1 styles 6 watercolours
2 abstract 7 portrait/painting
3 techniques 8 masterpiece
4 oils 9 display
5 vary 10 exhibitions

ANSWER KEY 213
Unit 45
1 1 golfer
2 athlete
3 boxer
4 racing driver
5 rugby player
6 skier
7 gymnast

2 1 captain
2 referee
3 support
4 umpire
5 supporters

3 1 referee
2 linesman
3 flag
4 commentator
5 fans
6 crowd
7 pitch
8 manager

4 1 length
2 track
3 width
4 maximum
5 depth
6 construction
7 lap

5 1 construct, stadium, capacity
2 laps, Circuit, track, constructed
3 Championship, worldwide, courts
4 standard, pool, long, wide, minimum, depth, maximum

Unit 46
1 1 gymnastics
2 weightlifting
3 fencing
4 cycling
5 athletics
6 wrestling
7 takes place
8 record
9 hold
10 competitors, professionals

2 1 took part
2 take part, participate
3 record
4 race
5 race
6 medal, competition

3 1 achievement
2 criticize
3 resistance
4 praise
5 brilliant
6 favourite
7 defeat sb

6 1 contest
2 overall
3 achievement
4 favourite, sided
5 critical
6 opponent, semi

Unit 47
1 1 Fiction: murder mystery, novel, sci-fi

2 1 encyclopedia
2 poetry/poems
3 reference
4 pleasure
5 mystery
6 alphabet
7 autobiography
8 manual

4 1 attention
2 well known
3 chapter
4 readable
5 paperback
6 browsing
5 1 author 6 chapter
2 attention 7 fascinating
3 title 8 written
4 paperback

6 Answers from a Polish person
1 I like detective stories and biographies.
2 I use lots of different dictionaries.
3 I used to when I was younger and had more free time.
4 No, not really.
5 I have more paperbacks than hardbacks because they are cheaper, but also because many books only come out in paperback.

Unit 48
1 1 illuminated 5 festival
2 Carnival 6 fireworks
3 approached 7 tons
4 spectacular 8 blossom
2 c 2 b 3 h 4 d 5 i 6 f 7 a 8 g
3 1 participated 4 striking
2 dress up 5 occasion
3 illuminated 6 neighbourhood
4 1 festival, carnival 5 dressed up
2 parade 6 occasions, fireworks
3 entertainment 7 mean
4 taken part 8 participate

5 Answers from a German person
1 The ‘Oktoberfest’ in Munich is a very important and popular festival. It was originally a harvest festival.
2 No, they don’t.
3 Yes. There are lots of local bands playing and there’s a fairground.
4 No, I haven’t taken part in a parade.
5 Yes, at ‘Fasching’ in February, when I was small, my mum dressed me up as a mouse!
6 Yes, on New Year’s Eve.
7 Not really, but I can understand why a lot of people like tradition.
8 Yes, I’d like to participate in ‘La Tomatina’ because I think it would be a lot of fun throwing tomatoes at other people!

Unit 49
1 1 invigilator 4 attitude
2 success 5 follow
3 succeed 6 disqualified
2 1 attitude 8 essential
2 instructions 9 carefully
3 invigilator 10 devotes
4 cheating 11 planning
5 disqualified 12 examiner
6 item 13 relief
7 paper

Unit 50
1 The people are 4, 5, 6, and 9.
2 1 attend 6 widely
2 seminars 7 academic
3 lectures 8 assessment
4 notes 9 graduate
5 tutor
4 1 opportunity 5 manage
2 on time 6 in time
3 freedom 7 homesick
4 revision
5 1 away 4 loans
2 residence 5 scholarship
3 tuition 6 chance

6 Answers from an Italian person
1 Students usually live at home, unless they go to university in another city.
2 Some students live in halls of residence, but most of them live in shared flats or houses.
3 Yes, they do have to pay tuition fees unless they receive a scholarship.
4 Normally they don’t have to take out loans because their parents help them.
5 Yes, scholarships are available.
6 It would be great to have the chance to study abroad.

Unit 51
1 1 application, assessment, confirmation, acknowledgement, interview
2 1 They said they’d contact to me.
2 Is she applying for a job?
3 Have you got a work permit?
4 The company is based in Tokyo.
5 He gave me some good advice.
6 She gave me feedback after the interview.
7 I have to confirm it in writing.
8 If you apply for a job, it’s quite a long process.
3 1 requested 4 require
2 position 5 subject to
3 attended
4 1 based 6 candidates
2 acknowledge 7 vacancies
3 confirmation 8 give
4 contact 9 apply, application
5 automatically 10 process

5 Answers from a German person
1 I’ve applied for the following jobs in the past: a paper-boy, a lighting technician in a nightclub, an optician, and an IT specialist.
2 I think I’ve had more than twenty interviews in my life.
3 Yes, interviewers usually give feedback after an interview.
4 I've been the successful candidate five times.
5 My referees were my previous supervisors.
6 No, I've never had to get a work permit because I've always worked in the European Union.

Unit 52
1 1 training
2 military
3 retail
4 engineering
2 1 sector
2 management
3 experience
4 training
3 Answer from a Colombian person
I have some management experience. And I worked in retail when I was younger. I don't have experience in any of the other fields.

Unit 53
1 1s
2 2D
3 D
4 4S
5 5S
6 6S
7 7D
8 8S
9 9D
2 1 challenging
2 department
3 prospects
4 promoted
5 elsewhere
6 unemployed
7 sack/fire
8 resign/quit
3 Answers from a British person
1 My job is very challenging.
2 In fact I've already transferred from another department.
3 I have reasonable prospects in my job.
4 I'm not thinking about promotion at the moment as my job is already challenging enough!
5 No, I'm not bored, so I won't be looking elsewhere.
6 No, I've never been unemployed.
7 I would have to have to sack someone.
8 Yes, I would definitely resign if I started to hate my job.
4 I'd like to make an enquiry about the club.
2 I talked to her face-to-face.
3 It's very hard to deal with this situation.
4 Who's in charge of this department?
5 You have to make sure the door is locked.
6 We're not responsible for the cleaning.

Unit 54
1 1 trade
2 strike
3 bonus
4 working conditions
2 1 Is she a member of a trade union?
2 Are we entitled to sick pay?
3 I'd like to take a week off.
4 Why don't you like shift work?
5 I left on time today; I didn't do overtime.
6 Why did the workers go on strike?
3 Answers from a British person
1 Yes, it is very stressful.
2 We get 25 days' holiday each year.
3 No, we don't do shift work.
4 Yes, I regularly work overtime.
5 We sometimes get a small bonus if the year has been good financially.
6 Yes, we are entitled to sick pay.
7 Yes, we have a trade union, which we have a right to join.
8 It is very rare for people at my place of work to go on strike.

Unit 55
1 a e
2 i g
3 4 c
5 a 6 b
7 d 8 h
2 1 turnover
2 flow
3 rate
4 tax profit
5 inflation
6 took out, loan
7 costs, loss
8 finance/start/operate
4 grew/rose significantly
2 rose gradually
3 fell slightly
4 stable/unchanged
5 risen steadily
5 sharply
2 rise
3 peak
4 gone
5 by
6 fall/drop
7 fluctuated
8 stable/unchanged
6 1 rose slightly
2 sharp rise/increase
3 remained stable/unchanged
4 fell slightly
5 fell sharply
Unit 56
1 asset, goods, stock
2 up the business of business supplier
3 research assets rivals employs optimistic/ambitious, estimates
4 takeover reputation break even
5 share growth, market shares brand

Unit 57
1 1993.
2 Because surfing was a seasonal business.
3 b) it had to give protection o) it had to retain heat
4 He did some research.
5 He took out a bank loan.
6 It's crucial to have a good relationship.
7 Feedback from his customers.
8 A good partnership with suppliers.
2 contract innovate diversify
3 crucial partnership feedback
3 exploit
2 Both answers are correct.
3 potential adapt
5 Both answers are correct.
6 founded investment
8 Both answers are correct.
4 gap ahead contract
2 case retain/keep factor
3 producers/manufacturers research
4 invest diversify

Unit 58
1 G 2 G 3 B 4 G 5 B 6 G
2 sector demand strengths threat
3 resources

Unit 59
1 1 almost probably may possible
2 She's bound to pass. She'll probably pass. / She's likely to pass. /
3 I expect she'll pass. She may/might pass.
4 I doubt (if/that) she'll pass. She's unlikely to pass.
5 She'll definitely fail.
3 Answer from a Japanese person
Next week, I'm definitely going to go to a salsa party on Sunday evening. It's a good chance for me to let off steam. However, the good dancers are unlikely to dance with someone like me who isn't very good, although I expect some of them will ask me to dance anyway. Otherwise I will be standing alone in the corner for hours and it will be a disaster! But maybe I'm too pessimistic.
My friend and I might go out for a drink afterwards. There I'm likely to ask her advice about the boy I fancy, even though I doubt she has a good opinion of him.

Unit 60
1 in comparison apart from alike except
5 main compared identical apart
2 similar greedy alike, completely difference
3 similarity difference
4 except
3 Answers from a British person
Oxford and Cambridge are alike in many ways. They both have famous universities, and many beautiful old buildings. Another similarity is that it takes about an hour to get to London on the train. However, apart from the universities, there is one main difference. Compared with Cambridge, Oxford is very cosmopolitan.
Unit 61
1 1 meant 5 put it off
2 busy 6 for example/for instance
3 What 7 Are you able to come
4 free (to see you) 8 meet
5 put it off 9 I'm afraid
6 for example/for instance 7 Apparently, fault
2 Shall we get together for a meeting?
3 I'll tell you definitely tomorrow.
4 I'm afraid but I'm tied up then. Or I'm
5 sorry but I'm tied up then.
6 A Let's meet at a restaurant, say?
7 B No, what about the station instead?
8 As an alternative, we could meet on
9 Tuesday.

Unit 62
1 Like very much: mad about, crazy about, adore
Like: fond of, keen on
Dislike very much: detest, loathe, can't bear, not like at all
2 1 I'm fond of .
2 I can't stand .
3 I loathe cooking .
4 I'm mad about .
5 I can't bear .
6 I detest .
7 I adore eating .
8 I'm crazy about .
9 Recently, I've got to like .
10 I'd rather eat . than .

3 Answers from a Polish person
1 chocolate cake
2 cigarette smoke
3 liver
4 reading
5 people who smoke in my presence
6 waiting in departure lounges at airports
7 white chocolate
8 travelling to new places
9 mussels
10 fish, meat

Unit 63
1 1 What do you think of this idea?
2 Personally, I think it's a good idea.
3 I agree with it in principle.
4 It seems to me we have no choice.
5 If you ask me, it was a disaster.
2 1 It seems to me we should do something.
2 How do you feel about that?
3 In my opinion, we should help them.
4 I'm to blame.
5 I reckon it'll be a problem.

Unit 64
1 1 force to you 4 with
2 to 5 to
3 be 6 on
2 1 behaved 4 banned
2 allowed 5 punishment
3 disobedient 6 behaviour

3 1 obedient
2 disobedient
3 strict
4 force
5 behave

4 Answers from an Italian person
► Yes, they were allowed to wear make-up.
1 Yes. I was a quiet and obedient child.
2 If you disobeyed the rules, you would
3 have to stand outside the classroom.
4 The rules were not that strict.
5 The teachers didn't force me to do
6 anything I didn't want to do.
7 I think children probably behaved much
8 better then compared to nowadays.

5 1 S 2 D 3 S 4 D 5 D 6 S 7 S 8 S

6 1 let 6 compulsory/
2 choice 7 obligatory, choice
3 allowed, forbidden 8 allowed/permitted
4 up 8 option
5 optional

Unit 65
1 1 D 2 S 3 D 4 D 5 S 6 S
2 1 making 6 wrong
2 intend 7 fact
3 hoping 8 smoothly
4 expecting 9 forward
5 intention

4 1 I doubt it.
2 I'm afraid not.
3 I don't think so.
4 Definitely not
Unit 66

1 d 2 f 3 g 4 b 5 a 6 e
2 1 dissatisfied, complained
2 guarantee
3 point
4 back
5 writing
6 keep/stay, temper
7 expert
8 considered

4 mention
5 1 fed
2 bother
3 join
4 nuisance
5 bothered
6 spoilt/ruined
7 mentioned

6 Answers from a German person
1 Yes, I'm fed up with the traffic in the morning when I drive to work; it's so busy.
2 Sometimes the small child living above us can be a bit loud and that gets on my nerves.
3 I don't tend to moan a lot; however, postal strikes are a real inconvenience to me and others.
4 Shopping in town on a Saturday can be a real nightmare, as it's so crowded.
5 I'm not particularly bothered about my level of English at the moment; however, I do try to improve constantly.

Unit 67

1 Do you need any assistance?
2 Caution. If symptoms continue, seek medical help. OR Seek medical help if symptoms continue.
3 Beware of the dog: it bites.
4 Warning. Don't cross when the barrier is down.
5 In case of fire, leave the building immediately.
6 Ring the police in case of emergency. OR In case of emergency, ring the police.

2 1 swallows
2 Beware, case
3 Mind
4 out

5 warned, danger
6 careful, aircraft
7 assistance
8 premises

Unit 68

1 1 as a result
2 what's more
3 due to
4 therefore

5 plus
6 since
7 moreover
8 furthermore

3 1 close/shut
2 she couldn't
3 was terrible/bad/dreadful
4 didn't have
5 get in /get into /enter
6 they aren't /they're not

4 1 e 2 i 3 b 4 c 5 d 6 f 7 a 8 h

5 1 despite
2 that
3 However/Nevertheless
4 though/however
5 although/though
6 spite, still
7 even
8 Despite

6 1 S 2 D 3 D 4 S 5 D 6 S

7 1 as long as
2 so that
3 On the one hand

4 whereas
5 in case
6 otherwise

Unit 69

1 Synonyms: curious/strange, fair/reasonable, essential/vital
   Opposites: modern/old-fashioned, polite/rude, busy/deserted, rural/urban

2 1 S 2 D 3 S 4 D 5 S 6 S 7 D

3 1 curious
2 rural/remote
3 suspicious

4 reasonable
5 impressed
6 overall

5 1 shocked
2 satisfied
3 disappointing

4 terrifying
5 disgusting
6 embarrassed

6 1 amusing
2 embarrassing
3 shocking
4 disappointed

5 disgusting
6 amazed/astonished
7 alarming
8 satisfied

8 1 inadequate
2 soft
3 inefficient
4 spacious
5 artificial

6 common
7 ineffective
8 unexpected
9 permanent

ANSWER KEY 219
### Unit 70

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>1</th>
<th>mixed</th>
<th>6</th>
<th>efficient</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
<td>rare</td>
<td>7</td>
<td>adequate</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3</td>
<td>glad</td>
<td>8</td>
<td>modern/contemporary</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4</td>
<td>fashioned</td>
<td>9</td>
<td>negative</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5</td>
<td>unexpected</td>
<td>10</td>
<td>temporary</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Unit 70**

1. over 8, the rear 6, beside 4, beneath 1, onto 7, the edge 5, among 2
2. 1 onto 5 over
   2 among 6 back
   3 over, beside 7 edge
   4 underneath/beneath 8 beyond
3. 1 nowadays
   2 lasted
   3 occasionally / now and again
   4 Meanwhile
   5 throughout
   6 eventually
4. 1 yet, recently / not long ago
   2 recent, during
   3 over, go
   4 last, already
   5 occasionally / now and again / from time to time, during/throughout

### Unit 71

1. in general, in private, in public at least, at first by chance on purpose, on board
2. 1 In general 4 At the end
   2 on purpose 5 in charge of
   3 on board 6 in a hurry/rush
3. 1 in 4 by
   2 in 5 in
   3 At
4. 1 of 6 on
   2 in/with 7 of
   3 with 8 to
   4 on 9 of
   5 of
5. 1 cope 5 look
   2 rid 6 depends
   3 care 7 involved
   4 most 8 disapprove

### Unit 72

1. 1 unkind 7 non-smoking
   2 non-alcoholic 8 insecure
   3 illegal 9 irregular
   4 irresponsible 10 dishonest
   5 uncertain 11 irrelevant
   6 informal
2. 1 immoral 4 insecure
   2 non-alcoholic 5 unfair/unacceptable
   3 irrelevant 6 disloyal
3. 1 unfair 4 illegible
   2 unacceptable 5 illegal
   3 disloyal

*Answers from a Colombian person*

1. Life is always unfair, but knowing that means that I do not expect anything marvellous to happen and have therefore become cynical.
2. It has always been acceptable to them and unacceptable to others and it will remain so.
3. My friends tend to be loyal but a disloyal friend can always appear loyal at first.
4. My handwriting is probably the clearest sign of a confused mind! Even I can’t read it – it is completely illegible.
5. I think it should be legal. I learnt to drive when I was 17 and didn’t have an accident for the first four years.

4. 1 a, c 3 b, c
   2 a, b 4 a, b
   5 1 Unwrap the present. Wrap (up) the present.
   2 Lock the suitcase. Unlock the suitcase.
   3 Get dressed. Get undressed.
   4 Pack your suitcase. Unpack your suitcase.
   5 Do up your shirt. Undo your shirt.
   6 Tie up / Do up your shoelaces. Untie / Undo your shoelaces.

### Unit 73

1. gentleness, kindness, disappearance, extension, reality, preference, judgement
2. 1 react reaction
   2 prefer preference
   3 cruel cruelty
   4 define definition
   5 interpret interpretation
   6 measure measurement
   7 extend extension
Unit 76
1 1 They're highly intelligent boys.
2 It's bitterly cold outside.
3 That man is completely/totally mad.
4 Paula's been seriously ill.
5 Their profits have fallen sharply.
6 We desperately need to earn more money.
7 It was totally/completely unnecessary to do that.

2 1 risen 4 travelled
2 injured 5 feel
3 sorry, forgot 6 convinced/sure
3 1 vitally 4 completely/totally
2 highly 5 bitterly
3 desperately 6 terribly

4 1 S 2 S 3 D 4 S 5 D 6 S 7 S 8 S
5 1 On the whole 5 rather
2 mainly/mostly 6 actually
3 approximately/about 7 rarely
4 largely/mostly 8 fairly

Unit 74
1 1 d 2 a 3 b 4 c 5 a 6 b
2 1 enable 3 imagine 5 reminds
2 intend 4 warned 6 mind
3 1 f 2 g 3 a 4 c 5 b 6 d

4 Answers from a Spanish person
1 I managed to cycle up a steep hill last week.
2 I intended to call my sister yesterday but I forgot.
3 I regret missing a chance to buy a house a couple of years ago.
4 I refused to go on a business trip recently.
5 My dad persuaded me to buy a car last year.
6 My mum warned me not to spend too much on my credit card.
7 I'm pleased to say no one has blamed me for anything recently.
8 My mum reminded me to call my sister today!

Unit 75
1 1 R 2 R 3 W 4 W 5 R 6 W 7 R
2 1 takes after 4 runs out
2 made it up 5 switched on
3 get on with 6 give away
3 1 up 3 on 5 on, with
2 out 4 over 6 out of
5 1 leave out 4 go over
2 get through 5 getting on
3 work out 6 go on / carry on
6 1 out 4 on 7 back
2 through, on 5 off 8 up, down
3 back 6 on

Unit 77
1 1 L 2 F 3 I 4 F 5 N 6 I 7 N
2 1 fetch 4 purchase
2 commence 5 out of the blue
3 stuff 6 keep an eye on
3 1 of 3 stuff 5 turned
2 vague 4 idiom 6 sort, neutral
4 1 D 2 S 3 S 4 D 5 S 6 S 7 D
5 1 Yeah
2 Hang on. / Hold on.
3 What’s up?
4 I haven’t a clue.
5 How are things? / How’s it going?
6 What’ve you been up to?
7 Cheers.

6 1 care 4 up, hang/hold
2 going 5 to
3 give/lend, problem
8 1 g 2 c 3 f 4 b 5 a 6 d
9 1 joking
2 disaster
3 tent
4 loads/lots/masses, nonsense/rubbish
5 better 7 picking
6 for 8 like

ANSWER KEY 221
Unit 78
1 1 No.
2 As a deposit for the cottage.
3 Arriving.
4 Yes, she wants to know whether there is parking nearby.
5 Her own address.
6 Mr Ellison's address.
7 Yes, she wrote the date underneath her address.
8 Dear Mr Ellison
9 Yours sincerely
10 No, because it's a formal letter.

2 1 ✓ 2 X 3 ✓ 4 ✓ 5 X 6 ✓

3 1 I look forward to hearing from you.
2 If there's a problem, please don't hesitate to ring me.
3 I enclose a photocopy of my identity card with the application form.
4 I would be grateful if you could phone me about the meeting.
5 Further to your letter of 7 April, I wish to confirm my booking.
6 I would appreciate it if you could help me.
7 Please let me know in particular whether/ if there is a beach nearby.
8 I enclose a cheque for €30 as a deposit for the rental of the room.

4 1 Further
2 enclose
3 deposit
4 commence
5 grateful
6 appreciate
7 whether
8 nearby/ close by
9 further
10 hesitate
11 sincerely

Unit 79
1 1 m 7 cl 13 g/gm
2 p 8 kg 14 mm
3 km 9 cm 15 £
4 ml 10 mg 16 $
5 t 11 c/ct
6 mph 12 kph

2 1 kph, mph
2 mm
3 1 vet
2 pop/ pop music
3 fridge
4 bike
5 lab
1 deli, fridge
2 ads, paper

5 1 ATM, PIN
2 CV
3 ID
4 VAT

Unit 80
1 1 sidewalk
2 cellphone
3 datebook
4 drugstore
5 railroad
6 attorney
7 subway
8 gasoline
9 transportation
10 billfold

3 1 can
2 theater
3 store
4 highway

4 1 holiday vacation
2 lift elevator
3 rubbish garbage/trash
4 handbag purse
5 diary datebook
6 sweets candy
7 lorry truck
8 biscuit cookie
9 tap faucet
10 pavement sidewalk

5 Answers from a Japanese person
1 I don't often use the subway. I use it a few times a month.
2 I use the railroad twice a day, every day, to commute to work.
3 I go to a movie theater about twice a month.
4 The last movie I saw was No Reservations.
5 I sometimes eat French fries when I go for a beer with friends.
6 I went to Seoul on my last vacation.
7 The last time I went to a mall was about two months ago.
8 I left high school eighteen years ago.
### Answer key to review units

#### Learning

**Unit 1**

| 1 | a translation (of this), please? |
| 2 | (some) revision for an exam |
| 3 | I repeat |
| 4 | his explanation (of it) |
| 5 | a guess |
| 6 | a record of new words in a book |
| 7 | a chat (about it) |
| 8 | the pronunciation of that word |

| 2 | recognize |
| 3 | gist |
| 4 | go through |
| 5 | make a note of |
| 6 | context |

**Unit 2**

| 1 | complex/complicated |
| 2 | expand, aim |
| 3 | fluently |
| 4 | detail |

| 1 | frustrating |
| 2 | motivated |
| 3 | while |
| 4 | progress |
| 5 | encouraging |

**Unit 3**

| 1 | definitions |
| 2 | entry |
| 3 | select |
| 4 | instance |
| 5 | symbols |
| 6 | stressed |

| 1 | a colon |
| 2 | a full stop |
| 3 | a semicolon |
| 4 | quotation marks |

| 1 | separates |
| 2 | details, list |

**Unit 4**

| 1 | a translation (of this), please? |
| 2 | (some) revision for an exam |
| 3 | I repeat |
| 4 | his explanation (of it) |
| 5 | a guess |
| 6 | a record of new words in a book |
| 7 | a chat (about it) |
| 8 | the pronunciation of that word |

| 2 | recognize |
| 3 | gist |
| 4 | go through |
| 5 | make a note of |
| 6 | context |

**Unit 5**

| 1 | expecting |
| 2 | contact |
| 3 | neat |
| 4 | tell |

| 1 | shoulders |
| 2 | bald, losing |
| 3 | scar |

**Unit 6**

| 1 | generous, generosity, mean honest, honesty, dishonest tolerant, tolerance, intolerant patient, patience, impatient arrogant, arrogance, modest hard-working, lazy |

| 2 | crazy |
| 3 | boring/dull |
| 4 | lazy |

**Unit 7**

| 1 | OPP insensitive |
| 2 | SYN fed up |
| 3 | SYN astonished |

| 1 | He was furious with me, and I was thrilled. terrify/scaared stiff |
| 2 | She was so proud when her son did well, and really jealous. thrilled/delighted |
| 3 | I was anxious before the flight, and scared stiff by the time we took off. (logical) |
| 4 | I don’t know what upset her, but she was thrilled: miserable / fed up |
| 5 | She can be very insensitive and often hurts people's feelings. (logical) |
| 6 | I can’t talk to her because she’s insensitive and very supportive. moody |

**Unit 8**

| 1 | Petros and I have nothing in common. in |
| 2 | How did you get to know her? to |
| 3 | I like Imran; we get very well. on |
| 4 | Don’t forget to keep in touch. in |
| 5 | You can’t rely on her brother. on |
| 6 | I don’t think they’re in a relationship at the moment. in |
The world around us

Unit 11
1 reach
2 approximately
3 earth
4 planet
5 system
6 exists
7 scientists
8 discovered
9 invented
10 space
11 satellites
12 circle
13 universe
14 roughly

Unit 12
1 wave
2 puddle
3 float
4 narrow
5 surface
6 protection
7 protection
8 sank/capsized
9 horizon
10 steep

Unit 13
1 pouring
2 effects
3 mild
4 harm
5 melts
6 rise
7 predict
8 breeze
9 gradually
10 extreme, affect

Unit 14
1 volcanic eruption
2 hurricane
3 tidal wave
4 drought
5 earthquake
6 tidal wave
7 volcanic eruption
8 drought
9 hurricane

Unit 15
1 Wild animals: lion, gorilla, leopard
2 Farm animals: calf, donkey, goat
3 Insects: fly, bee, mosquito
4 Sea creatures: whale, shark
2 Some snakes are poisonous.
   Leopards have spots.
   Elephants have a trunk.
   Eagles have a beak.
   Bears have fur.
   Bees can sting.
   Goats have horns.

3 Across
  2 wings
  5 bone
  6 vary
  8 camel
  9 sting
  10 monkey
  11 calf
  12 weight
  13 spider

Down
  1 mice
  3 snake
  4 poison
  7 harmless
  9 shark

Daily life

Unit 16
1 Herbs: parsley, thyme, mint
   Fruit: fig, pomegranate, raspberry, apricot
   Vegetables: beetroot, sweetcorn, broccoli, leeks
   Fish: cod, salmon, carp, sea bass
   Seafood: oysters, clams, mussels, crab
   Meat: veal, rabbit, liver, kidney

Unit 17
1 1 not
   2 less
   3 good
   4 bad
   5 fatter
   6 oil or fat
   7 without
   8 cut
   9 weight
   10 cooking

Unit 18
1 1 receipt
   2 well off
   3 the sales
   4 waste
   5 change
   6 can’t afford
   7 broke
   8 bargain
   9 debt
   10 reduction
   11 amount
   12 huge

2 The phrase in the grey squares is ‘cost a fortune’.

Unit 19
1 1 fall
   2 go/get
   3 lack
   4 irritable
   5 concentrate
   6 sleepy/exhausted/tired
   7 habits
   8 nap
   9 night
   10 mind

Unit 20
1 bleed
   dizzy
   prevent
   symptom
   infection
   injury
   develop
   thoroughly

Unit 21
1 1 f 2 a 3 h 4 d 5 c 6 e 7 b

Unit 22
1 Correct answers
   1 cancelled, held up
   2 the outskirts, the way
   3 a vehicle, an ambulance
   4 a coach, a van
   5 broke down, crashed
   6 injured, delayed
   7 a valid ticket, a day return
   8 gets in, is due

2 1 hire
   2 pick
   3 turn
   4 get
   5 skid
   6 stop
   7 end

Unit 23
1 1 style
   2 bracelet
   3 dress
   4 vest
   5 button
   6 suede
   7 underwear
   8 outfit
   9 jewellery
   10 materials/fabrics

Getting things done

Unit 24
1 Is it painful when you bite?
2 I will probably have to take the tooth out.
3 This is the tooth which is causing the pain.
4 When did you last have a check-up?
5 Can you come back to the surgery tomorrow?
6 Just ask the receptionist to make an appointment for you.
7 There’s a hole in this tooth – you need a filling.
8 I’m going to examine your teeth and then decide what you need.
Unit 25
1 treat
2 concerned
3 surgeon
4 straightaway
5 benefit
6 take care of / care for someone
7 get over something / recover from something
8 patient
9 ward
10 risk

Unit 26
1 stain, remove
2 out of, fix/repair/mend
3 leaking
4 mend/repair
5 working, bulbs
6 wrong with, fix/repair/mend
2 1 hammer
2 drill
3 screwdriver
4 scissors
5 rope
6 string/wire
7 glue
8 Sellotape/glue/string

Unit 27
1 broom
2 bucket
3 vacuum cleaner
4 throw
5 dust/polish
6 wipe

Unit 28
1 I had my hair cut last week.
2 I just want a trim, please.
3 I’d like a cut and blow-dry, please.
4 Are you letting your hair grow?
5 Can you pass me the scissors?
6 She’s got a parting on the left.
7 I’m having my hair coloured tomorrow.
8 Can I borrow your hairdryer?

Describing things

Unit 29
1 F 2 T 3 F 4 T 5 T 6 F
2 1 filthy
2 lively
3 pity
4 space
5 handy
6 graffiti
7 begging
8 disadvantage

Unit 30
1 Possible answers
It’s a semi-detached house.
There’s a chimney on the roof.
The cellar is used for storage.
There’s a lawn in the garden.
The drive leads to the front door.

Unit 31
1 a wooden fence
2 a rubber tyre
3 a wax candle
4 a gold medal
5 a woollen blanket
6 a cardboard box
7 iron railings
8 a concrete bridge
2 1 round
2 four
3 horizontal
4 square
5 parallel
6 straight

Unit 32
1 i
2 f
3 a
4 d
5 g
6 b
7 i
8 e

Unit 33
1 artist
2 scene
3 foreground
4 just
5 distance
6 shade
7 hand
8 ignoring

Unit 34
1 smash
2 tear
3 fold
4 sprayed
5 crying
6 burst
7 sighed
8 shake
9 dragging

Social and political issues

Unit 35
1 criminal
2 murderer
3 mugger
4 burglar/thief
5 thief
6 shoplifter
7 robber
2 1 stabbed
2 obey
3 commit
4 the museum, stole
5 killed
6 violence
7 serious
8 arrested

Unit 36
1 c
2 1 place
2 prove
3 accused
4 witness
5 fine, sentence
6 may/might
7 evidence
8 arrest

Unit 37
1 obesity
2 allergy
3 stroke
4 asthma
5 heart attack
6 cancer
7 arthritis
8 diabetes
2 1 She has suffered from asthma for years.
2 He had a heart attack and died last week.
3 My grandfather is going deaf so I have to shout to him.
4 It's an infectious disease so he can't mix with other people.
5 The doctor told me to breathe in deeply through my nose.
6 She is allergic to some medicines.
7 Obesity can lead to heart disease.
8 He suffers from memory loss and can't remember where he puts things.

6 My cousin's a newspaper journalist; he writes articles about current affairs.

Unit 42
1 1 editing 5 incredible
2 movie 6 plot
3 role 7 disappointing
4 winner 8 swearing
The word in the grey squares is 'director'.

Unit 43
1 1 automatic 5 realistic
2 abstract 6 landscape
3 studio 7 sort
4 out of 8 skilled

Unit 44
1 1 conductor P 7 trumpet
2 lead singer P 8 melody
3 keyboard player P 9 flautist P
4 composer P 10 guitarist P
5 flute 11 saxophone
6 band P 12 solo artist P

Unit 45
1 1 ground, stadium 4 track, circuit
2 court, umpire 5 club, referee
3 coach, manager 6 deep, standard
2 1 constructing 5 interrupted
2 capacity 6 crowd
3 supported 7 championship
4 lap 8 length, width

Unit 46
1 1 e 2 h 3 b 4 c 5 f 6 i 7 d

Unit 47
1 1 Yes 5 No
2 Yes 6 No
3 No 7 No
4 Yes 8 No

Media and entertainment

Unit 41
1 1 threats 4 current
2 declined 5 protesting
3 scares 6 daily
2 1 I enjoy all sorts of cultural events, such as exhibitions and concerts.
2 I think he must receive a pension because he's nearly 70.
3 I saw a strange newspaper headline the other day: 'Man bites dog'.
4 She's in charge of the local newspaper; I believe she's been the editor for three years.
5 The government claims that it can cut crime by 20 per cent this year, but I don't believe it.
Unit 48
1 1 Everyone parades through the main streets in the town.
2 The people in the neighbourhood where I live are very friendly.
3 It's a two-day festival, which we have every year.
4 It was quite a wild party; we had great fun.
5 Do you ever take part / participate in parades?
6 I enjoy the carnival: it means a lot to me.
7 She wore a really striking dress with gold flowers on it.
8 We all had to throw a ball and try to hit the moving object.

Work and study

Unit 49
1 1 You have to follow his instructions.
2 Don't communicate with anyone.
3 Your attitude is important.
4 I was relieved to finish the exam.
5 Devote ten minutes to making notes.
6 He would never cheat in an exam.
7 If you don't succeed, try again.
8 Are dictionaries essential?

Unit 50
1 Correct answers
   1 seminar, lecture
   2 at home, away from home
   3 Professors, Tutors
   4 take out a loan, try to get a scholarship
   5 have a debate, take notes
2 1 Our seminar started on time at 10.00.
2 My sister is studying away from home and she's living in a hall of residence.
3 How much were the tuition fees for your summer course?
4 We had to hurry but we arrived just in time for the beginning of the lecture.
5 At the moment, she's doing some medical research as part of her studies.
6 I would like to have the chance / opportunity to study abroad, perhaps in Canada.
7 When I was at university, our essays were all part of the continuous assessment.
8 Do you study away from home?

Unit 51
1 1 vacancy 5 assess
2 advice 6 require
3 acknowledge 7 automatically
4 valid 8 process

2 1 apply 5 references
2 interview 6 candidates
3 feedback 7 in
4 contact 8 permit

Unit 52
1 carpenter/plumber
2 nanny
3 civil servant / estate agent
4 electrician/mechanic
5 sales rep / travel agent
6 plumber/carpenter

2 1 experience, profession
2 arrangements, agent
3 servant, career, service
4 training, qualifications
5 products, rep

Unit 53
1 involved 7 resign
2 challenging 8 elsewhere
3 promoted 9 work
4 dealing 10 charge
5 transferred 11 responsibility
6 complaints

2 1 appoint 6 duties
2 reward 7 clerical
3 notice 8 solve
4 unemployed 9 handle
5 prospects
The word in the grey squares is 'promotion'.

Unit 54
1 1 stressful 5 shift
2 right 6 overtime
3 trade union 7 bonus
4 entitled 8 strike

Business

Unit 55
1 finance, loss, tax, revenue, interest, cash flow, profit, loan, turnover, bank, capital
2 1 rose slightly
2 fell/dropped sharply
3 remained unchanged/stable
4 dropped/fell by
5 fluctuated
6 slight increase/growth

Unit 56
1 1 G 2 B 3 B 4 G 5 B 6 G 7 G
2 1 even 5 quality
2 growth 6 market
3 risks 7 reputation
4 rivals 8 shares
Unit 57
1 e 2 h 3 g 4 b 5 a 6 d 7 c 8 f
2 1 Innovation 5 contract
2 crucial 6 potential
3 research 7 feedback
4 invest 8 diversify
7 In fact I like cheese very much.
8 I hate cold weather, especially if it's wet as well.

Unit 58
1 danger/threat advice/tip
ability/skill plan/strategy
aim/objective reply/response
data/information need/demand
2 1 strengths, weaknesses 5 objectives
2 opportunities 6 ignore
3 gather/get, data 7 forecasts
4 assume 8 evaluate

Social English

Unit 59
1 1 definitely go 4 he'll go
2 doubt (if/that) 5 likely
3 to be a disaster 6 pessimistic

Unit 60
1 except 5 completely
2 exactly 6 apart
3 alike 7 main
4 compared 8 comparison

Unit 61
1 1 make 5 to
2 afraid 6 tied
3 How/What 7 postpone / put off
4 available/free 8 confirm

Unit 62
1 keen 5 all
2 fond 6 bear/stand
3 mad 7 keen
4 adore/love 8 loathe/detest
2 Answers from a British person
1 I enjoy physical exercise, especially long walks.
2 I'm fond of the people I work with.
3 I'm no good at dancing, so I don't enjoy it very much.
4 Yes, I absolutely adore chocolate!
5 In fact I do like shellfish, though I'm allergic to mussels.
6 I agree. I can't stand waiting in queues.

Unit 63
1 1 not in favour of, against
2 is to blame, is his fault
3 in my opinion, as far as I'm concerned
4 in principle, in theory
5 is opposed to, is against
6 I believe, I reckon
2 1 in favour 5 consider
2 fault 6 in principle
3 sensible 7 support
4 of

Unit 64
1 1 He disobeys me.
2 They force us to work hard.
3 You aren't allowed to eat here. Or Eating here isn't allowed.
4 It's compulsory to wear a uniform. Or Wearing a uniform is compulsory.
5 She let us sit down.
6 The boss insists that we go.
7 His behaviour in class is terrible.
8 He punishes us if we're late.

Unit 65
1 1 fact 7 afraid
2 expecting 8 actually/apparently
3 definitely 9 smoothly
4 intending 10 going
5 hope 11 guess
6 intention

Unit 66
1 1 U 2 U 3 H 4 U 5 H 6 U 7 H
8 U 9 U
2 1 There's no point in going out.
2 You should speak to her in person.
3 I would ask an expert for advice.
4 Have you ever considered going to live abroad?
5 She joined the tennis club.
6 Waiting in queues gets on my nerves.
7 I'm not bothered about the cost of the meal.
8 Did she mention anything to you about the divorce? or Did she mention the divorce to you?

Unit 67
1 1 mind 4 case
2 out 5 assistance/help
3 beware 6 careful
Language

Unit 68
1 1 because 5 though
2 all the same 6 however
3 still 7 so
4 furthermore 8 whereas

2 Text 1
1 result 3 provided

Text 2
4 due 6 as/since
5 addition 7 However/ Nevertheless

Unit 69
1 1 rare, common
2 adequate, inadequate
3 old-fashioned, modern/contemporary
4 urban, rural
5 crowded, deserted
6 artificial, real
7 rude, polite
8 satisfied, dissatisfied
9 firm, soft
10 effective, ineffective

Unit 70
1 1 underneath
2 nowadays / these days
3 throughout
4 eventually
5 onto
6 occasionally
7 towards
8 Meanwhile / In the meantime

Unit 71
1 IN: in general, in favour of, in public, in a rush
ON: insist on, rely on, on purpose, depend on, on board
OF: get rid of, capable of, take care of, approve of

Unit 72
1 1 non-acceptable unacceptable
2 irrelevant irrelevant
3 dissecure insecure
4 an-alcoholic a non-alcoholic
5 disfasten unfasten
6 unhonest dishonest
7 impatient impatient

Unit 73
2 1 judgement 5 preference
2 definition 6 cruelty
3 reaction 7 extension
4 powerful 8 harmless

Unit 74
1 1 I don’t recall meeting your parents.
2 He refused to leave.
3 Carrie admitted stealing the necklace.
4 Mario accused me of taking all the food.
5 She regrets moving to London.
6 Boris reminds me of your brother.
7 He blamed me for the mistake.
8 I tend to work in the evening.
9 Cal pretended to be a doctor.
10 She persuaded me to leave.

Unit 75
1 1 I take after my mother.
2 why don’t you give it away?
3 I don’t get on very well with my boss.
4 just leave it out
5 put his coat on / put on his coat
6 I can’t work out
7 switch the TV on
8 go over it

Unit 76
1 1 sharply 5 rarely
2 strongly 6 widely
3 roughly 7 seriously
4 rather 8 totally
Styles of English

Unit 77
1 are things / 's it going?
2 up to
3 much
4 up
5 turned her down
6 You're joking! / You must be joking!
7 reckons
8 rubbish
9 loads/masses
10 Yeah
11 I'd better be off
12 Cheers!

2 1 fancy 4 hurry up
2 reckon 5 Tell me a joke
3 hang on 6 keep an eye on someone

Unit 78
1 Sir or Madam 6 whether
2 regards 7 in particular
3 Yours 8 hearing
4 further 9 don't hesitate
5 enclose 10 All the best

2 1 Further 7 whether / if
2 deposit 8 appreciate
3 commencing 9 hesitate
4 further/more 10 further
5 nearby / close by 11 forward
6 grateful 12 sincerely

Unit 79
1 identity card
2 United Nations
3 personal identification number
4 value added tax
5 curriculum vitae
6 internet service provider
7 information technology

2 1 Yes, fridge 6 Yes, flu
2 No 7 Yes, lab
3 Yes, vet 8 No
4 No 9 Yes, gym
5 Yes, ad/advert 10 No
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Unit</th>
<th>Title of spotlight box</th>
<th>Page</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1A</td>
<td>formal</td>
<td>10</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1B</td>
<td>conversation, chat, discussion, argument</td>
<td>11</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2B</td>
<td>contain and include</td>
<td>13</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3A</td>
<td>stress and emphasize</td>
<td>14</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5B</td>
<td>-ish</td>
<td>21</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6</td>
<td>crazy, mad, stupid</td>
<td>22</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7A</td>
<td>absolutely and very</td>
<td>24</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7B</td>
<td>sensitive</td>
<td>25</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8A</td>
<td>friend</td>
<td>26</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8B</td>
<td>have a row / an argument</td>
<td>27</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10A</td>
<td>wedding and marriage; bride and groom</td>
<td>30</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11B</td>
<td>discover or invent</td>
<td>37</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12A</td>
<td>cause v, n</td>
<td>38</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>13B</td>
<td>effect n, affect v</td>
<td>42</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>15C</td>
<td>cows and cattle</td>
<td>48</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>17A</td>
<td>diet</td>
<td>54</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>21B</td>
<td>keep</td>
<td>63</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>22B</td>
<td>way</td>
<td>65</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>23A</td>
<td>jewellery and material</td>
<td>67</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>24</td>
<td>dread, look forward to</td>
<td>73</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>25</td>
<td>enough</td>
<td>74</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>26A</td>
<td>Nouns</td>
<td>76</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>26B</td>
<td>repair, fix, or mend sth</td>
<td>77</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>28</td>
<td>have/get sth done</td>
<td>79</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>29B</td>
<td>area, region, district, part</td>
<td>83</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>30</td>
<td>passage, corridor, hall</td>
<td>84</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>31A</td>
<td>Noun + noun</td>
<td>86</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>31B</td>
<td>shape, -shaped</td>
<td>87</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>32A</td>
<td>can + sense verbs</td>
<td>88</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>32B</td>
<td>like</td>
<td>89</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>33</td>
<td>painting and drawing</td>
<td>90</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>34B</td>
<td>loud, out loud / aloud, silent, silence</td>
<td>93</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>35A</td>
<td>crime</td>
<td>96</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>35B</td>
<td>steal and rob</td>
<td>97</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>37B</td>
<td>go + adjective</td>
<td>101</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>38B</td>
<td>oppose, opposition</td>
<td>103</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>41B</td>
<td>Verbs and nouns with the same form</td>
<td>111</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>42B</td>
<td>indeed</td>
<td>113</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>43B</td>
<td>photography, photograph, etc.</td>
<td>115</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>44A</td>
<td>The suffix -ist</td>
<td>116</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>44B</td>
<td>living, alive, live</td>
<td>117</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>45A</td>
<td>Suffix -er and player</td>
<td>118</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>45B</td>
<td>long, wide, deep</td>
<td>119</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>46A</td>
<td>record</td>
<td>120</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>46B</td>
<td>defeat</td>
<td>121</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>47B</td>
<td>Compound adjectives with well</td>
<td>123</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>48A</td>
<td>festival, carnival, parade</td>
<td>124</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>50B</td>
<td>in time, on time</td>
<td>131</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>51</td>
<td>Formal language</td>
<td>132</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>52A</td>
<td>career, job, profession</td>
<td>134</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>53A</td>
<td>dismiss, sack, fire</td>
<td>136</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>54</td>
<td>time off</td>
<td>138</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>55A</td>
<td>finance</td>
<td>142</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>56A</td>
<td>Prefixes over- and under-</td>
<td>144</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>56B</td>
<td>market</td>
<td>145</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>57</td>
<td>Verbs of change</td>
<td>146</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>58A</td>
<td>skill</td>
<td>148</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>60</td>
<td>compare v, comparison n</td>
<td>153</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>61</td>
<td>be supposed to, be meant to + verb</td>
<td>154</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>62</td>
<td>Verb + -ing</td>
<td>155</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>63A</td>
<td>Giving opinions</td>
<td>156</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>65A</td>
<td>actually</td>
<td>160</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>66A</td>
<td>point</td>
<td>162</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>66B</td>
<td>bother</td>
<td>163</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>68A</td>
<td>in addition, moreover, furthermore</td>
<td>168</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>68B</td>
<td>still</td>
<td>169</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>68C</td>
<td>purpose</td>
<td>170</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>69B</td>
<td>-ed/-ing endings</td>
<td>172</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>70A</td>
<td>over</td>
<td>174</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>71A</td>
<td>in the end and at the end</td>
<td>176</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>71B</td>
<td>depend on sb/sth</td>
<td>177</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>72A</td>
<td>Prefixes</td>
<td>178</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>73B</td>
<td>Adjectives ending in -ful and -less</td>
<td>181</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>75A</td>
<td>Separable phrasal verbs</td>
<td>184</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>75B</td>
<td>Different meanings</td>
<td>185</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>76B</td>
<td>rather, fairly, quite, pretty</td>
<td>187</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>77A</td>
<td>stuff</td>
<td>191</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>77B</td>
<td>cheers</td>
<td>192</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>77C</td>
<td>joke</td>
<td>193</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>78</td>
<td>further, further to</td>
<td>194</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>80</td>
<td>highway, freeway, expressway</td>
<td>199</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
afford /ə'fɔrd/ 18
after a while /'a:ftər ə 'wail/ 2
against /ə'genst/ 63
against the law
/a'genst ə 'lo:/ 35
aggressive /ə'gresiv/ 6
aggression /ə'gresən/ 6
ahead /ə'hed/ 57
aid /eid/ 41
AIDS /'eidz/ 79
air /ər/ 2, 38, 58
aircraft /'eəkrɑːft/ 67
alarm /ə'la:m/ 19
alarmed /ə'la:mrd/ 69
alarming /ə'la:mɪŋ/ 69
album (= music collection)
/'ælbəm/ 44
album as in photo album
/'ælbəm/ 43
alcoholic /'ælkoʊhəlɪk/ 72
alike /ə'laɪk/ 60
alive /ə'laɪv/ 44
all over /ə'lɔːvə(r)/ 70
all over the world
/'ɔːl əʊvər ə'wɜːld/ 45
all the best /'ɔ:l ə ˈbɛst/ 78
all the same /əl ə 'sem/ 68
allergic /ə'lerɪdʒɪk/ 37
allergy /ə'lerɪdʒi/ 37
allowed /ə'laʊd/ 64
allow /ə'loʊ/ 64
ally /ə'laɪ/ 39
 aloud /ə'laʊd/ 34
alphabet /'ælfəbɛt/ 47
alphabetical /'ælfə'betɪkl/ 47
already /ə'leɪdɪ/ 70
alter /ə'leɪtə(r)/ 57
alternative /əl'tərənətɪv/ 4
although /ə'ləʊð/ 68
amateur /ə'meɪtə(r)/ 46
amateur photographer
,'əmətər hə'tŋərfə(r)/ 43
amazed /ə'meɪzd/ 7, 69
amazing /ə'meɪznɪŋ/ 69
ambition /əm'baɪʃn/ 6
ambitious /əm'bɪtʃəs/ 6
ambulance /əm'bʌləns/ 22
among /ə'mɔŋ/ 70
amongst /ə'mɔnst/ 70
amount /ə'mɔnt/ 18
amused /ə'mjuːzd/ 69
amusing /ə'mjuːznɪŋ/ 69
analyse /'ænəlaɪs/ 11
analysis /'ænələsɪs/ 11
ancestor /'ænsestə(r)/ 9
anniversary /ən'veəriəsɪ/ 10
announce /ə'nəʊnns/ 38
announcement
/'ənəuəntmənt/ 38
annual /'ænjuəl/ 55
antisocial /æntɪ'səʊʃəl/ 8
anxious /æn'ʃɛks/ 7
apart /ə'pɑ:t/ 60
apartment /ə'pɑːmtmənt/ 80
apostrophe /'æpəstroʊf/ 4
appalling /ə'pɔləŋ/ 66
apparently /ə'pɛrəntli/ 63
appeal /ə'piːl/ 44
appear /ə'piər/ 32
appearance /ə'pɪərəns/ 5
application /ə'plɪkeɪʃn/ 51
apply /ə'plai/ 51
appointment /ə'pɒɪntmənt/ 24
appreciate as in I would appreciate it if...
/'ɑːprrɪʃɪteɪt/ 78
approach /ə'prəʊtʃ/ 48
appropriate /ə'prəʊprɪt/ 2
approve /ə'pruːv/ 71
approximately
/'əpəkrəmətɪvelɪ/ 11, 76
apricot /ə'prɪkət/ 16
area /'eəriə/ 29
argue /'ɑːɡjuː/ 8
argument /ˈɑːrɡjʊment/ 1, 8
army /'ɑːmi/ 39
arrangements
/'ɑːrændɪmənts/ 52
arrest /'ɑːrest/ 36
arrogance /'ɑːrəɡəns/ 6
arrogant /'ɑːrəɡənt/ 6
arthritis /'ɑːrθrɪtɪs/ 37
artichoke /'ɑːrtɪˌkɔːk/ 16
artificial /'ɑːrtɪfɪʃl/ 69
artist /'ɑːtɪst/ 33
as /eɪz, əz/ 68
as a result /əz ə rɪˈzʌlt/ 68
as an alternative /əz ən əlˈtɜrnoʊtɪv/ 61
as far as I'm concerned... /əz,fər əz əm ˈkənrəntd/ 63
as long as /əz ˈlɒŋ əz/ 68
ask as in if you ask me... /əsk/ 63
asleep /əˈslaːp/ 19
asparagus /əˈspærəɡəs/ 16
assassinate /əˈsæsɪnət/ 40
assassination /əˈsæsɪnətʃən/ 40
assault /əˈsɔlt/ 35
assess /əˈses/ 51
assessment /əˈsesmənt/ 51
asset /ˈæsət/ 56
assistance /əˈsɪstəns/ 67
assume /əˈsjuːm/ 58, 65
assumption /əˈsəmpʃən/ 58
asthma /ˈæstma/ 37
astonished /əˈstɒnɪʃt/ 7, 69
astonishing /əˈstɒnɪʃɪŋ/ 69
at first /ət ˈfɜːst/ 71
at home /ət ˈhəʊm/ 50
at least /ət ˈliːst/ 71
at the end /ət əd ˈend/ 71
athlete /æθlɪt/ 45
athletics /æθˈletɪks/ 45, 46
atmosphere /ætˈməʊrə/ 13
atrocious /əˈtrɒkʃəs/ 66
attack /əˈtæk/ 15
attempt /əˈtempt/ 40
attend /əˈtend/ 50, 51
attention /əˈtɛnʃən/ 47
attic /ˈætɪk/ 30
attitude /əˈtɪtjuːd/ 49
attorney /əˈtɔrni/ 80
attract sb’s attention /ətrækt ... ətˈɛnʃən/ 47
author /əˈthɔr/ 47
autobiography /ˌɔːtəˈbaɪˈgrəfi/ 47
automatic /əˈtɒmətɪk/ 43
automatically /ˌɔːtəˈmætɪkli/ 51
available /əˈvərələbl/ 61
average /əˈvɛrɪdʒ/ 15
avocado /ˌævəˈkoʊdəʊ/ 16
avoid /əˈvɔɪd/ 3, 22
awake as in wide awake /əˈwɛk/ 19
award n /əˈwɔrd/ 42
aware /əˈwer(r)/ 2
away from home /əˈwɛ from ˈhəʊm/ 50
axe n, v /æks/ 41
BBC (British Broadcasting Corporation) /biː, biː ˈsiː/ 79
back /bek/ 70
back sth up /bæk ... ˈap/ 66
background /ˈbɛɡraʊnd/ 33
backward(s) /ˈbækwərd(ə)s/ 20
bad diet /bæd ˈdaɪət/ 17
bad for you /bæd fɔr juː/ 17
bake /bek/ 17
balanced diet /ˈbælənst ˈdaɪət/ 17
bald /bɔːld/ 5
ban v /bæn/ 64
band /bænd/ 44
bandage /ˈbændɪdʒ/ 20
bang v /bæŋ/ 26
bang v /bæŋ/ 20
bank loan /bæŋk, loʊn/ 55
bank /bæŋk/ 12
bargain /ˈbærɡɪn/ 18
barrier /ˈbærɪr/ 67
barrister /ˈbærɪstə(r)/ 80
based /ˈbeɪst/ 51
basement /ˈbeɪsmənt/ 30
basic /ˈbeɪsɪk/ 69
basil /ˈbeɪzl/ 16
bass as in sea bass /bæs/ 16
battle /ˈbeɪtl/ 39
be bothered /bi ˈbɒðəd/ 66
be going to /bi ˈɡoʊɪŋ tu/ 65
be keen on /bi ˈkiːn ɒn/ 62
be meant to /bi ˈmiːnt tu/ 61
be stuck /bi ˈstʌk/ 22
be supposed to /bi ˈsuːpt tu/ 61
be to blame for sth /bi tu ˈblem fɔr .../ 63
be up to sb /bi ˈap tu .../ 64
beach /ˈbiːtʃ/ 12
beak /ˈbiːk/ 15
bear n /bɛə(r)/ 15
bear as in can’t bear /bɛə(r)/ 62
beat /bɛt/ 46
beauty contest /ˈbjuːti kənˈtest/ 48
because /bɪˈkɒz, bɪˈkɑːz/ 68
bee /bi/ 15
beetroot /ˈbitrʊt/ 16
beg /bɛɡ/ 29
behave /bɪˈhɪv/ 64
behaviour /bɪˈhɪvjuə(r)/ 64
believe /bɪˈliːv/ 63
belong /bɪˈlɒŋ/ 18
belt /bɛlt/ 23
beneath /bɪˈniːθ/ 70
benefit /ˈbɛnɪfɪt/ 25
beside /bɪˈsaɪd/ 70
best man /best mən/ 10
best wishes /best ˈwɪʃz/ 78
better as in I’d better be off /ˈbetə(r)/ 77
beware /brɪˈweə(r)/ 67
beyond /bɪˈjɔnd/ 70
bike /bɪk/ 79
billfold /ˈbɪlfəld/ 80
biography /bɪˈɒɡrəfi/ 47
bile /bɪl/ 24
bitingly /ˈbɪtəli/ 76
bitingly cold /ˈbɪtɪŋli ˈkəʊld/ 13
blame as in be to blame /ˈblɛm/ 63
blame v /ˈblɛm/ 74
bland /ˈblænd/ 32
blanket /ˈblæŋkt/ 31
bleed /bliːd/ 20
blind /blaɪnd/ 37
block /bloʊk/ 22
blood /blɔːd/ 20
blossom /ˈblɒsəm/ 48
blouse /ˈblauz/ 23
blurry /ˈblɔːri/ 28
blue as in out of the blue /ˈbluː/ 77
board /bɔːd/ 79
board as in on board /bɔːd/ 71
boat /boʊt/ 12
boil /boʊl/ 17
bomb /bɒm/ 39
bomb scare /ˈbɒm, skər(r)/ 41
bone /boʊn/ 15
bonnet /ˈboʊnt/ 21
bonus /ˈbəʊnəs/ 54
book /bʊk/ 47
boot (of a car) /bʊt/ 21
boot (item of clothing) /bʊt/ 23
bother /bəʊθə(r)/ 66
bottom /ˈbɒtəm/ 33
bound to /bɔːnd tu/ 59
box /bɒks/ 31
boxer /ˈbɒksə(r)/ 45
bra /bɾa/ 23
bracelet /ˈbreɪslət/ 23
brackets /ˈbreɪkts/ 4
brain /brep/ 37
brake n, v /breɪk/ 21
cleaner as in vacuum cleaner

ekli:nə(r)/ 27

clear /klə(r)/ 2

clerical /ˈklɛrɪkl/ 53

clerk /klɛrk/ 53

cleft /kliːft/ 12

climate /ˈklɪmət/ 13

close /kləʊz/ 21

close by /ˌkləʊs ˈbɛə/ 78

close friend /ˌkləʊz ˈfrend/ 12

closet /ˈklɔːzət/ 80

cloth /kləʊθ/ 27

clip /klɪp/ 45

clue as in I haven’t a clue

/kluː/ 77

clutch /klʌtʃ/ 21

couch (= vehicle) /ˈkɒʃ/ 22

couch (= person) /ˈkɒʃ/ 45

coast /kɔːst/ 12

coconut /ˌkʌkʌˈnʌt/ 16

cod /kɒd/ 16

coffin /ˈkɒfɪn/ 10

collapse n. v /ˈkɔləps/ 14

collar /ˈkɔlə(r)/ 23

collide /kəˈlaɪd/ 22

collocation /ˌkɒləˈkeɪʃn/ 3

colon /ˈkəʊlən/ 4

colour /kəʊlə(r)/ 28

come round /kəʊm ˈraʊnd/ 20

comma /ˈkɔmə/ 4

commerce /kəˈmɜːns/ 77, 78

commentator

/ˌkɒməntətə(r)/ 45

committ a crime

/ˌkəˌmit əˈkraɪm/ 35

column /kəˈləʊm/ 69

communicate

/ˌkəˈmjuːnɪkeɪt/ 49

community /ˌkəˈmjuːnəti/ 48

company /ˈkæmpəni/ 56

compare /ˈkʌmpərə(r)/ 60, 74

comparison /ˈkɒmpərənʃn/ 60

compete /ˈkɒmpət/ 46

competition /ˌkɒmpəˈtɪʃn/ 46

competition /ˌkɒmpəˈtɪʃn/ 46

competitive /ˈkɒmpətɪtɪv/ 46

competitor (= sports person)

/ˌkɒmpəˈtɪtə(r)/ 46

competitor (= rival company)

/ˌkɒmpəˈtɪtə(r)/ 56

complain /ˈkɒmplɛn/ 53, 66

complaint /ˈkɒmplɛnt/ 53, 66

completely /ˈkɒmplɪtli/ 60, 76

complex /ˈkɒmplɛks/ 2

complicated /ˈkɒmplɪˌkeɪtɪd/ 2

compose /ˈkɒmpəz/ 44

composer /ˈkɒmpəzoʊ(r)/ 44

compromise n. v

/ˈkʌmprəmaɪz/ 39

compulsory /ˌkʌmpləˈsərɪ/ 64

concentrate /ˈkɒnsəntreɪt/ 19

concerned /kənˈsɜːnd/ 25

concrete /ˈkɒnkrɛt/ 31

conditions /ˌkɒndəˈʃənз/ 54

conductor /kənˈdʌktə(r)/ 44

confirm /kənˈfɜːm/ 11, 51, 61

confirmation

/ˌkɒnfiˈmeɪʃn/ 11, 51

conflict /ˈkɒnflikt/ 39

connect /kəˈnekt/ 4

connecting flight

/ˌkəˈnektɪŋ ˈflɪt/ 22

conscious /ˈkɒnʃəs/ 20

consequently

/ˌkɒnˈsekwəntli/ 68

consider /kənˈsɪdə(r)/ 63, 66

considerable /kənˈsɪdərəbl/ 14

consideration

/ˌkənˈsɪdərəʃn/ 66

consist /kənˈsɪst/ 38

constituency

/ˌkɒnˈstrɪkjʊnəs/ 38

construct (= make a

sentence) /kənˈstrʌkt/ 1

construct (= build)

/ˌkɒnstrʌkt/ 45

construction (= sentence)

/ˌkɒnstrʌkʃn/ 1

construction (= building)

/ˌkɒnstrʌkʃn/ 45

consultant /kənˈsəltənt/ 25

contact v. /ˈkɒntəkt/ 51

contact lenses

/ˈkɒntəkt ˈlɛnsəz/ 5

contain /kənˈteɪn/ 2

contemporary

/ˌkɒntəmˈpærəri/ 69

contest /ˈkɒntest/ 46, 48

context /ˈkɒntekst/ 1

continuous assessment

/ˌkɒnˈtʃuːnəs əˈsesmənt/ 50

contract /ˈkɒntrækt/ 57

contrast n. /ˈkɒntrəst/ 68

contrast v. /ˈkɒntrəst/ 68

control as in in control

/ˈkɒntrəl/ 39

convenient /kənˈvɪnɪənt/ 29

conversation /ˌkɒnˌvɜːrˈzeɪʃn/ 1

convert /kənˈvɜːt/ 30

convinced /kənˈvɪnsəd/ 76

cookie /ˈkʊki/ 80

cope /kəʊp/ 71

corner /ˈkɒrnə(r)/ 33

corridor /ˌkɔrədə(r)/ 30

cost a fortune

/ˌkɒst ɑːˈfɔːtʃn/ 18

costs as in operating costs

/ˈkɒsts/ 55

costume /ˈkɒstjuːm/ 48

cotton /ˈkɒtn/ 23, 26

couple /ˈkəpl/ 10

court (for tennis, badminton,

etc.) /ˈkɔːt/ 43

court as in go to court /ˈkɔːt/ 36

courtroom /ˌkɔːtrʊm/ 36

cover n. /ˈkʌvə(r)/ 47

cover v. /ˈkʌvə(r)/ 20

cow /kəʊ/ 15

crab /kræb/ 16

cracked /kræk/ 26

cramped /ˈkræmpt/ 69

crash /kræʃ/ 22

crazy /ˈkriːzi/ 6

crazy about /ˌkriːzi əˈbaʊt/ 62

creamy /ˈkriːmi/ 73

creatae /ˌkriːˈtiːə(r)/ 43

creativity /ˈkriːtəti/ 15

crème /ˈkreːm/ 10

cremation /ˈkɜːməˈʃn/ 10

crime /kraɪm/ 35

criminal /ˈkraɪməl/ 35

crisis /ˈkrɪzɪs/ 39

critical (= dangerous)

/ˌkrɪtɪkl/ 39

critical (of sth/ sb) /ˈkrɪtɪkəl/ 46

criticize /ˈkrɪtɪsaɪz/ 46

crops /kroʊps/ 14

cross /kroʊs/ 67

crowd /kraʊd/ 45

crowded /kraʊdɪd/ 69

cruel /kruːəl/ 14, 57

cruelty /ˈkruːəlti/ 73

cry /kraɪ/ 34

cultural /ˈkʌltʃərəl/ 41

culture /ˈkʌltʃər/ 41

curious /ˈkjuəriəs/ 69

current affairs

/ˌkærənt əˈfiːz/ 41

currently /ˌkærəntli/ 30

curriculum vitae

/ˌkərɪkljuːm ˈvaɪtɪ/ 79

curved /ˈkɜːvɪd/ 31

cut n. /kæt/ 20

cut v. /kæt/ 28

cut down /ˈkɔt ˈdɔːn/ 17

cycling /ˈsaɪklɪŋ/ 46
drugstore /drʌɡstɔː(r)/ 80
drummer /ˈdrʌmər/ 44
dry up /ˈdrʌp/ 12
duck /dʌk/ 16
due (= expected) /djuː/ 22
due to /djuː ˈtiː/ 68
dull /dʌl/ 6
during /ˈdjuərɪŋ/ 70
dust n. v /dʌst/ 27
dustbin /ˈdʌstbɪn/ 80
dusty /ˈdʌsti/ 27
duty /djʊti/ 53

EU (European Union)
/juː/ 79
eagle /ˈeɡl/ 15
earrings /ˈtɜrnɪz/ 23
earth /ɜːθ/ 11
earthquake /ˈɔːθkwərk/ 14
easy-going /ˈɛzi ˈɡoʊɪŋ/ 6
economical /ˌɪkˈɒnəmɪkl/ 73
dead /ˈded/ 70
edit /ˈedit/ 41, 42
editing /ˈeditɪŋ/ 42
editor /ˈedɪtə(r)/ 41
effect /ɪˈfekt/ 13
effective /ɪˈfektɪv/ 2, 69
effectively /ɪˈfektɪvlɪ/ 2
efficient /ɪˈfɪʃnt/ 69
effort /ˈefɔːt/ 56
elbow /ˈelbəʊ/ 20
elect /ɪˈlekt/ 38
election /ɪˈleksn/ 38
electrical /ɪˈlektrɪkl/ 52
electrician /ˌɪlekˈtrɪʃən/ 52
elegant /ˈelɪɡənt/ 23
elephant /ˈɛlɪfənt/ 15
elevator /ˈɛlvərət(r)/ 80
elsewhere /ˈels ˈweə(r)/ 53
embarrassed /ɪmˈbærəst/ 69
embarrassing /ɪmˈbærəsnɪŋ/ 69
emergency services
/ɪˈmɜːʒənsi ˈsɛrvɪsɪz/ 22
emigrate /ˈemɪɡreɪt/ 9
emotion /ɪˈməʃn/ 7
emotional /ɪˈməʃnəl/ 7
emphasis /ˈemfəsɪs/ 3
emphasize /ˈemfəzaɪz/ 3
employ /ɪmˈplɔɪ/ 56
employee /ɪmˈplɔɪər/ 56
employer /ɪmˈplɔɪər(r)/ 56
enable /ˈenəbl/ 74
enclose /ˈɪnkləʊz/ 78
encourage /ɪnˈkærədʒ/ 2, 74
encouragement /ɪnˈkærədʒmənt/ 2

encouraging /ɪnˈkærədʒɪŋ/ 2
encyclopedia
/ɪn ˈsɛkləpəˈliːdʒə/ 47
end as in at/in the end
/ˈend /ˈɛn/ 71
end up /ˈend ˈʌp/ 22
enemy /ˈenəmi/ 39
energetic /ˈenərˌdʒetɪk/ 6
energy /ˈenədʒi/ 6
engine /ˈendʒɪn/ 21
engineering /ˈendʒɪnɪŋ/ 52
enormous /ˈnɔrmos/ 30
enough /ˈnʌf/ 25
enquiry /ˈmərkwərri/ 53
entrepreneur /ˌentəˈprəʊənər/ 48
entertaining /ˌentəˈtɛmɪŋ/ 42
entertainment
/ˌentəˈtemənt/ 48
enthusiasm /məˈθəuziəzəm/ 2
enthusiastic /məˈθəuziˈæstɪk/ 2
entitled /məˈtaɪltid/ 54
entire /məˈtaɪrə(r)/ 41
entry /ˈentri/ 3
envious /ˈɛnvoʊs/ 7
environment
/ɪˈvərəmənt/ 13
environmentalist
/ˌɪvərəˈmænəlɪst/ 13
equivalent /ɪkˈvɜːrələnt/ 42
erupt /ˈɜːrpt/ 14
erection /ɪˈrɛkʃn/ 14
especially /ˈesˈpeʃəli/ 78
essential /ˈesəntʃəl/ 49, 69
establish /ˈɛstɪbliʃ/ 40
establishment
/ˈɛstɪbliʃmənt/ 40
estate agent
/ˈɛstɪt ˈɛdʒənt/ 52

European Union
/juːrəˈpiːən ˈjuːʒən/ 79
evacuate /ˈveɪkjuət/ 14
evacuation /ˌvɛkʃən/ 14
evaluate /ˈevəljuət/ 58
evaluation /ˌvɛljuəˈʃən/ 58
even /ˈɛvn/ 33
even as in break even /ˈɛvn /ˈbrʊk ˈɛvn/ 56
even though /ˈɛvn ˈθruː/ 68
eventually /ˈɛvəntjʊəlɪ/ 70
everyday /ˈevriˈdeɪ/ 2
evidence /ˈɛvdəns/ 36
equally the same
/əɡˈzɛktli ðə ˈseɪm/ 60
examine /əɡˈzemən/ 24
examiner /əɡˈzemənə(r)/ 49
example as in for example
/əɡˈzæmpl/ 3

except /ɪkˈsepʃənt/ 60
exclamation mark
/ˌɛkskləˈmeɪʃən ˈmɑːk/ 4
exercise /ˈeksəsaːr/ 17
exhausted /ˈɛksəstɪd/ 19
exhibition /ˈeksɪbɪʃn/ 43
exist /ɪksɪst/ 11
existence /ɪksˈɪstəns/ 11
expand /ɪkˈspænd/ 2
expect /ɪkˈspekt/ 59, 65
expect as in I expect so
/ɪkˈspekt/ 65
expect a baby/child
/ɪkˈspekt əˈbeɪbi, ˈtʃɪld/ 5
expectancy as in life expectancy
/ɪkˈspektənseɪ/ 15
expected /ɪkˈspektɪd/ 69
experience /ɪkˈspiərɪəns/ 52
experiment /ɪkˈspecmənt/ 11
experimentation /ɪkˈspektəmənt/ 11
expert /ɪkˈspɛkt/ 43, 66
explain /ɪkˈsplɛn/ 1
explanation /ˈekspləˈneʃn/ 1
explode /ɪkˈsplɔʊd/ 39
exploit /ɪkˈsploit/ 57
exploitation /ˈekspləˈteɪʃn/ 57
exploration /ˈekspləˈrɑːʃn/ 11
explore /ɪkˈsploə(r)/ 11
explosion /ɪkˈsplozən/ 39
express /ɪkˈspres/ 2
expression /ɪkˈspresən/ 3
expressway /ˈeksprɛswэ/ 80
extend /ɪkˈstænd/ 73
extension /ɪkˈstɛnʃn/ 73
extent as in to some /a certain extent
/ɪkˈstɛnt/ 76
extinguish /ɪkˈstɪŋkwɪʃ/ 75
extraordinary /ɪkˈstrɔːdɪnərɪ/ 42
extreme /ɪkˈstrɪm/ 13
eye as in keep an eye on
/ən/ 77
eyebrows /ˈeɪbrowz/ 5

fabric /ˈfæbrɪk/ 23
face (= do sth about) /fɛs/ 38
face (= look towards) /fɛs/ 70
face-to-face / fɛs tə fɛs/ 53
fact as in in fact /fæk/ 65, 76
fact as in in (actual) fact
/fæk/ 76
factor /fækˈtə(r)/ 57
fail /feɪl/ 56
faint /fɛnt/ 20
fair /fɛr/ 69, 72
fairly /fɛrli/ 76
faithfully as in yours faithfully
/ˈfeɪθfəlɪ/ 78
fall /fɔːl/ 13, 55
fall asleep /fɔːl ə'sli:p/ 19
fall out with /fɔːl ə'at wɪd/ 8
famine /'feɪmɪn/ 13
fan /fæn/ 42, 45
fancy (= find sb attractive) /'fænsi/ 77
fancy (= want sth) /'fænsi/ 77
far-fetched /fɔːr 'teftʃ/ 11
fascinating /fə'semɪtɪŋ/ 47
fashionable /'feɪʃnəbl/ 23, 73
fast asleep /'fæst a'sli:p/ 19
fasten /'fæstn/ 72
fattening /'fætnɪŋ/ 17
fattish /fætʃ/ 5
faucet /'fɔsɛt/ 80
fault /fɔːlt/ 63
faulty /'fɔːlti/ 26
favour as in favour of /'fəvə(r)r/ 63
favourite /'fəvərɪt/ 46
fear n, v /fiə(r)/ 11
feathers /fɑːdəz/ 15
feature /'fiətʃər/ 30
fed up /fɛd 'ʌp/ 76
fed up with /fɛd ə'ʌp ɪn/ 76
feedback /'fiːdbæk/ 51, 57
fecl /'fiːl/ 32
feel like (doing sth) /'fiːl lɪk/ 77
feelings as in mixed feelings /'fiːlɪŋz/ 69
fees /fiːz/ 50
female /fɛməl/ 5, 15
fence /fens/ 31
fencing /'fensɪŋ/ 46
fennel /'fɛnɪl/ 16
festival /'fɛstɪvl/ 48
fetch /'fɛtʃ/ 77
fiction /'fɪkʃn/ 47
fig /'fɪɡ/ 16
flight n, v /flaɪt/ 39
fighter /'fɪtə(r)/ 39
figure /'fɪɡə(r)/ 5, 23
filling /'fɪlɪŋ/ 24
film (for camera) /'fɪlm/ 43
film (at cinema) /'fɪlm/ 80
filthy /'fɪlti/ 29
final /'faɪnəl/ 46
finance n /'fænəns/ 52, 55
finance v /'fænəns/ 55
financial /'fɪnənʃl/ 55
find a solution /'faɪnd ə'sə'lju:ʃn/ 53
fine n, v /fain/ 36
fingerprints /'fɪŋɡərpɪントz/ 36
fire n /'faɪə(r)/ 67
fire v /'faɪə(r)/ 53
fireworks /'faɪəwɜːks/ 48
firm /'fɜːrm/ 69
first as in at first /ˈfaɪst/ 71
fix /'fɪks/ 26
fizzy drink /'fɪzi ˈdriŋk/ 17
flag /'flæg/ 45
flash /'flæʃ/ 43
flautist /'flɔːtɪst/ 44
flavour /ˈflɔːvr/ 32
flexibility /'flɛksɪəbɪlɪtɪ/ 50
flexible /'flɛksəbl/ 50
float /fəʊlt/ 12
flood /fəʊld/ 12
flour /flɔː(r)/ 17
flow /fləʊ/ 12
flu /flʊ/ 79
fluctuate /'flʌktjʊeɪt/ 55
fluctuation /'flʌktjuəˈkeɪʃn/ 55
fluent /'fljuːənt/ 2
fluently /ˈfljuːəntli/ 2
flutter /'flʌtə/ 44
fly /flai/ 15
focus n, v (= attention/attend) /'fɔːkəs/ 38
focus n, v (in photography) /'fɔːkəs/ 43
fold as in fold in half /'fɔːld/ 34
follow instructions /fəʊləʊ məˈstrɪkʃnz/ 49
fond /fɒnd/ 62
food scare /'fɔːd ,skɛə(r)/ 41
footballer /'fɔːtbɔːlə(r)/ 45
e for example /fɔr eg/ˈzæmpl/ 3
for instance /fɔr ɪn'stəns/ 3
for sure /fɔr ˈʃʊər/ 61
forbid /fərˈbɪd/ 64
force /fɔːs/ 64
forecast n, v /'fɔːkərəst/ 58
foreground /'fɔːɡraʊnd/ 33
foreign /fɔrən/ 1
foreigner /'fɔːrənər/ 1
formal /'fɔːməl/ 1
fortune as in cost a fortune /'fɔːtʃn/ 18
forward(s) /'fɔːwardz/ 20
foster parent /'faʊntə,ˌpɛrənt/ 9
found /fɔʊnd/ 57
founder /'faʊndə(r)/ 57
frame /frem/ 43
free /ˈfriː/ 61
freedom /'frɪdəm/ 50
freeway /'frɪweɪ/ 80
French fries /'frɛns frites/ 80
fridge /frɪdʒ/ 79
friends as in make friends /frendz/ 8
friendly /'frendli/ 8
friendship /'frendʃɪp/ 8
fringe /frɪndʒ/ 28
frog /frog/ 15
time from to time /ˈfrəm .tæm təˈtæm/ 70
front /frʌnt/ 70
frost /frost/ 13
frosty /frosti/ 13
frustrating /frʌˈstrəntɪŋ/ 2
frustration /frʌˈstrənʃn/ 2
fray /frɛi/ 17
frying pan /'fræniŋˌpen/ 17
full stop /fʊlˈstɑp/ 4
funeral /ˈfjuːmərəl/ 10
fur /fɜː(r)/ 15
furious /'fjuərɪəs/ 7
further /ˈfɜːðə(r)/ 78
further to /ˈfɜːðər tu/ 78
furthermore /'fɜːðərnɔː(r)/ 68

g (gram(s)) /'ɡrɑːm(z)/ 79
gm (gram(s)) /'ɡrɑːm(z)/ 79
gain /ɡɛin/ 11, 56, 40
gale /ɡeɪl/ 13
gap in the market /ˈɡæp ɪn ˈmeɪkɪt/ 57
garbage /'ɡɑːbrɪdʒ/ 80
garbage can /'ɡɑːbrɪdʒ ˈkæn/ 80
gas (= e.g. oxygen) /ɡæs/ 13
gas (= gasoline) /ɡæs/ 80
gasoline /ˈɡæsəlɪn/ 80
gather /ˈɡætə(r)/ 58
gear lever /ˈɡiə,ˈlaɪvə(r)/ 21
gear stick /ˈɡiə ˈstɪk/ 21
general as in in general /ˈdʒenərəl/ 71
gen generally /ˈdʒenərəli/ 71, 76
generation /ˈdʒenərəteɪʃn/ 9
generosity /ˈdʒenərəsəti/ 6
generous /ˈdʒenərəs/ 6
gentle /ˈdʒentl/ 73
gentleness /ˈdʒentlnəs/ 73
get (= fetch) /ɡet/ 77
get (= receive) /ɡet/ 36, 42
get better /ɡet ˈbɛtə(r)/ 2
get divorced /d ˈvaɪrsəd/ 9
get dressed /ɡet ˈdrest/ 72
get held up /ɡet ˈheld əˈsp/ 22
get in /ɡet ˈɪn/ 22

WORD LIST 239
get on /'get ən/ 75
got on with /'get ən wɪð/ 75
got on sb’s nerves
/'get pn, ... na:nvz/ 66
got over /'ɡəʊvə(r)/ 25, 75
got rid of /'ɡəʊrid əv/ 71
got sth done /'ɡəʊ ... ɪn/ 28
got stuck /'ɡəʊstæk/ 22
got the sack /'ɡəʊ ðə ˈsæk/ 53
got through /'ɡəʊ thrəʊ/ 75
got time off /'ɡəʊ təm ˈɒf/ 54
got to know /'ɡəʊ tə ˈnɔː(ɹ)/ 8
got to like /'ɡəʊ tə ˈlaɪk/ 62
got together /'ɡəʊ təˈɡeðə(r)/ 8, 61
got undressed /'ɡəʊ ənˈdrɛst/ 72
gift /gift/ 47
gist /ˈdʒɪst/ 1
give it a trim /ˈɡɪv ɪt ə ˈtrɪm/ 28
give sb a hand
/'ɡɪv, ... ə ˈhænd/ 77
give sb advice
/'ɡɪv, ... ədˈvaɪs/ 51
give sb feedback
/'ɡɪv, ... ˈfiːdbæk/ 51
give sb the sack
/'ɡɪv, ... ðə ˈsæk/ 53
give sb away
/'ɡɪv, ... əˈweɪ/ 75
give sb out
/'ɡɪv, ... əʊt/ 75
give up /ˈɡɪv əp/ 39, 75
glad /ɡlad/ 69
glance /ˈɡlæns/ 32
global warming
/'ɡloʊbl ˈwɜːmɪŋ/ 13
glue /ɡlu:/ 26
go as in to go /ɡəʊ/ 70
go bald /ˈɡəʊ bɔːld/ 5
go blind /ˈɡəʊ ˈblaɪnd/ 37
go deaf /ˈɡəʊ ˈdez/ 37
go down /ˈɡəʊ ˈdaʊn/ 55, 75
go grey /ˈɡəʊ ˈɡreɪ/ 5
go into hospital
/'ɡəʊ ɪnto ˈhospɪtəl/ 25
go off (= ring) /ˈɡəʊ əf/ 19
go off (= explode) /ˈɡəʊ əf/ 39
go on (with sth) /ˈɡəʊ ən/ 75
go on a diet
/'ɡəʊ, pn əˈdæt/ 17
go on strike
/'ɡəʊ, pn ˈstræk/ 54
go out of business
/'ɡəʊ,əʊt əv ˈbiznəs/ 56
go out with /ˈɡəʊ əʊt ˈwɪð/ 8
go over /ˈɡəʊ əʊvə(r)/ 75
go smoothly /ˈɡəʊ ˈsmɔːðli/ 65
go through /ˈɡəʊ əˈθruː/ 1
go to court /ˈɡəʊ tə ˈkɔːt/ 36
go to hospital
/'ɡəʊ tə ˈhospɪtəl/ 25
go to jail /ˈɡəʊ tə ˈdʒeɪl/ 35
go to prison /ˈɡəʊ tə ˈprɪzn/ 35
go to sleep /ˈɡəʊ tə ˈslɪp/ 19
go up /ˈɡəʊ əp/ 55, 75
go white /ˈɡəʊ ˈwaɪt/ 5
go wrong /ˈɡəʊ ˈrɒŋ/ 8, 65
goal /ɡəʊl/ 2, 38, 58
goat /ɡəʊt/ 15
gold /ɡəʊld/ 31
golfer /ˈɡɔlfə(r)/ 45
good chance /ˈɡʊd ˈtʃɑːns/ 59
good for you /ˈɡʊd fə juː/ 17
goods /ˈɡʊdz/ 56
gorilla /ˈɡɔrɪlə/ 15
govern /ˈgəʊvən/ 38
government /ˈɡəʊvərnment/ 38
grab /ɡræb/ 32
gradual /ˈɡrædʒuəl/ 13, 55
gradually /ˈɡrædʒuəli/ 13, 55
graduate n. /ˈɡrædʒjuət/ 50
graduate v. /ˈɡrædʒju:ət/ 50
graffiti /ˈɡroʊfɪti/ 29
gram /ɡræm/ 79
grand /ɡrænd/ 69
grapefruit /ˈɡrɛprfruːt/ 16
grateful as in I would be grateful if... /ˈɡreɪtɪf l/ 78
grave /ɡrɑːv/ 10
grave stone /ˈɡrɑːvstəʊn/ 10
grease /ɡreɪs/ 27
greasy /ˈɡreɪsi/ 27
greedy /ˈɡriːdi/ 60
gripping /ˈɡripɪŋ/ 42
groom /ɡruːm/ 10
ground (= earth’s surface)
/ɡraʊnd/ 14
ground (= sports area)
/ɡraʊnd/ 45
group /ɡruːp/ 44
grow /ɡrəʊ/ 55, 56
growth /ɡrəʊθ/ 29, 55, 56
guarantee /ɡuərənti/ 66
guess n., v. /ˈɡes/ 1
guess as in I guess so /ˈɡes/ 65
guest /ˈɡest/ 10
guilty /ˈɡɪlти/ 36
guitar /ˈɡɪtə(r)/ 44
guitarist /ˈɡɪtərɪst/ 44
gun /ɡʌn/ 39
gun battle /ˈɡʌn ˈbætvl/ 39
gym /ˈdʒɪm/ 79
gymnast /ˈdʒɪmnəst/ 45
gymnastics /ˈdʒɪmnəstɪks/ 45, 46
habit /ˈhæbɪt/ 19
hair as in lose your hair
/ˈhɛə(r)/ 5
haircut /ˈhɛəkʌt/ 28
hairdresser /ˈhɛədrɛsə(r)/ 28
hairstyle /ˈhɛəstайл/ 28
half as in fold in half /ˈhælf/ 34
half a dozen /ˈhælf ə ˈdoʊzn/ 39
half-brother /ˈhælf,brəðə(r)/ 9
half-sister /ˈhælfˌsɪstə(r)/ 9
half /ˈhælf/ 30
hall of residence
/ˈhɔːl əv ˈreznədz/ 50
hammer /ˈhæmə(r)/ 26
hand as in left-hand corner,
right-hand side /ˈhænd/ 33
hand as in lend sb a hand
/ˈhænd/ 77
hand as in on the one/other
hand /ˈhænd/ 68
hand in your notice
/ˈhænd ɪn ˈnɔːs/ 53
hand sth out
/ˈhænd, ... əʊt/ 75
handcuffs /ˈhændkɑːfs/ 36
handle as in door handle
/ˈhændl/ 21
handle v. /ˈhændl/ 53
handy /ˈhændi/ 29
hang on
/ˈhæŋ ən/ 77
happy /ˈhæpi/ 66
harbour /ˈhɔːbə(r)/ 12
hardback /ˈhɑːrdbæk/ 47
hard-working
/ˈhɑːrdˌwɜːkɪŋ/ 6
harm n., v. /ˈhɑrm/ 15
harm v. /ˈhɑrm/ 13
harmful /ˈhɑrmfl/ 13, 15, 73
harmless /ˈhɑːmliəs/ 15, 73
have a chat
/ˌhæv ə ˈʃeɪt/ 1
have a debate
/ˌhæv ə dɪˈbeɪt/ 50
have a haircut
/ˌhæv ə ˈhækət/ 28
have a lie-in
/ˌhæv ə ˈlaɪˌɪn/ 19
have a lot in common
/ˌhæv ə ˈlət ɪn ˈkɒmən/ 8
have a nap
/ˌhæv ə ˈneɪp/ 19
have a restless night
//hev ə _restles 'nirt/ 19
have a row /hev ə 'rāl/ 8
have a stroke
//hev ə 'strauk/ 37
have an operation
//hev ə _opə'reifn/ 25
have fun /hev 'fən/ 48
have no choice
//hev ,nəo 'fɔrs/ 64
have no intention of doing s.th.
//hev ,nəo _in'tenʃən əv
.... / 65
have nothing in common
//hev ,nəthn_ in 'kəmən/ 8
have s.th. done
//hev _'dən ti/ 28
have the right to
//hev də 'rāt ti/ 54
have time off
//hev ,tām 'ɒf/ 54
have toothache
//hev 'tu:θək/ 24
have your back to s.th.
//hev ɪə _'bæk ti _... 70
headlights /hed'laits/ 21
headline /hed'leim/ 41
head /hɛd/ 20
heal up /heil 'ʌp/ 20
health scare //helθ ˌskeə(r)/ 41
healthly /helθli/ 17
hear /hər/ 32
hear from sb /hər _frəm _... 78
heart /hɑrt/ 37
heart attack /hɑrt ə'tæk/ 37
heart disease /hɑrt drizizi/ 37
heartbroken /hɑrtbɹəkən/ 7
heatwave /hɪt'weɪv/ 13
heavy sleeper
//hevi _'slɪpə(r)/ 19
heavy traffic /hevi _'træfɪk/ 22
held up /held _'ʌp/ 22
helmet as in safety helmet
//helm/ 57
herbs /hɜrz/ 16
herd /hɜrd/ 15
hesitate //hezətət/ 78
hi /hʌi/ 77
hide your feelings
//haid ɪə _'fʌlmɪŋ/ 7
high-heeled /hɑr 'hɛld/ 23
high school /hɑr _ˈskuːl/ 80
high tide /hɑr _ˈtʌd/ 12
highly /hɑrli/ 76
highway /hɑrweɪ/ 80
hire a car /haər ə 'kɑr(r)/ 22
hit /hɪt/ 14
hold an election
//hoʊld _ən _ˈlekʃn/ 38
hold on /hoʊld _ˈon/ 77
hold the record
//hoʊld _də _ˈrekord/ 46
hole /hoʊl/ 26
home as at home /hoʊm/ 50
homesick /hoʊmsɪk/ 50
honest /ˈɒnɪst/ 6
honesty /ˈɒnɪstɪ/ 6
honeymoon /həˈnɪmʊm/ 10
hoofer /ˈhuːfr/ 27
hope /hoʊp/ 65
hope as in I hope so/not
//hoʊp/ 65
horizon /həˈraʊzn/ 12
horizontal /ˌhɔrɪˈzontl/ 31
hospital /ˈhɒspɪtl/ 25
horn /hɔrn/ 21
horns /hɔrnz/ 15
horse /hɔrs/ 15
hour as in rush hour
//ˈaʊə(r)/ 22
how about? /haʊ ə _bəʊt/ 61
how are things?
//haʊ _ə _θɪŋz/ 77
how do you feel about ...?
//hoʊ _də _ʃu: _fiː _ə _bəʊt
.... / 63
however /hoʊˈevə(r)/ 68
how's it going?
//hoʊz _ɪt _ˈgoʊŋ/ 77
huge /hjuːdʒ/ 18, 30
human /ˈhjuːmən/ 13
humid /ˈhjuːmɪd/ 13
humorous /ˈhjuːmərəs/ 73
humour as in sense of
humour /ˈhjuːmə(r)/ 6
hunt /hʌnt/ 15
hurricane /həˈrɪkən/ 14
hurry /ˈhʌrri/ 29
hurry as in a hurry
//ˈhʌrri/ 71
hurry up /ˈhʌrri _ˈʌp/ 77
hurt sb's feelings
//hɑːt _... _ˈfɜlmɪŋ/ 7
husband /ˈhʌzbənd/ 10
hyphen /ˈhaɪfən/ 4
ID card (identity card)
//aɪ _ˈdɛk_ ˈkɑrd/ 79
ISP (internet service provider)
//aɪ ɛs _piː/ 79
IT (information technology)
//aɪ _ˈɪt/ 79
i.e. //aɪ ɪ: // 52
I assume so
//aɪ_sˈɡuəm _səʊ/ 65
I'd better be off
//aɪ ˈbetə bi _ˈɒf/ 77
I don't think so
//aɪ dəʊnt _ˈθɪŋk _səʊ/ 65
I doubt it //aɪ _ˈdouət _ɪt/ 65
I expect so
//aɪ ɪkˈspekt _səʊ/ 65
I guess so //aɪ _ˈges _səʊ/ 65
I haven't a clue
//aɪ _hævənt _ə _ˈklu/ 77
I hope not //aɪ _hoʊp _nɒt/ 65
I hope so //aɪ _hoʊp _səʊ/ 65
I imagine so
//aɪ _ɪmˈɡeɪn _səʊ/ 65
I suppose so
//aɪ _səˈpɔʊz _səʊ/ 65
I think so //aɪ _θɪŋk _səʊ/ 65
I think ... //aɪ _θɪŋk _... 63
I think that
//aɪ _θɪŋk _dæt/ 63
I would appreciate it if...
//aɪ _wʊd _ərɪˈpriːʃət _ɪt _ɪf/ 78
I would be grateful if...
//aɪ _wʊd _bi _ˈɡreɪtfl _ɪf/ 78
ideal /aɪdiəl/ 29
identical /aɪdɪˈtɪkl/ 60
identify /aɪˈdɛntɪfl/ 1
identity /aɪˈdɛntəti/ 79
idiom /ˈɪdɪəm/ 3, 77
idiomatic /ˌɪdɪˈmætɪk/ 77
if you ask me....
//aɪ _ˈɑsk _mɪ:/ 63
ignition /ˈɪɡnɪʃn/ 21
ignore /ɪɡˈnɔr/ 33, 58
illegal /ɪˈlɪgəl/ 35
illegible /ɪˈlɛɡəbl/ 72
illuminate /ɪˈlɪminet/ 48
illustrate /ɪlˈstrɛit/ 33
illustration /ɪlˈstrɛʃn/ 33
I'm afraid ... //əm _ə fɹɛd _... 61
I'm afraid not
//əm _ə _fɹɛd _nət/ 65
I'm afraid so
//əm _ə _fɹɛd _səʊ/ 65
I'm meant to
//əm _mɛnt tə _61
I'm not bothered
//əm _nət _ˈboʊdəd _66
I'm supposed to
//əm _səˈpɔst tə _61
imagine /ɪmˈɡeɪn/ 65, 74
imagine as in I imagine so
//ɪmˈɡeɪn _... 65
mad about (= liking very much) /ˈmaːd ŋəˈbaʊt/ 62
Madam /ˈmeɪdəm/ 78
main difference /ˌmeɪn ˈdɪfrəns/ 60
main road /ˈmeɪn rəʊd/ 80
mainly /ˈmeɪni/ 76
maintain /ˈmeɪnten/ 14
majority /ˈmeɪðʒərəti/ 38
make as in can you make it? /meɪk/ 61
make (= perform an action) /meɪk/ 1, 10, 65
make a claim /meɪk ə ˈklem/ 66
make a complaint /meɪk ə kəmˈplɛnt/ 53, 66
make a note /meɪk ə ˈnəʊt/ 1
make a profit /meɪk ə ˈprɒft/ 55
make a promise /meɪk ə ˈprɒmɪs/ 41
make a speech /meɪk ə ˈspiːʃ/ 10
make an appointment /meɪk ən əˈpɔɪntmənt/ 24
make an enquiry /meɪk ən ˈmɔkrəri/ 53
make arrangements /meɪk əˈrɛndʒmənts/ 52
make friends /meɪk ˈfrendz/ 8
make mistakes /meɪk ˈmɜːsts/ 1
make plans /meɪk ˈplɛnz/ 65
make progress /meɪk ˈprəʊgres/ 2
make sb do sth /meɪk ˌsəˈDUː ˈstoʊ/ 64
make sb redundant /meɪk əm ˈrɛndərənt/ 53
make sth up /meɪk əm əˈʌp/ 75
make sure /meɪk ˈʃʊər/ 53, 66
make the most of /meɪk əm ˈmoʊst əv/ 71
male /meɪl/ 5, 15
mall /meɪl, meɪl/ 80
manage /ˈmeɪndʒ/ 50, 52, 71, 74
management /ˈmeɪndʒmənt/ 52
manager /ˈmeɪndʒə(r)/ 45
manual /ˈmeɪnʃʊəl/ 47
manufacture /ˈmeɪnʃʊər ə(r)/ 52, 57
manufacturer /ˈmeɪnʃʊər ə(r)/ 57
manufacturing /ˈmeɪnʃʊər ə(r)/ 52
mark as in exclamation /ˈmeɪk/ 4
market as in target market /ˈmeɪkət/ 58
market leader /ˈmeɪkət ˈliːdə(r)/ 56
market research /ˈmeɪkət riˈsɜːtʃ, riˈsɜːtʃ/ 56
marketing /ˈmeɪkətɪŋ/ 58
marks as in quotation marks /ˈmeɪks/ 4
marriage /ˈmeɪrdʒ/ 10
masterpiece /ˈmeɪstəpiəs/ 43
match /meɪtʃ/ 23
mate /meɪt/ 77
material /ˈmeɪtʃərəl/ 23
mature /ˈmeɪtʃə(r)/ 63
maximum /ˈmeɪksɪməm/ 45
may /meɪ/ 36, 59
mean /miːn/ 6
mean a lot /miːn əˈluːt/ 48
meant as in be meant to /meənt 22, 61
meanwhile /ˈmiːnwaɪl/ 70
measure /ˈmeʒə(r)/ 73
measurement /ˈmeʒəmənt/ 73
mechanic /ˈmeɪkənik/ 52
medal /ˈmeɪdl/ 31, 46
melody /ˈmelodi/ 44
melt /meɪlt/ 13
member /ˈmeɪnbə(r)/ 9
Member of Parliament /ˈmeɪnbə(ɹ) əv ˈpɔːləˌlɛmənt/ 38
member of the public /ˈmeɪnbə(ɹ) əv ˈpʌblɪk/ 53
memory loss /ˈmeməri ˈlɒs/ 37
mend /mend/ 26
mention /ˈmɛntʃən/ 66
metal /ˈmeɪtl/ 31
method /ˈmeθəd/ 1
metric /ˈmeθrɪk/ 79
metric capacity /ˈmeθrɪk ˈkæpəsəti/ 79
metric length /ˈmeθrɪk ˈlɛŋθ/ 79
metric weight /ˈmeθrɪk ˈwɛt/ 79
mice /ˈmaɪs/ 15
middle /ˈmɪdl/ 33
might /mɪt/ 36, 59
mild /ˈmaɪld/ 13
miles per hour /ˈmaɪlz ˈpɜːr ˈmeɪlə(r)/ 79
millilitre /ˈmɪlɪliːtə(r)/ 79
millimetre /ˈmaɪlɪmətə(r)/ 79
military /ˈmɪlɪtri/ 52
minced /ˈmɪns/ 17
mind /maɪnd/ 74
mind as in on your mind /maɪnd/ 19
mind your head /maɪnd ɪz ˌhed/ 67
minimum /ˈmɪnəməm/ 45
minor /ˈmɪnə(r)/ 35
minority /ˈmɪnərətɪ/ 38
mint /mɪnt/ 16
mirror as in rear-view /wɪŋ /ˈmaɪrs/ 21
misable /ˈmaɪzəbl/ 7
mist /maɪst/ 13
mistake as in make mistakes /ˈmaɪstək/ 1
misty /maɪst/ 13
mixed feelings /ˈmɪks tʃɪrnz/ 69
moon /mʊn/ 50, 76
modern /ˈmeɪdn/ 69
modest /ˈmeɪdəst/ 6
money /ˈmaɪni/ 79
monkey /ˈmaʊki/ 15
mood /ˈmʌd/ 7
moody /ˈmʌdi/ 7
moon /mʊn/ 11
mop /mɒp/ 27
moral /ˈmɔːrəl/ 72
moreover /ˈmɔːrəvə(r)/ 68
mosquito /ˈmaʊskitoʊ/ 15
most as in make the most of /ˈmoʊst/ 71
motivated /ˈməʊtəˌvɜːtɪd/ 2
motivation /ˈməʊtəˈvɪʃən/ 2
motorbike /ˈmaʊtəbɪk/ 79
motorway /ˈmaʊtəweɪ/ 80
mourners /ˈmaʊnəz/ 10
mourning as in mourning /ˈmeɪnɪŋ/ 10
mouse /maʊs/ 15
movie /ˈmuːvə/ 42, 80
movie theater /ˈmuːvi ˈθɪətə(r)/ 80
moving /ˈmuːvɪŋ/ 42
mud /ˈmʌd/ 27
muddy /ˈmʌdi/ 27
mug /maʊɡ/ 35
mugger /ˈmaʊɡə(r)/ 35
mugging /ˈmaʊŋɪŋ/ 35
muggy /'mægi/ 13
multi-storey car park
/'mʌlti,stɔrɪ 'kɑːr: pɑ:k/ 29
murder n, v /'maʊdr/ 35
murderer /'maʊdrə(r)/ 35
musical instrument
/'mjuːzɪkl 'ɪnstrəmənt/ 44
musician /'mjuːzɪʃən/ 44
mussel /'mʌsəl/ 16
mystery /'mɪstri/ 47
nail /nɛl/ 26
nanny /'næni/ 52
nap as in have a nap /næp/ 19
narrow /'nɛrəʊ/ 12
nasty /'næsti/ 20
national /'neɪʃənl/ 41
NATO /'neɪtəʊ/ 79
natural /'neɪtʃərəl/ 69
nearby /'niəri/ 78
neat /nɪt/ 5
necklace /'nekls/ 23
need as in a need for /nɪd/ 38
need as in desperately need
/nɪd/ 76
needle /'nɪdl/ 26
negative adj /'nɛgətɪv/ 69
negative n /'nɛgətɪv/ 43
negotiate /'neɡəteɪt/ 39
neighbourhood /'neɪbərˌhʊd/ 48
neutral /'njuːtrəl/ 23, 77
nevertheless /'nevərələs/ 68
nightie /'nɪti/ 19
nightmare (= bad dream)
/'nɪtmə(r)/ 19
nightmare (= bad experience)
/'nɪtmə(r)/ 22
no problem
/,nəʊ 'prəbləm/ 77
non-alcoholic
,/'nɒn əlkəhlɪk/ 72
non-fiction /'nɒnfɪʃn/ 47
non-metric /'nɒnmətrɪk/ 79
nonsense /'nɒnsns/ 77
not at all /'nɒt ət ɔl/ 62
not... yet /'nɒt ət ˈjɛt/ 70
note as in make a note of
/nəʊt/ 1
notice v /'nəʊtɪs/ 32
notice as in hand in your notice /'nəʊtɪs/ 53
nothing much
,/'nʌθɪŋ 'mʌtʃ/ 77
novel /'nɔvəl/ 47
now and again
,/'nɔʊ and ə 'gen/ 70
nowadays /ˈnɔweɪdeɪz/ 70
nuisance /'nuːsəns/ 66
number plate
/'nʌmbə plɛt/ 21
obedient /'əbɪdɪənt/ 64
obeis /'əbɪz/ 37
obesity /ˈəbɪsɪti/ 37
obey /əˈbɛɪ/ 64
object /'ɑbjəkt/ 52
objective /'ɑbjəktɪv/ 58
obligatory /'ɒbliˈɡætɔri/ 64
observer /'ɒbˈzɛrvər/ 32
obvious /ˈɒbviəs/ 2
occasion /ɔˈkeɪʃn/ 48
occasionally /əˈkeɪnəli/ 70
occur /əˈkɜːr/ 22
ocean /ˈɔsɪn/ 12
off (= money off) /ɔf/ 18
off as in time off /ɔf/ 54
offence /ˈɒfens/ 35
offend /əˈfend/ 3
offender /əˈfendə(r)/ 35
offensive /əˈfensɪv/ 3
oil paints /'ɔɪl, pɛnts/ 43
oils /ˈɔɪlz/ 43
old-fashioned
,/'ɔld fəʃənd/ 69
old friend /'ɔld frend/ 8
omit /əˈmɪt/ 4, 75
on board /ən 'bɔːrd/ 71
on display /ən 'dɪˈplay/ 43
on my mind
,/'ɔn mi ˈmɛnd/ 19
on my way /ən ˈmiː ˈweɪ/ 22
on purpose /ən ˈpɜːpsəs/ 71
on show /ən ˌʃoʊ/ 43
on the horizon
,/'ɒn ðə həˈraʊzn/ 12
on the one hand
,/'ɒn ðə ˈwɑːn ˈhænd/ 68
on the other hand
,/'ɒn ði ˈʌðə ˈhænd/ 68
on the way /ˈɒn ðə ˈweɪ/ 22
on the whole /ɒn ðə həʊl/ 76
on time /ˈɒn ˈtɜːm/ 50
on your mind
,/'ɒn ˈjʊər ˈmɛnd/ 19
one-sided /ˈwʌn ˈsaɪdɪd/ 46
only child /ˈəʊnlɪ ˈfaɪld/ 9
onto /ənˈtoʊ/ 70
operate /əˈpərət/ 25
operating costs
,/'əpərətɪŋ ˈkɒsts/ 55
operating theatre
,/'əpərətɪŋ ˈθeətə(r)/ 25
operation /əˈpɛrəʃn/ 25
opinion as in my opinion
,ˈəpɪnjən/ 63
opponent /əˈpɔnənt/ 46
opportunity /əˈpɒtnəti/ 1, 50, 58
oppose /əˈpɔz/ 38
opposed to /əˈpɔz tə/ 63
opposition /əˈpɒzən/ 38
Opposition as in the
,Opposition /əˈpɒzɪʃn/ 38
optimistic /ˈɒptɪmɪstɪk/ 59
optional /ˈɔpʃənl/ 64
or /ər/ 68
or else /ər ˈels/ 68
order as in out of order
,ˈɔr də(r)/ 26
orchestra /ˈɔrkestra/ 44
ordinary /əˈɔrdɪnərɪ/ 42
organ /ˈɔrɡən/ 44
organist /əˈɡənɪst/ 44
original /əˈrɪdʒənəl/ 30
originally /əˈrɪdʒənəli/ 9
otherwise /əˈðəwaɪz/ 68
out loud /əут ˈlɔːd/ 34
out of focus
,əут əv ˈfɔːkəs 43
out of order
,əут əv ərˈdə(r)/ 26
out of the blue
,əут əv ət ˈblu/ 77
out of work /əут əv ˈwɜːk/ 53
outfit /əʊtʃɪt/ 23
outsider /əʊtˈsайдə(r)/ 46
outskirts /əʊtˈskɜːts/ 22
outstanding /əʊtˈstændɪŋ/ 42, 46
oval adj, n /ˈɔvəl/ 31
oven /ˈʌvn/ 17
over /ˈəʊvər/ 70
over-ambitious
,ˈəʊvər əˈməbləs/ 56
over-optimistic
,ˈəʊvər əˈptɪmɪstɪk/ 56
over there /ˈəʊvər ˈðɛə(r)/ 70
overall /ˈəʊvərˈɔːl/ 46
overall /ˈəʊvərɔːl/ 69
overcharge /əʊvərˈtʃɑːdʒ/ 56
overestimate
,əʊvəˈestɪmət/ 56
overhear /əʊvəˈhɪər/ 32
overnight /əʊvəˈnɪt/ 22
oversleep /əʊvəˈslɛp/ 19
overtake /əʊvəˈteɪk/ 21
principle /prɪˈnɑːsəl/ 63
print /prɪnt/ 43
priority /ˈprɔrətri/ 38
prison as in go to prison /ˈprɪzn/ 35
private as in private /ˈprɪvət/ 71
private sector /ˈprɪvət _sektor(r)/ 52
problem as in no problem /ˈprɔmbl/ 77
process /ˈprɔsès/ 51
produce (a film) /prəˈdʒuːs/ 42
produce (goods) /prəˈdʒuːs/ 57
producer (of films) /prəˈdʒuːsə(r)/ 42
producer (of goods) /prəˈdʒuːsə(r)/ 57
product /ˈprɒdʌkt/ 52
profession /ˈprəˈfeʃən/ 52
professional /ˈprəˈfeʃənl/ 46
professor /ˈprəˈfesə(r)/ 50
profit /ˈprɔfit/ 55
progress /ˈprɔgres/ 2
promise /ˈprɔmɪs/ 41
promote /prəˈməʊt/ 53
promotion /prəˈməʊʃən/ 53
pronounce /prəˈnaʊns/ 1
pronunciation /prəˈnʌnsiˈeɪʃn/ 1
proof /pruːf/ 36
properly /ˈprɒprəli/ 26
property /ˈprɔprəti/ 35
proposal /prəˈpoʊzl/ 63
propose /prəˈpouz/ 63
prosecute /proʊˈskjuːt/ 36
prosecution /proʊˈskjʊʃn/ 36
prospects /ˈprɔspektz/ 53
protect /prəˈtektn/ 12
protected /prəˈtektnid/ 12
protection /prəˈtekʃn/ 12
protest as in protest /prəˈtest/ 41
protest v /prəˈtest/ 41
proud /prəʊd/ 7
prove /pruːv/ 36
provide /prəˈvaid/ 3
provided /prəˈvaidid/ 68
pub /pʊb/ 79
public as in public /ˈpʌblɪk/ 71
public as in member of the public /ˈpʌblɪk/ 53
public as in the public /ˈpʌblɪk/ 53
public house /ˈpʌblɪk ˈhauz/ 79
public sector /ˈpʌblɪk _sektor(r)/ 52
publish /ˈpʌblɪʃ/ 41, 52
publishing /ˈpʌblɪʃɪŋ/ 41, 52
puddle /ˈpʌdl/ 12
punish /ˈpʌnɪʃ/ 64
punishment /ˈpʌnmənt/ 64
purchase n, v /ˈpɜːʃəs/ 77
purpose /ˈpɜːps/ 68
purpose as in on purpose /ˈpɜːps/ 71
purse /ˈpɜːs/ 80
put on weight /ˈpʊt_ ɒn _ˈweɪnt/ 17
put back /ˈpʊt_ ˈbæk/ 75
put down /ˈpʊt_ ˈdaʊn/ 75
put off /ˈpʊt_ ˈɒf/ 61
put on /ˈpʊt_ ˈɒn/ 75
put out /ˈpʊt_ ˈaʊt/ 75
pyjamas /ˈpaːdʒəməz/ 19
qualifications /ˈkwɔlɪfɪkəʃənz/ 52
quality /ˈkwɒləti/ 56
queen /ˈkwɪn/ 9
question mark /ˈkwɔzɪn_ ˌmɑːk/ 4
quit /kwɪt/ 53
quite /kwɪt/ 76
quotation marks /ˈkwəʊteɪʃn_ ˌmɑːks/ 4
rabbit /ˈræbɪt/ 16
race /reɪs/ 46
racing driver /ˈreɪsɪŋ_ _ˈdrɛɪvə(r)/ 45
railing /ˈreɪlɪŋ/ 31
railroad /ˈreɪlrəʊd/ 80
rainbow /rɛnbɔːr/ 13
rainforest /ˈreɪnfoʊrst/ 13
raise capital /ˈreɪz_ kæpɪtəl/ 55
range as in wide range /rɛnдж/ 2
rare /reər/ 69
rarely /ˈreəlɪ/ 76
raspberry /ˈræzbəri/ 16
rat /reɪt/ 15
rather /ˈreɪðə(r)/ 76
rather as in would rather /ˈreɪðə(r)/ 62
rather than /ˈreɪðə_ ˈθæn/ 21
reach /reɪtʃ/ 11
reach an agreement /ˈreɪtʃ_ ən_ ə_ ˈɡriːnmənt/ 39
react /reɪˈtekʃn/ 73
reaction /reɪˈækʃn/ 73
read widely /riːd ˈwændli/ 50
readable /riːdəbəl/ 47
real /riːl/ 69, 73
realism /ˌriːlɪzəm/ 43
realistic /ˌriːləˈstɪk/ 43, 58
reality /riːˈæləti/ 73
realize /riːˈælz/ 8
rear /riər/ 70
rear-view mirror /riə ˈviːjən mirə(r)/ 21
reasonable /ˌriːznəbəl/ 69
recall /reɪˈkɔːl/ 74
receding /reɪˈsidɪŋ/ 5
receipt /reɪˈseɪt/ 18
recent /reɪˈsent/ 70
recently /reɪˈsentli/ 70
reception /reɪˈsepʃn/ 10
recipe /ˈresɪpi/ 17
reckon /reɪˈkɑːn/ 63, 77
recognition /reɪˈkɒɡnɪʃn/ 1
recognize /reɪˈkɒɡnɪz/ 1
record n /reɪˈkɔːd/ 46
record v (= make a note) /reɪˈkɔːd/ 1
record v (= put onto a disc) /reɪˈkɔːd/ 44
recording /reɪˈkɔːdɪŋ/ 44
recover /reɪˈkəʊvə(r)/ 25
recruit /reɪˈkrut/ 52
recruitment /reɪˈkrʊmtʃənt/ 52
rectangle /reɪˈtæŋɡəl/ 31
rectangular /reɪˈtæŋɡjələ(r)/ 31
reduce /riːdʒuːs/ 18, 58, 63
reduction /riːdʒənʃn/ 18, 58
redundant /riːˈdʌndənt/ 53
reel /riːl/ 26
ref /ref/ 45
referee (at a sports match) /riˈfiː roofs/ 45
referee (for a job) /refəˈriː/ 51
referee's assistant /refəˈriː əˈsɪstənt/ 45
reference /ˈrefərəns/ 51
reference book /ˈrefərəns_ ˈboʊk/ 47
refine /riˈfайн/ 57
refund /riˈfænd/ 18
refuse /riˈfjuːz/ 74
regards as in kind regards /ˈrəɡɑːrdz/ 78
region /riˈdʒen/ 29
regret /riˈgret/ 8, 74
regularly /rɛɡəˈleɪli/ 76
relate /riˈleɪt/ 3
swimming pool
switch off
switch on
swollen
syllable
symbol
sympathetic
symptom
system as in solar system

t (tonne) /ˈtɒn/ 79
tail /ˈteɪl/ 15
take a tooth out
	/ˈteɪk əˈtuːθ aʊt/ 24
take advantage of
	/ˈteɪk ədˈvəntɪdʒ əv/ 71
take after
	/ˈteɪk əˈfeɪtə(r)/ 9, 75
take care
	/ˈteɪk ˈkeə(r)/ 77, 78
take care of
	/ˈteɪk ˈkɛə(r)/ 25, 52, 71
take notes
	/ˈteɪk ˈnəʊts/ 50
take out
	/ˈteɪk ˈaʊt/ 50, 55
take over
	/ˈteɪk əʊvə(r)/ 56
take part in
	/ˈteɪk ˈpɑːt ɪn/ 46, 48
take pictures
	/ˈteɪk ˈpɪktʃə/ 43
take place
	/ˈteɪk ˈplɛs/ 36, 46
take sb on
	/ˈteɪk əˈsoʊn/ 56
take sth off
	/ˈteɪk əˈstɛf/ 75
take time off
	/ˈteɪk ˌteɪm əv/ 54
takeover
	/ˈteɪkəʊvə(r)/ 56
talent
	/ˈteɪlənt/ 44
talented
	/ˈteɪləntɪd/ 44
tall
	/ˈtel/ 5
tan /ˈten/ 5
tanned /ˈtenid/ 5
tap /ˈtæp/ 32
target
	/ˈteɪɡt/ 58
target market
	/ˈteɪɡt ˈmɑːrkɪt/ 58
task
	/ˈteɪsk/ 27
taste
	/ˈteɪst/ 32
tax
	/ˈteɪks/ 55
tear as in burst into tears
	/teə(r)/ 34
tear up
	/ˈteər əp/ 34
technique
	/ˈteknɪk/ 43
television
	/ˈtelɪvɪʒn/ 79
tell
	/tel/ 5
telly
	/ˈtelɪ/ 79
temper as in keep/lose your
	temper
	/ˈtempə(r)/ 66
temporarily
	/ˈtempərəli/ 20
temporary
	/ˈtempərəri/ 69
tend
	/ˈten/ 74
tendency
	/ˈtendənsi/ 74
tennis player
	/ˈtenɪs ˈpleɪə(r)/ 45
terrible
	/ˈtɜːribl/ 66
terribly
	/ˈtɜːribli/ 76
terrified
	/ˈtɜːrifɪd/ 7, 69
terrifying
	/ˈtɜːrɪfɪŋ/ 69
test
	/ˈtest/ 25
text
	/ˈtekst/ 1
	the accused
	/ˈəkˈdʒuzd/ 36
	the defence
	/ˈdeɪfenz/ 36
	the outskirts
	/ˈəʊtəskɔːts/ 22
	the point
	/ˈpɔɪnt əz/ 63
	heater as in movie theater
	/ˈθɛətə(r)/ 80
thief
	/θif/ 35

theory as in in theory
	/ˈθɪəri/ 63
therefore
	/ˈðɛərə(r)/ 68
these days
	/ðez ˈdeɪz/ 70
thesis
	/θɪˈsɪs/ 50
thief
	/θif/ 35

think
	/θɪŋk/ 63

as in I (don’t) think so
	/θɪŋk/ 65
third quarter
	/θɜːrd ˈkwɔːrtə(r)/ 55
thoroughly
	/ˈθɔːrəli/ 20
though
	/θəʊ/ 68

as in even though
	/θəʊ/ 68
thread
	/θred/ 26
threat
	/θret/ 41, 58
threaten
	/θren/ 41
thrilled
	/θrild/ 7
throughout
	/θroʊˈaʊt/ 70
throw
	/θrəʊ/ 48

throw away
	/θrəʊ əˈweɪ/ 27
thyme
	/θaɪm/ 16
tidal wave
	/ˈtɪdəl ˈwɔːv/ 14
tide
	/ˈtaɪd/ 12
tidy up
	/ˈtaɪdi əp/ 27
tie
	/taɪ/ 26
tie up
	/taɪ əp/ 72
tied up
	/ˈtaɪd əp/ 61
tiger
	/ˈtaɪɡə(r)/ 15
tighten
	/ˈtɪtən/ 26
tights
	/ˈtaɪts/ 23
time as in from time to time
	/ˈtaɪm/ 70
time as in in time
	/ˈtaɪm/ 50
time as in on time
	/ˈtaɪm/ 50
time off
	/ˈtaɪm əv/ 54
tiny
	/ˈtæmi/ 30
tip
	/ˈtɪp/ 21, 58
title
	/ˈtelɪt/ 47
to a certain extent
	/ˈtəʊ əˈseptnt/ 76
to go
	/ɡoʊ/ 70
to some extent
	/ˈtəʊ ˈsəm ɪk, ˈstɛnt/ 76
toast as in drink a toast
	/ˈtɔst/ 10
together as in get together
	/ˈtəʊɡər/ 8, 61
tolerance
	/ˈtɔlərəns/ 6
tolerant
	/ˈtələrənt/ 6
toll as in death toll
	/təʊl/ 14
ton
	/ˈtɒn/ 48
tonne
	/ˈtɒn/ 79
tools
	/ˈtuːlz/ 26
tooth
	/ˈtuːθ/ 24
toothache
	/ˈtuːθɛik/ 24
top
	/ˈtɒp/ 33
totally
	/ˈtɔʊtəli/ 76
touch
	/ˈtʃʊtʃ/ 32
toward
	/ˈtɔwərd/ 70
towards
	/ˈtɔwərdz/ 70
toy
	/ˈtoʊ/ 31
track
	/ˈtræk/ 45
trade union
	/ˈtræd ˈjʊnɪʃn/ 54
traditional
	/ˈtrædiʃənl/ 10
traffic jam
	/ˈtræfɪk ˈdʒæm/ 22
train
	/ˈtreɪn/ 52
training
	/ˈtreɪnɪŋ/ 52
transfer
	/ˈtrænsfə(r)/ 43, 53
transform
	/ˈtrænsfɔːm/ 23
translate
	/ˈtrænsleɪt/ 1
translation
	/ˈtrænsleɪʃn/ 1
trap
	/ˈtræp/ 14
trapped
	/ˈtræpt/ 14
trash
	/ˈtræʃ/ 80
trash can
	/ˈtræʃ kæn/ 80
travel
	/ˈtrævl/ 76
travel agent
	/ˈtrævl ˈeɪdʒənt/ 52
treat
	/ˈtrɪt/ 24, 25
treatment
	/ˈtrɪtmənt/ 24, 25
trend
	/ˈtrend/ 55
trial
	/ˈtrɪəl/ 36
triangle
	/ˈtrɪangles/ 31
triangular
	/ˈtrɪaŋɡjələ(r)/ 31
trim
	/ˈtrɪm/ 28
trip
	/ˈtrɪp/ 22
tropical
	/ˈtrɒpɪkl/ 73
trouble
	/ˈtrʌbl/ 22
trouse
	/ˈtraʊs/ 16
truck
	/ˈtrʌk/ 80
trumpet
	/ˈtrʌmpɪt/ 44
trumpeter
	/ˈtrʌmpətə(r)/ 44
whisper /ˈwɪʃər/ 34
whistle /ˈwɪstl/ 29
whole /həʊl/ 41
whole as in on the whole /həʊl/ 76
wide /wʌd/ 12, 45
wide awake /wʌd əˈwɛk/ 19
wide range /wʌrd ˈrɛndə/ 2
widely /ˈwɪdli/ 76
widow /ˈwɪdəʊ/ 10
widower /ˈwɪdəʊə(r)/ 10
width /wɪdθ/ 12, 45
wife /waɪf/ 10
wild (= living in natural conditions) /wɜːld/ 15
wild (= exciting and enjoyable) /wɜːld/ 48
will /wɪl/ 10
willing /ˈwɪlɪŋ/ 39
win /wɪn/ 42
windscreen /ˈwɪndskrɪn/ 21
windscreen wiper /ˈwɪndskrɪn ˈwɪpə(r)/ 21
wing /wɪŋ/ 15
wing mirror /ˈwɪŋ ˈmɪrə(r)/ 21
winner /ˈwɪnə(r)/ 42
wipe /wɑːp/ 27
wiper as in windscreen wiper /ˈwæpə(r)/ 21
wire /ˈwɜːrə(r)/ 26
wish /waʃ/ 10
wishes as in best wishes /ˈwɜːfɪz/ 78
witness /ˈwɪtnəs/ 36
wonder /ˈwʌndə(r)/ 29
words as in in other words /ˈwɜːdz/ 11
wood /wʊd/ 31
wooden /ˈwʊdn/ 31
wool /wʊl/ 31
woollen /ˈwʊlən/ 31
work (= get a result) /wɜːk/ 1
work (= function) /wɜːk/ 26
work as in out of work /wɜːk/ 53
work as in shift work /wɜːk/ 54
work of art /wɜːk əv ˈɑːt/ 43
work out /wɜːk əˈaʊt/ 75
work overtime /wɜːk ˈəʊvətɜːm/ 54
work permit /wɜːk ˈpɜːmɪt/ 51
working conditions /wɜːkɪŋ ˈkɒndɪʃənz/ 54
worldwide /ˈwɜːrldwaɪd/ 45
worth /wɜːθ/ 18
would rather /wʊd ˈrɑːðə(r)/ 62
wound /wʊnd/ 20
wrap up /ræp ʌp/ 72
wrestling /rɛsliŋ/ 46
wrinkles /rɪŋklz/ 5
write a thesis /rɪt ə ˈθiːsɪs/ 50
writing as in in writing /rɪtɪŋ/ 66
wrong /rɒŋ/ 26
wrong as in go wrong /rɒŋ/ 8, 65
x-ray /ˈeksˌreɪ/ 25
yawning /ˈjɔːnɪŋ/ 19
yeah /jɛə/ 77
you must be joking /juː ˈmʌst ˈbiːˈdʒɒkɪŋ/ 77
you’re joking /juː ˈdʒɒkɪŋ/ 77
youngish /ˈjʌŋɪʃ/ 5
yours faithfully /ˈjuːz ˈfiːθfəli/ 78
yours sincerely /ˈjuːz ˈsɪnəsəli/ 78
zoom lens /ˈzoʊm ˈlɛnz/ 43
Acknowledgements

The authors and publishers would like to thank teachers and students from the following schools who helped with the development of this book:

- International House, Business English Centre, Madrid, Spain
- Shamrock School of English, Getxo, Bizkaia, Spain
- English Language Institute, Macarena, Seville, Spain
- English Centre, Valencia, Spain
- Tti School of English, London, UK
- Bell International, London, UK
- Mark Appleton, Mark Lloyd, and the students at International House, Bath, UK
- Małgorzata Sulomadry, Dorota Brach, Anna Wnuk, and Iza Algernissen in Poland

They would also like to thank:

- Theresa Clementson, Sian Morgan, Carol Tabor, and Scott Thornbury for their valuable comments on early drafts of the text.
- The actors Nigel Greaves and Joanna Hall and The Soundhouse Ltd for the listening material.
- Daniel Bleyer (Germany); Blanca Gonzalez (Spain); Atena Juszko (Poland); Ilaria Millesenna (Italy); Claire Ransom (Britain); Sadako Shokatsu (Japan); Maurizio Tinnirello (Colombia); and Nina Weirum (Norway) for ABOUT YOU answers.

- Suzanne Williams for picture research.
- Pippa Mayfield for phonetic transcriptions.
Oxford Word Skills
Learn and practise English vocabulary
Intermediate for intermediate and upper-intermediate learners

- Learn the words you need to know at each level (Basic, Intermediate, and Advanced)
- See how the words and phrases are used in spoken and written English
- Practise using the vocabulary
- Revise what you’ve learned
- Improve your vocabulary-learning skills
- Learn the words as preparation for the major exams

Use the CD-ROM to listen to the words, learn how to say them, and practise using them.

It’s easy to test yourself. Just use the card inside to ‘cover and check’.

Ruth Gairns and Stuart Redman are language teaching experts who specialize in writing materials for learning and teaching vocabulary.

www.oup.com/elt/wordskills

OXFORD UNIVERSITY PRESS
www.oup.com/elt